

# Thai for Beginners

Jacoby de Groot



# Thai for Beginners



# Thai for Beginners

Jacob Y. de Groot



Prince of Songkhla University, Phuket Campus  
2010

Text: Copyright © Jacob Y. de Groot 2010

Illustrations: Copyright © Jacob Y. de Groot 2010

Jacob Y. de Groot has asserted his right under the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 to be identified as the author of this work.

## Table of Contents

Table of Contents	V
Introduction	IX
<b>Lesson 1: Introduction to language, grammar and script</b>	1
<b>ความรู้เบื้องต้นในการใช้ภาษาไทย</b>	
1.1 Introduction	3
1.2 The Thai language	4
1.3 The Thai alphabet	5
1.4 The alphabet and the five tones	13
1.5 Diacritics and punctuation marks	19
1.6 Writing Thai	20
1.7 Our transcription method	20
1.8 Thai grammar and script	24
1.9 Exercises	24
<b>Lesson 2: Questions and answers</b>	27
<b>คำถ้ามและคำตอบ</b>	
2.1 Introduction	29
2.2 The Thai sentence (1)	29
2.3 Cultural notes: Khunna, Decha and Bunkhun	34
2.4 Characteristics of the Thai language	36
2.5 The Thai sentence (2)	36
2.6 Exercises	41
2.7 Answers to exercise 1	42
<b>Lesson 3: Introducing yourself</b>	43
<b>การแนะนำตัว</b>	
3.1 Introduction	45
3.2 Introducing yourself	45
3.3 Idioms, polite gestures, greetings	51
3.4 The verb “to be”	53
3.5 Exercises	55
3.6 Answers to the exercises	56
<b>Lesson 4: Two friends</b>	59
<b>เพื่อนผู้หญิงสองคน</b>	
4.1 Introduction	61
4.2 Dialogue	62
4.3 The tones 1: the mid tone and the low tone	68

4.4 Grammar and idioms: Words for ‘and’; ‘the word ‘ແລ້ວ’; long loan words from foreign languages	69
4.5 Exercises	71
4.6 Answers to exercise 1	71
<b>Lesson 5: In the morning at the university</b>	73
<b>ຕອນ ເຂົ້າ ທີ່ ມາວິທາລີຍ</b>	
5.1 Introduction	75
5.2 Dialogue 1	75
5.3 Dialogue 2	84
5.4 Idioms	87
5.5 The tones 2: The mid tone and the high tone	88
5.6 Grammar: Head nouns; Classifiers; Degrees of comparison; Manners of speech	88
5.7 Exercises	93
5.8 Answers to exercise 1	94
<b>Lesson 6: A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin</b>	95
<b>ວັນ ສຸດ ສັບດາທີ ພັກຜອນ ທີ່ ທ້ວ ທິນ</b>	
6.1 Introduction	97
6.2 Dialogue	97
6.3 The tones 3: The mid tone, the rising tone and the falling tone	105
6.4 Idioms; Personal pronouns; Particles, interjections and stopgaps	106
6.5 Grammar: ໄນ and ມາ as directional verbs	108
6.6 Exercises	110
6.7 Answers to exercise 1	110
<b>Lesson 7: Joy! Wake up!</b>	113
<b>ຈົບຍ ! ຕິ່ນ ໄດ້ ແລ້ວ !</b>	
7.1 Introduction	115
7.2 Dialogue	115
7.3 Idioms: The polite final particle; names, relation terms and functions used as personal pronouns; the phrase ‘ໃໝ່ເປັນໄຮ’;	125
7.4 Writing I: The consonants ກ - ດ	127
7.5 Exercises	129
7.6 Answers to exercise 1	130
<b>Lesson 8: Welcome</b>	133
<b>ຂົນຕີ ຕ້ອນ ລັບ</b>	
8.1 Introduction	135
8.2 Dialogue	135
8.3 Grammar: Repetition and addition: the Thai sentence; Idiomatic expressions;	140
8.4 Writing II: The consonants ນູ - ດ	142

8.5 Exercises	143
8.6 Answers to exercise 1	145
<b>Lesson 9: Meeting family at the airport</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>มา รับ ญาติ ที่ ดอน เมือง</b>	
9.1 Introduction	149
9.2 Dialogue	149
9.3 Idioms	156
9.4 Grammar: Leaving out the subject; the negation: Rehearsal and additional constructions	158
9.5 Cultural notes	165
9.6 Writing III: The consonants ນ - ກ	166
9.7 Theoretical overview of the five tones	168
9.8 Exercises	169
9.9 Answers to exercises 1 and 2	171
<b>Lesson 10: At the restaurant</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>ที่ ภัตตาคาร</b>	
10.1 Introduction	175
10.2 Dialogue	175
10.3 Idioms	185
10.4 Grammar: Meanings of the word ‘ได’; intensifying or mitigating negations; the causative and its negation; Saying ‘no’ Negative conditional clauses	186
10.5 Cultural note	194
10.6 Writing IV: The consonants ນ - ອ	195
10.7 Exercises	196
10.8 Answers to exercises 1 and 2	198
<b>Lesson 11: Stuck in traffic again</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>รถ ติด 雍 แล้ว</b>	
11.1 Introduction	203
11.2 Dialogue	204
11.3 Idioms	219
11.4 Grammar: The imperative mood and its negative; the passive voice	220
11.5 Cultural notes	222
11.6 - Writing V: The vowels and diphthongs	223
- Writing VI: The triphthongs	224
- Writing VII: Unwritten vowel sounds (inherent vowels)	225
11.7 Diacritics and punctuation marks	225
11.8 Exercises	226
11.9 Answers to exercise 1	227

<b>Lesson 12: Out on the town in Bangkok</b>	<b>229</b>
<b>ໄປ ເຖິວ ກຽງເທິພ ຈ</b>	
12.1 Introduction	231
12.2. Dialogue	231
12.3 Idioms: Spoken language: Stopgaps, abbreviations and link words	244
12.4 Cultural notes	246
12.5 Irregularities in Thai spelling and class modifiers	248
12.6 Writing VIII: The script and the tones; further instructions in reading and writing	250
12.7 Exercises	257
12.8 Answers to exercise 1	257

## Introduction

Thai is a member of the Tai subgroup within the Tai-Kadai language family. Tai languages are spoken in an area that stretches from south-western China and North Vietnam to north-eastern India. Thai is by far the largest language within the Tai subgroup. Languages closely related to Thai are Lao, the national language of Laos, and Shan, the language spoken in the Shan state in Burma. From the eighth century, Tai speakers migrated from their homeland in southern China towards the areas now dominated by them in present-day Thailand, Laos and Burma. In Thailand, they replaced the former inhabitants of the area, the Mon and the Khmer, almost completely.

Sukhothai, the first Thai nation state, was founded in 1238 AD. The kingdom was conquered in 1376 by the young Thai kingdom of Ayutthaya, which had been founded in 1350. Four hundred years later, in 1767, Ayutthaya fell to the Burmese. From the chaos, the Thai people arose under General Taksin, who subsequently led the country from 1769 until 1782, and founded a new capital: Thonburi. The present Thai kingdom, named ‘Siam’ until 24 June 1939<sup>1</sup>, was founded in 1782 by Chao Phraya Chakri. He moved the capital from Thonburi to Bangkok, on the other side of the Chao Phraya River. As Buddha Yodfa Chulalok, or Rama I, Chao Phraya Chakri became the first king of the Chakri Dynasty, which rules Thailand up to this day. The present King Bhumibol Adulyadej is the ninth Chakri Monarch.

Within the Thai language, there exist four main dialects: Central Thai, North-eastern Thai (Isan), Northern Thai (Kham Muang) and Southern Thai (Tâi). The national language of Thailand, and therefore the most prestigious dialect, is Central Thai (phaasăa klaang), which is spoken as a mother tongue in the 26 provinces of the Chao Praya basin, the northernmost part of the Malay peninsula and the northern coast of the Gulf of Thailand. To the east, the area includes the provinces Trat, Chantaburi and Sa Kaew on the Cambodian border, to the north the provinces Prachinburi, Nakhon Nayok, Saraburi, Lopburi, Chai Nat and Suphanburi; to the west the provinces Kanchanaburi and Phetburi, and the southernmost province where Central Thai is spoken is Prachuap Khiri Khan. The national capital, Bangkok, lies right in the middle of this area. Central Thai is taught from the first grade of primary school throughout the country to every Thai child, and thus every Thai who has been to school can speak and understand it. Through this course, you will learn this dominant central dialect of the Thai language. From now on, the language will be called ‘Thai’.

Thai is spoken as a first or as a second language<sup>2</sup> by around 60 million people, most of whom live in Thailand. Through migration, a large number of Thais live in the United States. In Europe, significant numbers of Thais live in Great Britain, Germany, the Netherlands and France. Lively Thai communities also exist in Australia, Malaysia, Singapore and Japan.

<sup>1</sup> The official name of the country was Siam until 24 June 1939, when it was changed into Thailand; The country was called Siam again in 1945, until the name Thailand eventually became official again on 11 May 1949.

<sup>2</sup> If one would consider Isan, Kham Muang and Tâi as separate languages. 99 % of the speakers of these dialects also speaks and understands Central Thai. Within the large Chinese communities in the cities, there is nobody who doesn’t speak Central Thai as a first or a second language. The Mon communities in Kanchanaburi, Ratchaburi, Ayutthaya, Lopburi and Bangkok are mostly Thai monolingual. Around 50,000 of the 120,000 Thai of Mon origin still speak Mon at home (especially the Mon in Bangkok). The Khmer community around Surin, Si Saket and Buri Ram (around a million people) is bilingual.

This practical Thai course is comprised of 60 lessons divided into three unequal parts. The first part, ‘Thai for Beginners’ is a twelve-lesson elementary introduction to the Thai language. In this first part, you will be offered sufficient learning material to gain a basic knowledge of modern Thai. For beginners, an important part of the learning process is mastering the Thai script. Without being able to read and write, it is simply impossible to learn Thai well. In the first part of the course, emphasis is also given to important grammatical features as sentence construction and the all-important basic vocabulary. After conclusion of ‘Thai for Beginners’, you will be able to communicate with Thai people on a basic level, as well as be able to read and write simple texts in Thai.

In the next 36 lessons, ‘Intermediate Thai’, your knowledge will be augmented and improved towards an advanced level. Finally, the intermediate course is followed up by a twelve-lesson course called ‘Thai for Advanced Students’, in which the finesse of the correct usage of spoken and written Thai will be further explained. After completion of the whole course, you will be able to converse fluently in the language and understand it proficiently. You will also be able to read modern Thai texts (novels, newspapers and magazines), and you will be sufficiently equipped to independently further your mastery of the Thai language.

Each lesson in the course exists of:

- An introduction;
- A text, called ‘dialogue’, written in Thai, followed in the course for beginners by a combined transcription and literal word-for-word translation (a word-for-word translation in English is given under each transcribed line of text). In the course for intermediate students a transcription and word-for-word translation is still given in lessons 1-12, but in an appendix at the end of each lesson. Word-for word translations - without transcription - are given up to and including lesson 32 for intermediate students. After that, only translations in natural English are given. All dialogues in the course are meant as practical reading exercises, but function in the mean time as listening exercises. To this course belong 13 CDs, recorded with native speakers’ renditions of the dialogues of every lesson;
- A Thai-English vocabulary list of all new words appearing in the dialogue. Up to and including lesson 12 for intermediate students, the vocabulary lists are provided with a transcription of each Thai word in phonetic script. The vocabulary lists appear in a spoken version on the CDs belonging with the course;
- A translation of the dialogue in natural English;
- A theoretical part, consisting of one or more articles on language or culture. Articles on language are on script and writing, grammar, idiom and vocabulary. These ‘linguistic’ articles are supplemented with short essays on Thai society, customs and culture;
- Tone exercises: In lessons 4 through 6 for beginners exercises are given to familiarize you with the five tones of the Thai language;
- Exercises, consisting of translation exercises, fill-in exercises or questions. For part of the exercises a key is given. The rest of the exercises is meant to be corrected by a teacher in a classroom situation or as homework given;
- The key to part of the exercises.

## 1. Introduction

The introduction offers some short background information about the events about to take place in the dialogue. When the dialogue is a sequel of the previous lesson’s dialogue, a summary of prior events is given. The introduction also mentions which grammar and culture articles the lesson includes, and it prepares you for changes in format of a new series of lessons.

## 2. Dialogue

### 2.1. Form of the dialogue

In lessons 4 for beginners up to and including lesson 30 for intermediate students, the text part of each lesson consists of dialogue, introduced and connected by paragraphs in prose. These dialogues and connecting texts are written in Thai script. In the first 23 lessons of which a dialogue is a part, a concession is done to the beginning student: In Thai, traditionally no space is used between words; all words in a sentence are written in an uninterrupted sequence of characters. Only between clauses and sentences is a ligature (ຈະກ) found. This ligature often appears approximately at the same points in a text where writers of the Latin script would place a period, colon, semicolon or comma, but beware - not always and exactly.

In view of the training you must undergo in word pattern recognition, the words will be written separated by a space in all dialogues of the lessons up to and including lesson 12 for intermediate students. From lesson 13 for intermediate students on, the sentences in the dialogues will be written long and without spaces, as is usual in a Thai written text.

In the beginning of the course, emphasis is laid on actual dialogue: conversation between people. A large part of the texts in the dialogue are, therefore, written in dialogue format:

*Name of the character that speaks:*      *Spoken words without quotation marks.*

As the course - and you along with it - develops, descriptive parts in prose will become of increasing importance within the dialogue. They will eventually substitute all text in dialogue format after lesson 31 for intermediate students. After this point, conversation will still be an important element in the lessons, but will be written between quotation marks, as in a novel.

Finally, in the last few chapters of the course for advanced students, some media articles have been reproduced as reading exercises. The text of these articles is not available on CD, and has to be considered as a preparation on further reading outside the framework of the course. In the articles, the Thai variant of short descriptive reportage style is offered against the general language of the dialogue format and the narrative style in the later lessons.

The texts meant for reading and listening at the beginning of each lesson are indicated with the nominative ‘dialogue’ during the entire course; whether they are indeed mainly in dialogue format, or whether they are in fact prose texts with dialogue between quotation marks. On the CDs, real dialogue as well as prose with dialogue within quotation marks is presented as a radio play: the narrative texts and the voices of the characters are read and acted by different voice actors.

### 2.2. Transcription and translation

**Transcription method:** The transcription of the Thai script in this course is loosely based on existing methods, (notably IPA – International Phonetic Alphabet, and the Mary Haas transcription) but has been adapted to the needs of the non-linguistically schooled speaker of English. Some signs in the transcription script will require a short period of habituation, such as the sign ‘c’, which is used as the transcription of the sound of the Thai letter ‘ດ’; a voiceless unaspirated alveolo-palatal affricate. The IPA symbol for it is: tç, and it is a sound similar to the sound one would get if one would pronounce the ‘ch’ in ‘change’, but without the aspiration (the puff of air that follows the sound), which in English is always inherent to the ‘ch’-sound. The Thai language *also* knows this aspirated variant of this phoneme (the voiceless *aspirated* alveolo-palatal affricate; noted in IPA as tç<sup>h</sup>), which is in fact so similar to the ‘ch’ in ‘change’ that an English speaker could use this English ‘ch’ to pronounce the Thai characters for the sound tç<sup>h</sup>, which are written ‘ດ້’, ‘ດ່’ and ‘ດ໌’. In our transcription system, ‘ch’ is

therefore maintained as transcription of all Thai tç<sup>h</sup>-sounds. Equally, for the transcription of the close back unrounded vowelɯ (IPA) - which doesn't exist in English or any other Western European language, but which in Thai has a short and a long variant (written ‘ី’ and ‘ីំ’ respectively) - the easy to remember symbols ‘ue’ (short) and ‘ue’ (long) have been chosen. The mid central rounded vowelə (IPA), which occurs in French in words like ‘je’ and ‘ce’, and in Thai in words like ‘ເຄອະ’ (short) and ‘ເຕີນ’ (long) is transcribed as ‘eu’ (short) and ‘eu’ (long). Thai vowels with equivalents in English are, for instance ເອ: ‘e’ (as in ‘lane’, ‘main’, ‘may’), which in the transcription appear in transcription as ‘e’ (short; Thai: ເອ:; ເີ-) and ‘ee’ (long; Thai: ເອ), and for IPA ‘ɛ’ (as in ‘met’, ‘cat’. Short; Thai: ແອ:; ແອື-) and ‘ɛɛ’ (as in ‘man’, ‘dad’. Long; Thai: ແອ), IPA transcription is maintained; these phonemes are thus transcribed as ‘ɛ’ (short) as ‘ɛɛ’ (long).

In the transcription, the five tones of Thai are indicated with diacritics: The *accent égue* (ó) indicates the high tone, the *accent grave* (ò) the low tone, the *accent circonflexe* (ô) the falling tone, and the ‘háček’ or ‘caron’ (õ) the rising tone. The mid tone doesn't get any diacritic (o).

With this simple but effective transcription system, which is explained completely in lesson 1, care has been taken that while learning the Thai alphabet during the initial stage of your study, you are not also overwhelmed with too many unknown characters from, for example, the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA). The transcription system used in the course is fast and easy to learn with a minimal effort.

... And don't forget: once the Thai alphabet has been completely mastered, the transcription script should immediately be discarded.

Transcription and word-for-word translation: In lessons 4 through 12 for beginners, the transcription of the dialogues is given directly under the Thai dialogues. Under every transcribed line, a literal translation of each transcribed word is given in a one-to-one or word-for-word translation. The transcription is meant to provide the beginning student with an immediate hold on the pronunciation of the matter which is read or listened to. In the mean time, the word-for-word translation under the transcription shows the meaning of each separate word or morpheme, and offers you an insight in how the Thai sentence is constructed. In lessons 1 through 12 for intermediate students, a combined transcription and word-for-word translation of the dialogue has been added to each lesson as an appendix. A word-for-word translation (without the by then redundant transcription) still follows each dialogue up to and including lesson 32 for intermediate students. From lesson 33 for intermediate students at the latest, you are supposed to understand Thai well enough to be able to follow each lesson without the help of a word-for-word translation.

Translation: Until the end of the course, a translation in natural English is given of each dialogue. This translation tries to stay as close as possible to the contents and atmosphere of the original Thai text. Because of the completely different character of source- and target language, it will sometimes be impossible to transfer all finesse of the Thai language into English. In some instances, footnotes are used to explicate sayings or puns, or to clarify a cultural reference.

### 2.3. Content of the dialogue

The course is meant to make it as pleasant as possible for you to learn the Thai language. The dialogues in each lesson are therefore arranged as a collection of short stories and novellas.

The adventures of a small number of main characters are used as a framework to offer you an instructive and, in the meantime, as attractive as possible tour around the Thai language.

Main protagonists in the course are:

- ‘Joy’ Jintana Chakraphet is a student of English and French at Chulalongkorn University. She is intelligent, curious, adventurous and pretty. Joy comes from a wealthy and socially respected family. Her father is a pilot with Thai Airways, her mother a TV-personality. Joy’s parents are acquainted with many persons of high standing. In lesson 10 for intermediate students, Joy becomes a fashion model, and this work brings her into contact with several secondary characters. Joy has an older brother named Sua.
- Nikki Wolf is also a student at Chulalongkorn University. She has a Dutch father (a successful expatriate) and a Thai mother. Nikki likes to shop and to go out. Her character is more traditional than Joy’s, but Nikki loves to follow her friend in all kinds of adventures. At the beginning of the course for intermediate students, she starts to date Joy’s brother Sua.
- Maew is from North-eastern Thailand. She is a student at Ramkhamhaeng University. Her father is a Colonel of Police in Bangkok. She has a brother, Krit, who is friends with Joy’s brother Sua and with Vincent (see below). Maew has a quieter and more subdued character than her friends, but she takes them to places where the two Bangkokian girls might not go on their own. During the intermediate course, she starts dating Vincent.
- ‘Sua’ Surasak Chakraphet is Joy’s elder brother. He is a recent naval engineering graduate. He takes his sister and her friends often out on trips in Bangkok and on short holidays. He really likes to do this, because he has designs upon Joy’s friend Nikki. From lesson 7 of the intermediate course on, Sua and Nikki are a couple.
- Vincent Wolf is Nikki’s cousin, a Dutchman. Sua and Maew’s brother Krit often take him out to bars and night spots in Bangkok. He also often functions as a chaperone and driver for Joy, Nikki and Maew when they go on holiday. Vincent is an interested observer who speaks Thai fluently already. Eventually he moves into a relationship with Maew, and marries her.

The Thai main protagonists have been designed as modern young Bangkokians: intelligent, well educated, curious, eager to travel and explore, and born in the educated classes of the population. The foreigner, Vincent, functions now and then as an inquirer on one or the other thing, but his Thai is more than fluent (on the CD’s, Vincent’s voice is provided by a native speaker of Thai). These five characters appear in a large number of different situations, and go through a couple of interesting, sometimes exciting adventures during the course.

On the one hand, the stories in the dialogues describe regular situations and places in which, sooner or later, you will certainly find yourself as well. On the other hand, the adventures of the protagonists are used to introduce you to themes like politics and social problems, and to literary styles such as the ghost story and the crime story; both very popular in Thailand. Also, certain historical events will be introduced within the dialogues.

Other characters that play a role in more than one lesson are Joy’s parents, Nikki’s father, Maew’s brother Krit, fashion photographer Wasan Charupakorn, Maew’s uncle Wirote, former child-prostitute Jiap, Chintamani, the ghost of a Princess from Ayutthaya, Police Colonel Samrueng Dechakrachang, gunman for hire Manas Chatuwong and former communist rebel Wirachai Na Pomphet.

### 3. Vocabulary list

All lessons – except lesson 1, which doesn’t contain any dialogue or reading texts – include one or more vocabulary lists. With each dialogue belongs a main vocabulary list, which follows behind the Thai dialogue and auxiliary translations (transcriptions and word-for-word translations), and precedes the English translation of the dialogue. New words from the dialogue are arranged in order of appearance in the text. Up to lesson 12 for intermediate students, every Thai word is accompanied by a transcription. From lesson 13 for intermediate students on, transcriptions are only given of words with an irregular or ambiguous spelling, and words which contain exceptions on the tone rules.

#### 4. Learning how to read and write

The first lesson of the course consists of an outline of the Thai alphabet. The consonants and vowels are given, as are the consonant classes and tone markers, and the tone rules are explained. Punctuation marks and diacritics are introduced and the transcription method is explained. Lesson 1 contains all basic information on language and script, and should be used as reference material while studying the following lessons.

In lessons 2 through 6, a small but useful vocabulary is built up, and the very basics of Thai grammar are explained. The correct pronunciation of the tones will be practiced through tone exercises. In lessons 7 through 11 for beginners, you will be made thoroughly acquainted with the alphabet and with the way the Thai write their language.

The alphabet is discussed as follows:

- In lesson 7: The consonants ก, ຂ, ໌, ຕ, ດ, ຈ, ຂ, ແ, ແ and ພ;
- In lesson 8: The consonants ນ, ຜ, ພ, ສ, ຖ, ວ, ດ, ຕ and ດ;
- In lesson 9: The consonants ທ, ຕ, ນ, ປ, ປ, ພ, ພ, ພ and ພ;
- In lesson 10: The consonants ນ, ພ, ຮ, ລ, ຈ, ຂ, ສ, ຖ, ພ, ອ and ສ;
- In lesson 11: The vowels

In lesson 12 for beginners, the theory of the consonant classes and the tone rules are repeated intensively, and the most common spelling anomalies are given. Eventually, by means of a list of 32 sample words, in which all consonants, vowels, consonant classes, tone rules, tone markers, diacritics and a choice of anomaly spellings are represented, it is clarified in detail how the combination of characters, diacritics and rules are used to represent the spoken word in written text.

It is not so that you will be effortlessly able to read any Thai text after having studied the first 12 lessons of the course. First of all, you will not yet be able to recognize Thai letters in a blink of the eye, as you are used to with Latin characters. And secondly, even if you were, your vocabulary is still not large enough to immediately recognize a word – or at least the beginning and the end of it – in a Thai text. The start has been made, though, and through the exercise which is offered in an increasing degree of difficulty during the next part of the course, you will quickly make progress. After having progressed to lesson 11 or 12 of the intermediate course, you will be able to read the Thai texts (still printed with spaces between words) without much difficulty. Four or five lessons further, the natural way of Thai writing (without spaces) won't be too difficult any more.

#### 5. Grammar

As every language, Thai uses a system of rules and principles that defines the structure of words, phrases and sentences. In the articles on grammar in this course, this system is clearly and concisely described, and explained with plenty of grammatical model sentences and examples.

In offering the learning material on grammar, thought has been given to what you will likely need most urgently to make yourself understood in your new language. On the other hand, attention is given to the grammatical oddities which make Thai so different from an Indo-European language as English. It is necessary to emphasize those differences at an early stage, so that you will learn to use those structures correctly from the beginning, and later reproduce them as an automatism. The earlier you will learn the differences between your mother tongue and Thai, the better you will later be able to use the language fluently and correctly.

With this set-up, you are made acquainted with the basic grammatical rules of the language at an early stage- a knowledge that will enable you to speak grammatically correct Thai at a grass-roots level in a relatively short time. In the meantime, you will not be spared any matter which might initially cause you to recoil, but in which a timely immersion will mean a great profit to you later.

Initial grammatical subjects include sentence structure, the use of nouns, adjectives and verbs (under which all possible translations of the verb ‘to be’). Also, attention is given to grammatical and idiomatic phenomena in Thai, which are almost or completely unknown in English, such as classifiers, the rich choice in (polite, neutral and familiar) personal pronouns, and the remarkable use of the words ‘ไป’ - ‘to go’ and ‘มา’ - ‘to come’ as direction markers in Thai.

From lesson 1 for intermediate students on, when you are sufficiently intimate with the script, tones and basic grammar of your new language, all other grammatical features of the Thai language will be explained.

The language in which the grammar articles are written is kept as clear and simple as possible. Linguistic vernacular outside the simplest grammatical terminology is explained. In all cases where examples can illustrate an issue more clearly, models or frames are given. Sample sentences further explain the matter.

In many cases, the grammar article in a lesson will conclude an aspect of Thai grammar, but sometimes a grammatical subject is spread over two or more lessons. Related subjects are covered in consecutive lessons. Some subjects discussed on a basic level in the first twelve lessons will be repeated and expanded in the intermediate section of the course. Some examples are:

- In lesson 1 for intermediate students, the character and use of adjectives in Thai is explained. In lesson 2, the matter is expanded in an article on composite adjectives. Finally, in lessons 3 and 4 the comparison is covered.
- In lesson 5 for beginners, you’ll be made acquainted with the existence and the use of classifiers. Subsequently, you’ll learn more classifiers ‘along the way’ by continuing reading the dialogues. Finally, in lesson 10 for intermediate students, attention is again directed towards the subject, and a list is given of the most frequently used classifiers.
- In lesson 11 for beginners, the imperative mode and its negative are discussed. In lesson 17 for intermediate students, the subject of the negative imperative is expanded. Finally, in lesson 27 for intermediate students, a list of example sentences is given with imperatives and incentives in several gradations of urgency and politeness.

Through gradual expansion of the learning matter, it is avoided that you are forced to learn everything about a subject at once. Besides, by repetition and expansion of important or difficult subjects, you will understand and remember the matter better than when you learn it in just one go.

## 6. Idioms

The idiom of a language consists of phrases of figurative meaning and figures of speech. Sayings and proverbs also belong to these categories. Often, idioms have an anomalous grammatical form. The adage goes that only if one has mastered the difficult translatable idioms of a language, one may call oneself a fluent speaker of it. As an idiom-rich language, this goes maybe even more for Thai than for other languages.

In English, sayings and proverbs are often ‘fossilized’, and sound somewhat old fashioned and banal. In Thai, there also exist such truisms, but most sayings are adaptable. In popular language, maxims are often adapted according to the circumstance in which one wants to use

them. People don't only use them in their fixed forms, but vary them, and play word games with the adages, which then often convey very subtle messages. It is in your best interest to get acquainted with the basic forms of sayings and proverbs, on which all the variants they'll hear are based. Due to the short words of the language, the idioms sound snappy and vivacious. Alliteration, reduplication, internal rhyme and metre are also often used to make an idiom sound even better.

Articles on idioms are found spread throughout the course, but the pith of the matter can be found in lessons 33 through 36 (for intermediate) and 1 through 12 for advanced students. Next to the development of reading and writing Thai on an advanced level, a lot of attention is given to the study of Thai idioms in those lessons.

## 7. Cultural information

While a language course might not be the ideal place to educate students in culture and customs of a country or people, language is not complete without a basic knowledge of the culture of the area where the language is spoken. In the course, a few of the most conspicuous traits of the Thai people, the Thai state and Thai society are described and explained. It must be pointed out emphatically that none of the many festivals or ceremonies that make the country famous is discussed, nor are cultural expressions as visual art, music or literature. Notes are made on cultural phenomena that cannot be helped being observed on a daily basis, that might interest people or leave them in wonder. Therefore, an article on Thai nicknames can be found in this course, and another about nobility in Thailand. There is a piece about the places where young Thai people like to go on holiday, another article is about non-lingual interaction and the traditional Thai greeting, the 'ไหว้' (wâj). Also, cultural background information is given in the explanation of not directly translatable concepts, such as in a cultural note on the different kinds of ghosts and supernatural beings one can find in Thailand. The further you advance in the course, the better your Thai will become, and the less reason there will be to explain Thai culture in English. The explanatory function is gradually taken over by the dialogues themselves, in which phenomena are explained in plain Thai. For instance, in the dialogues of the last chapters of the course the preparations for a Thai wedding are described, while the dialogues of lessons 1 through 6 for advanced students of the course takes place against the background of the student revolution of October 1973.

## 8. Tone exercises

After a brief introduction to basic grammar and script, in the lessons 4 through 6 for beginners you will learn the five tones of Thai by examples and exercises. Tones are sometimes unknown to – and often underestimated by – the foreign student of Thai. As phonemes though, tones are just as important for the definition of the meaning of a word as consonants, vowels and diphthongs. The tone exercises are printed in the lessons in transcription script, and are to be found in spoken form on the appropriate CD. It is of great importance to be able to pronounce and hear the tones correctly as mid (level), low, rising, falling or high. After the special tone exercises in the lessons 4 through 6, your ear will be continuously trained in the appreciation of tones by listening to and repeating the dialogues and vocabulary lists of every lesson on the CDs.

## 9. Writing exercises and tests

Exercises in the course - which can also be used as tests - are of two kinds. In each lesson there is a section in the exercises on which the answers are given. These exercises are mainly designed for those of you who study the course independently. Answers to the second part of the exercises are not given in the course. These exercises are primarily designed for students

who study the course with a mentor or teacher. Exercises of the second kind take a little more effort to complete; they also often ask you to formulate your personal opinion. Exercises in creative writing are frequently part of the tests from lesson 1 for intermediate students on. From the beginning of the course, you will be forced to use Thai. Initially, you will still be allowed to use the transcription script in answering questions and filling in exercises (before you have learned the whole alphabet through the several stages offered in the beginner's course), but in lesson 11 for beginners, you are asked for the first time to provide a translation of a number of sentences written in Thai script, while in lesson 12 for beginners, the answers on the exercises have to be given in both Thai and transcription script. From lesson 1 for intermediate students on, the answers on all exercises must be given exclusively in Thai script. In the part of the exercises on which the answers are not given, you will be forced to translate from English into Thai, or at a later stage, to think directly in Thai. The formulation of the exercises is therefore put in English, in order to keep you from the temptation of copying Thai words from the questions into your answers. Apart from supplying the right answer to the question, you also have to think about your right use of grammar and vocabulary. An extra, excellent exercise is formed through letting you search for words you don't know in the lessons, the vocabulary lists or in your dictionary.

In the exercises and tests not only the vocabulary and grammar given in the lesson concerned are rehearsed and tested. For most exercises, you'll have to reach back for information given in earlier lessons as well. In order to be able to answer each lesson's questions in good Thai sentences, you must always be on top of all grammar and vocabulary already explained. Obviously, also in the creative writing exercises your written language skills are tested on all levels.

## **11. Vocabulary lists and appendices**

Two extensive vocabulary lists have been compiled for this course. The first is a list which contains all words used in the first 24 lessons of the course: lessons 1 through 12 for beginners; and lessons 1 through 12 for intermediate students. Every Thai word in this vocabulary is provided with a transcription and a comprehensive translation into English.

The main vocabulary list follows at the end of the course for advanced students. The Thai words in this list have not been transcribed. In both vocabularies, the number of the lesson in which each respective word appears for the first time is given in square brackets behind the entry.

Appendices are on the following subjects:

- Appendix 1: The alphabet, the tone rules and the consonant classes.
- Appendix 2: The 'alphabet song'
- Appendix 3: Classifiers
- Appendix 4: List of common abbreviations

## **12. Thanks**

My thanks go to Prince of Songkla University's Faculty of International Studies (FIS), and Dean Supachai Sangpunya, who supported the idea of producing and publishing a comprehensive Thai language course for use at university level. Further thanks to Ass. Prof. Chitralada Sangpunya, who gave me the opportunity to teach Thai to our foreign students. Thanks to all my students for pointing out my inconsequences, typos and mistakes while studying from earlier editions of this work. And my special thanks to Ajarn Alexandra Gonzales, Ajarn Morgan Lake and Ajarn Scott Lithgow, who edited my English. Last but not least thanks to all my Thai friends and colleagues, who were always happy to answer any question on their language I could think of.



# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 1

### Introduction to language, grammar and script ความรู้เบื้องต้นในการใช้ภาษาไทย

- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 The Thai language
- 1.3 The Thai alphabet
- 1.4 The alphabet and the five tones
- 1.5 Diacritics and punctuation marks
- 1.6 Writing Thai
- 1.7 Our transcription method
- 1.8 Thai grammar and script
- 1.9 Exercises

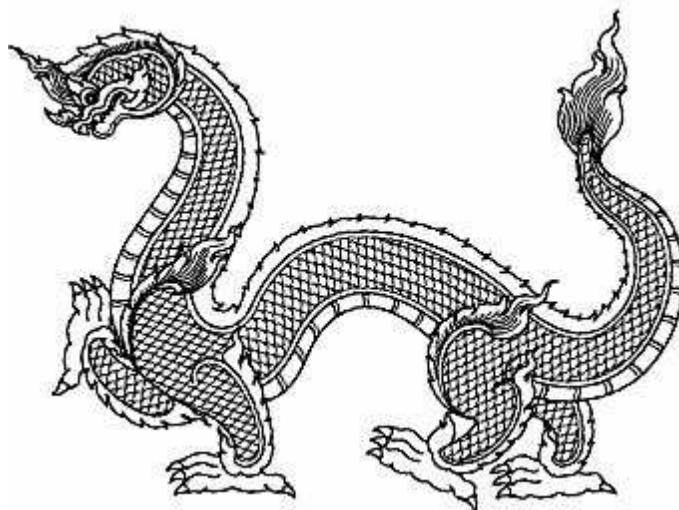


## Thai for Beginners

## 1.1 Introduction

If you want to learn Thai well, you will encounter some barriers which you didn't meet when you learned French or Spanish in secondary school. Thai is not an Indo-European language. It does not resemble English. Thai has taken some loan-words from Chinese, some from Malay, and another few hundred from Pali, Sanskrit, and Khmer. Even if you have made a thorough study of those languages, it won't help you with recognizing their meaning in Thai. In the course of your study of the language, you'll discover a significant number of loan-words from English, but initially, you'll be thoroughly swamped with information which you're badly going to need in learning to manage the language, but which you might not consider useful at first sight. The experience of every foreigner who has taken on this effort is: that after a short period of intensive study of a lot of theory, a stage will follow in which one will have become able to express oneself in Thai in a satisfying, adult way, without having to fall back into 'tourist-Thai' – that is: without picking up wrong habits which are difficult to get rid of later. After this second stage, during which one makes oneself familiar with the language up to a level of semi-fluency (through practical conversation and reading children's books and other simple texts), another phase of learning usually follows, in which one deepens one's knowledge of the language by reading newspapers and magazines, watching films and television programs, and having profound conversations with Thai friends. After that, a specialization in a scientific, religious or philosophical field might be something just for you.

This 12-lesson beginner's course has been written with the intention to lead you through the first stages of learning the Thai language.



The contents of this first lesson are offered for your review. The subject matter, which will probably seem rather intricate to a beginning student when browsing through this lesson, is not meant to learn by heart immediately at this stage, nor will you be expected to be able to apply everything of it actively and immediately. Gradually, the contents of the first lesson will be repeated, rehearsed and expanded over the next eleven lessons. This lesson is intended as an extensive introduction to the Thai language and the Thai writing system, and functions, next to the appendices, as fundamental back-up material that you may find convenient to use as a reminder during the course of your study.

## 1.2 The Thai Language

Thai is a member of the Tai-Kadai family of languages. Thai is spoken in Thailand, where it is the national language. Lao, the national language of the Laotian People's Republic, is closely related to Thai. In the Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region in the People's Republic of China, the northern Tai language Zhuang is spoken. Furthermore, a large ethnic group in Burma, the Shan, speaks a Tai language. Tai languages are also spoken in Northeastern India, Northern Vietnam, and Cambodia, where smaller groups use languages related to Thai as their mother tongue.

Different linguists maintain different theories about the origin of Thai and the relationship of Thai with other languages. But there is historical evidence which points to the fact that the Thai people, and with them their language, originate from southern China, from where they were driven south beginning in the ninth century C.E. (A.D.); first by the Han-Chinese, and later by the Mongols. In the area that stretches from contemporary Laos, North and Northeast Thailand, and the Shan State in Burma, Thai centers developed, which were reigned by war-lords. Those sovereigns ruled over areas peopled with Thai, as well as Khmer, Mon and other ethnic groups. The first founding of a genuine Thai nation state took place in the eleventh century, culminating in the first great Thai kingdom, Sukhothai, with King Ramkhamhaeng the Great as its most influential ruler. The oldest still existing inscription in the Thai language is from that period. The Kingdom of Ayutthaya took over the function of Sukhothai as seat of a ruler who exacted tribute in exchange for protection in the late middle Ages. After feuding with the Burmese for hundreds of years, in 1767 Ayutthaya lost a decisive battle and was burnt to the ground. The Burmese didn't only demolish palaces and temples, but also all libraries in the area. From Thai as it was written before 1767, only stone inscriptions remain. The Burmese didn't stay, though. A general called Taksin pushed them back. Taksin built his capital in Thonburi, and was king for a while, but the first ruler of the Chakri Dynasty, the still ruling lineage of Kings, soon followed. The site of the capital city was moved to Bangkok on the other side of the Chao Phraya River. In 1782, Bangkok became the new capital of a new Thai state called Rattanakosin, after the ruling dynasty.

Foreigners had used the name 'Siam' for the Thai Kingdom of Ayutthaya for a long time, and it stuck during the first few decades of the Rattanakosin Dynasty as 'Sàyāam'. Thai used this name with foreigners from the 1850s onwards to identify themselves and their country. The name 'Siam' appeared on banknotes and stamps and in international correspondence. In 1939, the name of the country was officially changed to 'Thailand'.

Sources of written Thai (Siamese) are numerous since the founding of Bangkok. Although a modern, reasonably educated Thai would have great difficulties reading inscriptions from the time of King Ramkhamhaeng, he would be able to read the language after the founding of Thonburi, just as easily as we would read an original edition of a novel by Swift or Defoe. Just as in English, nothing substantial has changed in the Thai language during the last two hundred and some years.

Thai is a tonal language and can be typified as an isolating language, just like most other tonal languages, such as Mandarin and Burmese. The language shows some fusional traits through loan morphemes and loan constructions from, for instance, Pali and Khmer. Modern Thai is written in a syllabic letter script, just like Sanskrit (Devanagari script), and Khmer. The first forms of Thai writing were based on italic Khmer, or handwritten Khmer, which in its turn has been developed from Indian scripts. The Thai script is ultimately, via the just mentioned italic Khmer, and just like the Burmese and Mon scripts, most directly based on the Pali-script.

From the shape of some of the Thai letters, one can still see their distant relationship with their Devanagari cousins.

## 1.3 The Thai alphabet

The Thai alphabet consists of a set of 44 consonants (อักษร พยัญชนา -aksōon phajancháná?) and a set of 32 vowels (ສະ- sàrà?), including diphthongs (ສະ-ສູ່ - siāng sàrà? khūu) and triptongs (ສະ-ຮຸມ ສາມ ຕ້າ - siāng sàrà? rûam sääm tua), which are formed with 18 different characters. This number includes four of the consonant character signs (ຂ - joo ják, ຫ - roo ruea, ວ - woo wēen and ໂ - oo àang), which are used either independently, or in combination with other characters as vowel-, diphthong- or triphthong signs. Apart from this, a few characters indicate a consonant sound in combination with a vowel sound (ຳ (am), ຄ ri, reu or rue, ຄາ (rue), ຄີ (lue) and ຄັ (lue)). You will see that some characters are used often in Thai written texts, others less frequently, and some hardly ever. There are even two consonants (ຂໍ - khōo khùat and ຂ້ - khoo khon), which are never used anymore, but are still officially part of the Thai alphabet. Only in handwritten texts from before circa 1870 these two letters still occur.

### cd 1a track 1

### 1.3.1 The 44 consonants

All 44 consonants have a name. When orally spelling a word, that name is mentioned after each consonant occurring in the relevant word. This might remind one of the corny English primary school writing primers in which A stands for Apple, et cetera, but is rather more comparable with the sign code which is used in air traffic control towers and in the military, in order to avoid misunderstandings and accidents. Some consonants are very similar in sound and usage, and can be easily confused when not pronounced together with their names.

In the first vertical column you will find the Thai consonant, then next to it by the same consonant together with the noun after which it is named. In most cases, the name of the consonant starts with the relevant consonant, but there are also consonants which are only found back somewhere in the middle of the noun after which they are named.

In the following column, you will find the transcription of the sound of the consonant as it is pronounced at the beginning of a syllable (standard pronunciation), with (in parentheses) the transcription of the name of the consonant.

In the next column you will find the pronunciation of the consonant at the end of a syllable (end pronunciation). The apostrophe (') behind a so-called 'stop' ('k', 'p' or 't' sound) indicates that the sound is 'unreleased'. This means that the consonant is formed in the mouth at the normal point of articulation, but not 'released' with a puff of air. If you want to get an idea about how these unreleased stops sound, you may keep in mind how the first 't' in the word 'otter' sounds, or the first 'p' in 'upper', or the first 'c' in 'soccer'. The apostrophe behind stops will, by the way, not be used in the rest of the course after unreleased stops at the end of syllables. The unreleased pronunciation of stops in those places is a rule on which there are no exceptions. The unwritten stop, known as 'glottal stop' at the end of a syllable sounds as the sound, sometimes transcribed by ' in phonetically written Cockney, in words such as 'it' (i'), 'traffic' (traffi') and matter (ma'er). It is transcribed as ?.

In the last vertical column, the class to which the different consonants belong is indicated with the letter L for the Low Class, The letter M for the Middle Class, and the letter H for the High Class consonants. The class of a consonant is essential to the written representation of tones in the Thai language.

## The Thai Consonants:

Letter and Name	Transcription	Meaning Name	Pronunciation			Class
			Begin Syllable	Syllable	End Syllable	
ก ก - ແກ	k (koo - kàj)	chicken	k		k'	M
ຂ ຂ - ແຂ	kh (khoo - khàj)	egg	kh		k'	H
ຂ່ ຂ່ - ຂວາດ	khoo - khuat	bottle		(obsolete)		
ຄ ຄ - ຄວາຍ	khoo - khwaaj	water buffalo	kh		k'	L
ຄ ຄ - ຄນ	khoo - khon	person		(obsolete)		
ຂ ຂ - ຮະຫັງ	khoo - rákhang	temple-bell	kh		k'	L
ງ ກ - ປູ	ngoo - nguu	snake	ng		ng	L
ຈ ຈ - ຈານ	coo - caan	plate	c		t'	M
ຈ ຈ - ງຶ້ງ	chöo - chìng	cymbal	ch		t'	H
ຂ ຂ - ຂ້າງ	choo - cháang	elephant	ch		t'	L
ຂ ຂ - ໂສ່	soo - sôo	chain	s		t'; s <sup>1</sup>	L
ຜ ຜ - ເຜອ	choo - cheu	tree	ch		t'	L
ງ ກູ - ກົງ	joo - jing	woman	j		n	L
ດ ດູ - ຂໍາດາ	doo - cháadaa	dancer's crown	d		t'	M
ດ ດູ - ປຳກັກ	too - pàtak	goad	t		t'	M
ທ ທີ - ຖົານ	thoo - thaan	pedestal	th		t'	H
ທ ທີ - ມະໂທ	thoo - monthøø	name of a giantess	th, sometimes d		t'	as th: L as d: M
ຜ ຜູ - ຜູ້ເມົາ	thoo - phûuthâw	old man	th		t'	L
ນ ນຸ - ເນົນ	noo - neen	novice	n		n	L

Letter and Name	Transcription	Meaning Name	Pronunciation			Class
			Begin Syllable	End Syllable		
ດ ດ - ເດີກ	doo - dèk	child	d	t'		M
ຕ ຕ - ເຕ່າ	too - tàw	turtle	t	t'		M
ຖ ບ - ບຸນ	thoo - thündg	bag	th	t'		H
ທ ທ - ທແຫາຣ	thoo - tháhăan	soldier	th	t'		L
ນ ນ - ນູ້	noo - nüu	mouse	n	n		L
ບ ບ - ໃບໄມ້	boo - bajmáaj	leaf	b	p'		M
ປ ປ - ປລາ	poo - plaa	fish	p	p'		M
ຜ ຜ - ຜິ້ງ	phoo - phûeng	bee	ph	p'		H
ຝ ຝ - ຝາ	f��o - f��aa	lid, cover	f	—		H
ພ ພ - ພານ	phoo - phaan	tray	ph	p'		L
ຟ ພ - ພັນ	foo - fan	tooth	f	p', f <sup>1</sup>		L
ກ ກ - ກໍາເກາ	phoo - s��amphaw	junk ship	ph	p'		L
ມ ມ - ມໍາ	moo - máa	horse	m	m		L
ຢ ຢ - ຢັກຊ່	joo - ják	giant	j	j		L
ຮ ຮ - ເຮືອ	roo - ruea	ship	r	n		L
ລ ລ - ລົງ	loo - ling	monkey	l	n		L
ວ ວ - ແວນ	woo - w��en	ring	w	w		L
ສ ສ - ສາລາ	s��o - s��alaa	pavilion	s	t'		H
ໜ ໂ - ໂາຈີ	s��o - rues��i	hermit	s	t'		H
ລ ລ - ເລືອ	s��o - s��eu��a	tiger	s	t'		H
໭ ແ - ແີບ	h��o - h��up	chest, trunk	h,	— <sup>3</sup>		H
໌ ພ - ພູພາ	loo - cùlaa	kite	l	n		L

Letter and Name		Transcription	Meaning	Name	<u>Pronunciation</u>			Class
					Begin Syllable	End Syllable		
ອ	ອ - อ້າງ	oo - àang		basin, bowl, tub	oo, o, a;		o, oo	M
					class-modifier <sup>2</sup>			
					vowel-bearer <sup>4</sup>			
ອ	ອ - ນົກຫຼຸກ	hoo - nókhûuk		owl	h		—	L

## Notes on the consonants:

- <sup>1</sup> - For loanwords from English, many speakers pronounce these letters at the end of a word as in English; so as ‘s’ and ‘f’.
  - <sup>2</sup> - The Consonant Class Modifiers; **ໜ** or **ໝ**, when placed before a Low Class consonant, modify the original consonant into a High Class (in the case of **ໜ**), or into a Middle Class (in the case of **ໝ**) consonant. In many cases, this is important for the notation of the tone of a syllable. The letter **ໝ** is a Class Modifier in only four words: ແຈ້າ - jāa - ‘don’t’, ແຢ້າກ - jāak - ‘to want’, ແຢ່າງ - ‘thing’, and ແຢີ - ‘to stay’, ‘to live’. The letter **ໜ** is used considerably more often as a Class Modifier.
  - <sup>3</sup> - On the end of a syllable, **ໜ** is only used in combination with the mark ‘kaaran’ (ᢌ). A *kaaran* is a sign above a last consonant of a word, which signifies that this marked consonant is not pronounced (see 1.5.; Punctuation Marks).
  - <sup>4</sup> - When seen alone, a written **ໝ** is pronounced as ‘oo’, ‘o’ or ‘a’. **ໝ** also acts as the ‘bearer’ of other vowels. It takes the vowel sound of the vowel that accompanies it. **ໝ** can only be the ‘bearer’ of the vowel, when the vowel is in the initial position in a syllable. In the vowel-list in 1.3.2., you will see **ໝ** act as a bearer of every vowel which is described in the lesson. For writing a single vowel-, diphthong- or triphthong-sound, use must be made of the vowel-bearer **ໝ**.

### Observations:

- ㅕ (joo ják) and ㅖ (woo wěen) are, just as in English ‘y’ and ‘w’, so-called semivowels. They can be found at the end of a syllable, but in such cases they usually form a diphthong or triphthong together with other vowels. Between two consonants, the pronunciation of ㅖ becomes a diphthong, ‘ua’, like for instance in the word ‘ພູາກ’ (phûak). At the end of a syllable, ㅖ is pronounced as ‘w’, as in the word ‘low’. For instance: ໝ້າ - meew - ‘cat’. At the end of a syllable, ㅕ is pronounced as ‘y’, as in the English ‘boy’. For instance: ຂ້າຍ - khăaj - ‘to sell’.
  - You will probably have noticed that some of the above consonants do not exist in the same way as they do in English. The notion that a sound ‘ng’ at the beginning of a syllable can exist, is for some people quite confusing and therefore a sound which they find hard to reproduce. To pronounce the sound, you could start with saying ‘banger’ (as the popular British sausage), but leave out the ‘ba’-part of the word. Replace the final ‘r’ with an ‘n’, and you’ll pronounce ‘ngen’ (ເງິນ), which means ‘money’ or ‘silver’ in Thai.
  - In English, we know the aspirated consonants ‘ch’ (as in ‘church’), ‘k’ (as in ‘kettle’, ‘cat’), ‘p’ (as in ‘pet’) and ‘t’ (as in ‘talk’). We find the non-aspirated varieties of those consonants back in other languages: Such as in the Malay word ‘cuci’ (non-aspirated ‘ch’), the French word ‘concorde’ (non-aspirated k), the Spanish word ‘palabra’ (non-aspirated ‘p’) and the

Italian word ‘tenente’ (non-aspirated ‘t’). In Thai, the aspirated as well as the non-aspirated varieties of these sounds exist, and they are distinctive. This means that, in Thai, they are not varieties of the same sound, but distinctively different phonemes. This in its turn means that aspiration or non-aspiration in a consonant can define the meaning of a morpheme.

Compare for instance: ไก่ (*kàj* - chicken) and ไข่ (*khàj* - egg), จน (*con* - poor) and ชน (*chon* - to collide), ตาก (*tàak* - to hang to dry, to expose) and ตาก (*thàak* - to chip, to hew, to graze (of a bullet)), ป้าย (*pâaj* - label, sign, signboard, bus-stop sign) พ่าย (*phâaj* - to be defeated)

- You will have noticed that there are three (still actively used) letters for ‘kh’ in Thai, three for ‘ch’, two for ‘t’, four for ‘s’, two for ‘j’, two for ‘n’, six for ‘th’, two for ‘f’, two for ‘l’, two for ‘h’, two for ‘d’ and three for ‘ph’. A reason for this luxury is that Thai is a tonal language, and in a syllabic letter-script, there must be enough letters in an alphabet to note those tones down. To simplify notation, all consonants must be divided in three Registers or Classes; High, Middle and Low. By designing consonants of which the Non-Class characteristics are equal, but which, by their membership of those different classes, can control the tone of the syllable they lead, the Thai have developed a basic instrument with which it is possible to note down the tone of a Thai syllable very adequately. The division in classes of the consonants is therefore one of the reasons for the many consonants with the same non-Class characteristics. Another reason for the multitude of consonants is that some letters arrived with early loan words from Pali and Sanskrit, that stood for sounds which do not (longer) fit in the Thai pronunciation system. Examples are the retroflex ‘t’-s (ຖ, ຖ) and post-alveolar ‘s’-es (ສ, ສ), the aspirated ‘bh’ (ບ) and the palatal ‘n’ (ນ). These letters simply lost their distinction from others, as they were gradually completely integrated in the Thai phonemic system. ບ and ສ became equal to ສ; retroflex plosives ປ and ນ moved in the direction of ນ and ບ, aspirated, voiced ນ became unvoicedas ວ, and palatal ນ equal to ວ. The Laotian script, which is from a far more recent date than the Thai, but is based on Thai and older Thai scripts, has not so many ‘superfluous’ consonants.
- Like in every language which already has had its own script for a number of centuries, many Thai words have an anomalous spelling. In this course, all anomalies in spelling will be pointed out to you. A number of words, for instance, start with clusters of initial consonants, like ຕຣ (th + r), ຈຣ (c + r), ສຣ (s + r) or ສຣ (s + r). ຕຣ is pronounced as ‘s’, ຈຣ as ‘c’, and ສຣ as well as ສຣ are pronounced as ‘s’. The combination ກຣ is pronounced as ‘a’ (ກຣມ - *kam* - ‘karma’) or ‘an’ (ກຣົກຣ - *kankraj* - ‘scissors’). These are, as you can see, not real clusters, but fixed combinations of consonants with an irregular pronunciation. Furthermore, the tones in some words are pronounced differently from how they should be pronounced according to the rules for writing tones down. This can be either due to modern developments in the living language (such as in the case of the tones for the word ດີໍຈຳນ (ດີໍຈຳນ - ‘I’ (spoken by women)), which is actually pronounced ‘dichán’ in modern Thai), or just without any obvious reason (such as in the word ‘khàmøoj’ - ‘thief’, which is actually written as khàmøoj (ຂ້າມອູຈ). In the vocabulary in the lessons, an anomalous spelling or pronunciation has been marked with an asterisk (\*), and the correct pronunciation is given in the transcription-script

**cd 1a      1.3.2      The 32 vowels (including diphthongs and triphthongs)**  
**track 2**

A vowel or a diphthong can be written behind, in front of, under, above or around a consonant. The sound element that makes a diphthong a triphthong always follows the last element of the diphthong, so triphthongs are not considered at this juncture. In the following list, ə always functions as the ‘bearer’ of the vowel or diphthong, and has no sound value of its own. It takes the sound qualities of the vowel- or diphthong sound it bears. Beware of the fact that ə can also be part of a diphthong. In those cases, ə as ‘bearer’ is obviously followed by ə as part of the diphthong. A word written as əa is pronounced as ‘aa’ (‘ah’). If ə were substituted by a consonant with an independent sound value, like ٹ (non-aspirated ‘t’), the word would be ٹا; ‘taa’ (‘tah’). In the following list, the spot where ə stands can be taken by any consonant, and defines the space that must be occupied by a consonant for a script sequence to make sense. A ‘written sound’, be it vowel or diphthong, is called ສະ - ‘sàrà?’ (*also: ‘sarà?; ‘sarà’*) in Thai. In the transcription, the tone of the vowels and diphthongs in the list have been ignored, as the tone of a syllable is dependent on the class of the consonant it starts with, as well as its ending.

### The Thai vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs

ອ and vowel/diphthong	name	transcription	pronunciation
ອະ (open syllable)	ສະ ອະ	sàrà? a?	a <sup>1</sup>
ອ + consonant	ໄມ້ ທັນ ອາກາສ	máajhănaakàat	a <sup>1</sup>
ອາ	ສະ ອາ	sàrà? aa	aa
ອີ	ສະ ອີ	sàrà? i?	i; i?
ອີໍ	ສະ ອີໍ	sàrà? ii	ii
ອີ໌	ສະ ອີ໌	sàrà? ue?	ue; ue?
ອີ່(ອ)	ສະ ອີ່ອ	sàrà? ue	<u>ue</u>
ອຸ	ສະ ອຸ	sàrà? u?	u; u?
ອູ	ສະ ອູ	sàrà? uu	uu
ເອະ (open syllable)	ສະ ເອະ	sàrà? e?	e; e? <sup>2</sup>
ເອີ້ + consonant	ສະ ເອ - ໄມ້ ໄຕ່ ອູ	sàrà? e - máaj tàj khúu	e <sup>2</sup>
ເອ	ສະ ເອ	sàrà? ee	ee
ແເອະ (open syllable)	ສະ ແເອະ	sàrà? ε?	ε; ε?

ອ and vowel/diphthong	name	transcription	pronunciation
ແອີ + consonant	ສະ ແອ - ໄມ້ ໄຕ ຕູ້	sàrà? ee - máaj taj khúu	e
ແອ	ສະ ແອ	sàrà? ee	ee
ໂອະ	ສະ ໂອະ	sàrà? o?	o; o?
ໂອ	ສະ ໂອ	sàrà? oo	oo
ເອາະ	ສະ ເອາະ	sàrà? o?	o?
ອອ	ອ ອ່າງ	oo àang	oo
ເອອະ	ສະ ເອອະ	sàrà? eu?	eu?
ເອອ (open syllable)	ສະ ເອອ	sàrà? <u>eu</u>	<u>eu</u> <sup>3</sup>
ເອີ + consonant	ສະ ເອ ... ສະ ອີ	sàrà? ee ... sàrà? i?	eu; <u>eu</u> <sup>3</sup>
ເອຍີ	ສະ ເອ ... ຍ ພັກໜີ	sàrà? ee ... joo ják	ej; <u>ej</u> <sup>4</sup>
ເອີຍະ	ສະ ເອີຍະ	sàrà? ia?	ia?
ເອີຍ	ສະ ເອີຍ	sàrà? iia	ia; iia
ເອີອະ	ສະ ເອີອະ	sàrà? uea?	uea?
ເອີອ	ສະ ເອີອ	sàrà? <u>uea</u>	uea; <u>uea</u>
ອັວະ	ສະ ອັວະ	sàrà? ua?	ua?
ອັວ	ສະ ອັວ	sàrà? uua	ua; uua <sup>4</sup>
ອຳ	ສະ ອຳ	sàrà? am	am
ໄ (ໄອ)	ໄມ້ ມ້ວນ	máaj múan	aj; aa(j)
ໄ (ໄອ)	ໄມ້ ມລາຍ	máaj málaaj	aj; aa(j)
ເອາ	ສະ ເອາ	sàrà? ee ... sàrà? aa	aw
ຖ	ຕັວ ຮີ	tua rúe?; tua rí?	rúe?; rí, <u>rue</u> <sup>5</sup>
ຖາ	ຕັວ ຮີວ	tua <u>rue</u>	<u>rue</u> <sup>5</sup>
ກ	ຕັວ ລີ	tua lúe?	lue?; leu? <sup>5</sup>
ກາ	ຕັວ ລີວ	tua <u>lue</u>	<u>lue</u> <sup>5</sup>

Notes on the vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs:

- <sup>1</sup> The short a/a? - sound is written with **ສ່າມ** a - (ອ)ະ - in open syllables (for instance ຈະ - ca/cà?). In closed syllables, the short a is written with **ໄມ້ທັນອາກາສ** (máajhānaakàat) it is written ອີ + consonant (for instance ອັນ - an).
- <sup>2</sup> The short e/e? - sound is written **ເອະ** in open syllables (for instance ເປະ - pè?). In closed syllables, the short e is written **ເອີ້ນ** + consonant (for instance **ເພື້ນ** - phen).
- <sup>3</sup> The **eu** - sound is written **ເອອ** in open syllables (for instance **ເລອ** - leu). In closed syllables, the **eu** - sound is written **ເອ** + consonant (for instance **ເດີນ**).
- <sup>4</sup> The diphthong ua is written **ອ້າວ** in open syllables (for instance **ຕ້າວ** - tua). In closed syllables, the diphthong ua is written with **ວ** (woo w  en) + consonant (for instance **ມວານ** - muan).
- <sup>5</sup> The combined consonant-vowel **ຖ** (**ຕ້າວ** ຖ - tua r  ue; tua r  i; tua **reu**) is pronounced as ‘r  ue’ when paired with the letters **ຄ**, **ນ**, **ພ**, **ມ** or **ຫ**, as for instance in **ຄຖາສົດ** - khárúehàat, **ນຖມລ** - n  áumlon, and **ພຖ້ຫລບດີ** - ph  áuehâts  aboodii . It is pronounced as ‘r  i’ when paired with the letters **ກ**, **ຈ**, **ຫ**, **ປ**, **ຟ** or **ສ**, as for instance in **ກຖ້າສູງ** - kr  ts  adaa, **ທຖ້າສູງ** - thr  ts  adii, **ປຖ້າສູງ** - pr  ts  adaa. In only one word, the character is pronounced as ‘**reu**’: **ຖາດີ** (r  uedii), **ຖາສີ** (r  uesii). **ຖ** (l  ue) and **ຖາ** (l  ue) are not used anymore, but, when still productive, their use was based on the same principles as that of **ຖ** and **ຖາ**.

### The inherent vowels: short ‘o’, short ‘a’ and long ‘oo’

Inherent vowels are vowels, which are not represented by a character. In words that exist of two written consonants, the inherent vowel is a short ‘o’. For instance:

<b>ນກ</b>	<i>nók</i>	bird	<b>ກດ</b>	<i>k��ot</i>	to press, to push
<b>ບຖ</b>	<i>b��ot</i>	chapter, part	<b>ມດ</b>	<i>m��ot</i>	ant

In polysyllabic words, an inherent, unwritten ‘a’ is pronounced between consonants which are not accepted clusters in Thai:

<b>ສມອງ</b>	<i>s��am��ong</i>	brain	<b>ชນະ</b>	<i>ch��án��</i>	to win
<b>ຜລັງ</b>	<i>ph��ál��ang</i>	power	<b>ມໍາ</b>	<i>m��áh��aa</i>	great
<b>ຂນາດ</b>	<i>kh��àn��at</i>	size	<b>ຝຣັງ</b>	<i>f��ar��ang</i>	guava

In some cases, an inherent vowel is pronounced long. This rule is valid in stressed syllables. The inherent vowel is thus pronounced ‘oo’. See for instance:

<b>ນັກ</b>	<i>n��ákhoon</i>	city	<b>ອມຮ</b>	<i>àmoon</i>	immortal
------------	------------------	------	------------	--------------	----------

ອ used as an independent, unstressed short syllable at the beginning of a word is pronounced as short ‘a’. In these cases, don’t confuse its function with that of class-modifier as mentioned in 1.3.1., in which ອ sits at the same initial position in a word. See for instance:

<b>ອວ່ອຍ</b>	<i>àrooj</i>	tasty	<b>ອຸ່ນ</b>	<i>àng��un</i>	grape
<b>ອເມେରିକା</b>	<i>àmeer��ikaa</i>	America	<b>ອົກສିଟି</b>	<i>aph��isìt</i>	privilege

Notice that in the above examples, **à** is an unstressed syllable consisting of a single sound and a single letter. The tone of **à** (à) is low according to the tone rules. In practice, unstressed initial syllables are often pronounced in a mid tone (a).

**à** in initial, stressed position in front of a syllable starting with **s** is pronounced as ‘oo’.

อรชร	ooráchoon	beautiful	อรทัย	oráthaj	lady
------	-----------	-----------	-------	---------	------

**à** in initial position in a closed syllable (whether final stop or nasal), is pronounced as ‘o’. See for instance:

อป	òp	to bake, to roast	อม	om	to keep in the mouth
อด	òt	to refrain	อก	òk	breast

### Long and short vowels:

The difference between long and short vowels is, just like the difference between aspirated and non-aspirated consonants, distinctive in Thai. Compare, for instance, the following words:

khaw (ຂ້າວ)	he, she	khääw (ຂ້າວ)	white
caan (ຈັນທົງ)	moon	caan (ຈານ)	plate
säj (ໄສ່)	clear	sääj (ສ່າຍ່)	late
dâj (ໄດ້)	to can, to be able	dâaj (ດ້າຍ່)	thread, cord
phöm (ຜົມ)	I (male speaking)	phoom (ຜອມ)	thin, skinny

## 1.4 The alphabet and the five tones

Thai is a tonal language. When King Ramkhamhaeng the Great devised the first real Thai alphabet, he designed an alphabet that was based on the sounds of the language: not on the meaning of concepts, like Chinese script, which consist of ideograms. He also developed a script that could represent the tonemes of his language clearly and correctly. For the design of his characters, he drew from examples in non-tonal languages, such as Khmer and Pali. Khmer had consonant registers for inherent vowels, which might have made the King hit upon the idea to develop consonant registers for tones. Thus, three consonant registers were created. The registers – or classes, as we call them most often – stayed as the language developed, and additional tonal signs were designed when the language changed over the centuries from a three-tone system into a five-tone communication device. A Thai from King Ramkhamhaeng’s Kingdom of Sukhothai would not be able to read the modern script (and if you haven’t studied it, it’s difficult to make out the letters in the Sukhothai script), but the principle had stayed the same. A three-register, or three-class consonant system still exists.

To reduce the tone of a written syllable from the way it is written, you’ll need to take four factors into account:

1. The end-sound of the syllable; (**stop** (unreleased ‘k’, ‘p’ or ‘t’, or glottal stop), **nasal**, **semivowel** or **vowel**)
2. The *length* of the *vowel* in the syllable
3. The *Class* (or register) of the first *consonant* at the beginning of the syllable
4. The presence of a *Tone Mark* above the first consonant of the syllable – or in a consonant-cluster, above the last consonant in that cluster – and, if so, which one.

### 1.4.1 The Tone Markers

Below are the signs for the four tone markers (วรรณยุกต์ - *wannájúk*), along with their names, with **ə** (*oo àang*) as their bearer. In stead of **ə** (*oo àang*), any consonant can be the bearer of a tone mark:

<b>ᬁ</b>	máaj èek	<b>ᬁጀ</b>	máaj thøq	ไม้ เอก	ไม้ โท
<b>ᬁጀ</b>	máaj trii	<b>ᬁጀጀ</b>	máaj càttawaa	ไม้ ตรี	ไม้ จัตวา

For an older generation of Thai, the tones are often called after the tone marks. This is not very convenient for foreigners as you will see later, because *máaj èek* and *máaj thøq* produce different tones dependant on the class of consonant over which they are written. It is easier, especially at the beginning of your study, to refer to the tones according to the second column of Thai terms which are given below:

### 1.4.2 The Names of the tones

- |                  |                |                |    |              |               |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|----|--------------|---------------|
| 1. mid tone:     | sǐang sǎaman   | (ເສື່ອງ ສາມັນ) | or | sǐang klaang | (ເສື່ອງ ກລາງ) |
| 2. low tone:     | sǐang èek      | (ເສື່ອງ ເອກ)   | or | sǐang tàm    | (ເສື່ອງ ຕໍາ)  |
| 3. falling tone: | sǐang thøq     | (ເສື່ອງ ໂທ)    | or | sǐang long   | (ເສື່ອງ ລົງ)  |
| 4. high tone:    | sǐang trii     | (ເສື່ອງ ຕົ້ງ)  | or | sǐang sǔng   | (ເສື່ອງ ສູນ)  |
| 5. rising tone:  | sǐang càttawaa | (ເສື່ອງ ຈັດວາ) | or | sǐang khüen  | (ເສື່ອງ ຂູ່ນ) |

### 1.4.3 The Three Consonant Classes (or Consonant Registers)

The following eleven consonants are HIGH Class Consonants:

ຂ - (khōo khàj)	ຂົ - (khōo khùat)†	ຈ - (chōo chìng)
ສູ - (thōo thǎan)	ທົ - (thōo thǔng)	ພົ - (phōo phûeng)
ຝ - (fōo fää)	ສົ - (sōo säälaa)	ີົ - (sōo ruesăi)
ສົ - (sōo süea)	ຫົ - (hōo hìup)	

The following nine consonants are MIDDLE Class Consonants:

ກ - (koo kaj)	ຈ - (coo caan)	ດູ - (doo cháadaa)
ປູ - (too pàtak)	ດັ - (doo dèk)	ຕູ - (too tàw)
ບູ - (boo bajmáaj)	ປູ - (poo plaa)	ອູ - (oo àang)

The following twenty-four consonants are LOW Class Consonants:

ໝ - (khoo khwaaj)	ໝົ - (khoo khon)†	ໝູ - (khoo rákhang)
ໝ - (ngoo nguu)	ໝົ - (choo cháang)	ໝູ - (soo sôø)
ໝົ - (choo cheu)	ໝູ - (joo jíng)	ໝູ - (thoo monthøø)
ໝົ - (thoo phûuthâw)	ໝົ - (noo neen)	ໝູ - (thoo tháhăan)
ໝ - (thoo thong)	ໝົ - (noo nüu)	ໝ - (phoo phaan)
ໝ - (foo fan)	ໝົ - (phoo sámphaw)	ໝ - (moo máa)
ໝ - (joo ják)	ໝ - (roo ruea)	ໝ - (loo ling)
ໝ - (woo w��en)	ໝົ - (loo cùlaa)	ໝູ - (hoo nókh��uk)

†: obsolete consonants

#### 1.4.4 Reference Diagram for the Tone Rules

end of syllable		class of initial consonant		
		high	middle	low
no tone mark	any ending, except k, p, t or ?	rising ตาม ขา หาย	mid กิน บัว ตา	mid งาน เวลา เรียน
	k, p or t after a long vowel	low สอบ ถูก หาด	low แจก ดาว โดด	falling ราด พุด เมฆ
	short vowel; k, p or t after a short vowel	low ฉะ หัก สิบ ชุด	low จะ แบลก บท อิฐ	high ริ คง ยก พับ
with máaj èek		low สู่ ห่ม ไข่ เถื่อน	low ป่า ก่อน แจ่ม	falling ย่า แม่ roe ม่าน
with máaj thoø		falling ห้าม เลือ ข้าว	falling บ้าน ได้ ก้าง	high วุน ร้าน ทึ้ง 沃ຍ
with máaj trii			high กีก โต๊ะ เปี้ยบ จี	
with máaj cattawaa			rising เป๊ ชา โอ้ บุ้ม	

**Explanation of the reference diagram for the tone rules:** Suppose you want to find the tone for the word ‘ਮਾਕ’. It is a monosyllabic word consisting of a ນ (moo mǎa), a ຮ (sàrà aa), and a ກ (koo kàj). First you start looking in the column headed ‘end of syllable’ what characteristics are valid for your word. It ends on a ນ (koo kàj), which is a stop. Next, you are going to look what vowel your word uses; is it short or long? You’ll find out that ຮ (sàrà aa) is a long vowel, so you have a word with a long vowel, ending in a stop. The next, and in this case the last piece of information you need is the class of the initial consonant. Your word starts with ນ (moo mǎa), which is a low class consonant. Now, under the heading ‘class of initial consonant’, you will find that a syllable starting with a low initial consonant, containing a long vowel and ending in a stop, will have a falling tone. Finding the tone for words with a tone marker is easier. Just look at the column ‘class of initial consonant’ and go directly to the tone marker in question. A tone marker overrules all other tone rules!

### 1.4.5 The consonant class modifiers ‘ໜ’ and ‘ອ’

By placing a **ຫຼູບ** (ໜ) - a high class consonant - in front of a low class consonant, this low class consonant is ‘upgraded’ to become a high class consonant, itself, and thereby endowed with all the characteristics of a high class consonant. **ໜ** itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the low class consonant into a high class consonant. By placing an **ອອກ** (ອ) - a middle class consonant - in front of a low class consonant, this low class consonant is ‘upgraded’ to become a middle class consonant, and thereby endowed with all characteristics of a middle class consonant. **ອ** itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the low class consonant. Look at the following examples:

**ໜູ້**      hōo hìup . noo nūu . sàrà? uu.      nūu - mouse

HIGH CLASS consonant **ໜ** modifies LOW CLASS consonant **ູ** into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘**ໜູ້**’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a rising tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**ໜມາກ**      hōo hìup . moo māa . sàrà? aa . koo kàj.      màak - betel nut

HIGH CLASS consonant **ໜ** modifies LOW CLASS consonant **ູ** into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘**ໜມາກ**’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**ໜັງ**      hōo hìup . noo nūu . máaj thøq . sàrà? aa .      nâa - face

HIGH CLASS consonant **ໜ** modifies LOW CLASS consonant **ູ** into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘**ໜັງ**’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a falling tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules). Observe that the tone marker (**ໄມ້ ໂທ** - **máaj thøq**) is placed over the **ູ**, not over the modifier (**ໜ**).

**ອໝາກ**      oo àang . joo ják . sàrà? aa . koo kàj.      jàak - to want

MIDDLE CLASS consonant **ອ** modifies LOW CLASS consonant **ູ** into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘**ອໝາກ**’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**ອໝັງ**      oo àang . joo ják . máj èek . sàrà? uu.      jùu - to stay, to be busy to

MIDDLE CLASS consonant **ອ** modifies LOW CLASS consonant **ູ** into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘**ອໝັງ**’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. Observe that the tone marker (**ໄມ້ ເອກ** - **máaj èek**) is placed over the **ູ**, not over the modifier (**ອ**). (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**Attention:** As mentioned in 1.3.2, **ອ** (oo àang) doesn’t *always* modify or ‘upgrade’ low class consonants when placed at the beginning of a syllable in front of a consonant. It more often

functions either as a short or long oo in front of this consonant, or as an independent vowel syllable (short à, short o or long oo). See examples there.

#### 1.4.6 Spelling anomalies

Remember that a tone is a fixed phoneme (element that defines the meaning of a word) in every Thai word. If you pronounce the tone wrong, you pronounce the word wrong. The meaning of a word can change completely if you change the tone of that word. As other languages, Thai has its fair share of exceptions of pronunciation- and spelling-rules. The most striking anomaly concerning the pronunciation of tones is: the tone of unstressed initial syllables – syllables in which no vowel is written – or syllables existing only of a short ‘a’ (à) or a short ‘u’ (ù) are often not pronounced in a low tone, like the diagram shows, but in a mid tone. There are some more discrepancies between spelling and pronunciation which cannot all be mentioned here. In the vocabularies in the lessons and in the appendices, all words with a pronunciation that differs from its spelling are marked with an asterisk (\*). The correct pronunciation is given in the transcription script.

#### 1.4.7 Consonant clusters and tone marks in consonant clusters

The tone rules valid for the initial consonant of a syllable determine the tone of that syllable. In syllables, which start with more than one consonant (a consonant cluster), the tone rules which are valid for the first consonant in that cluster determine the tone of the syllable. Let us take, for example, the word ‘**ก**ลีบ’ (*kliip*); ‘petal’, ‘segment of fruit’. This monosyllabic word ends with a stop (ㅂ - *boo bajmáaj*, at the end of a syllable pronounced as p' (unreleased 'p')). The last consonant pronounced before the vowel (long ii'; ੀ) is the *loo ling* (ລ), a LOW class consonant. A syllable starting with a LOW class consonant, with a long vowel, and ending in a STOP (in this case: p') is pronounced in a FALLING tone. In other words; if the word would be ‘**ສ**ີບ’, it would be pronounced as ‘*līip*’, in a falling tone. But the initial consonant of the cluster ‘**ກ**ລ’ with which the word starts, is *koo kàj* (ນ), a MIDDLE class consonant, and *koo kàj* is the consonant which determines the tone of the word. The second consonant in the cluster – *loo ling*, a LOW Class Consonant – changes class, as it follows directly upon a MIDDLE Class consonant, and loses, as it were, its right to determine the tone of the syllable it is part of. Eventually, we are looking at a word that starts with a MIDDLE Class consonant, with a long vowel and a stop (p') at the end. Following the tone rules, it is pronounced in a LOW tone. ‘**ກ**ลືບ’ is thus pronounced *kliip*, in a LOW tone.

The tone mark, which further determines the tone of a word, is always written above the consonant in the closest position to the vowel; the one after which the vowel is directly pronounced. But although written above the second consonant, the tone mark APPLIES TO the FIRST CONSONANT in the cluster. Let us analyze the word ‘**ຕ**ຽວ’ (*triúu*); ‘very early in the morning’ to prove our point: Without its initial consonant **ຕ** (*too tàw* - MIDDLE class), ‘ຽວ’ should be pronounced in a FALLING tone (*râu*), because ເ is a LOW class consonant, and the ‘*máaj èek*’ (້) with which it is adorned would compel any word or syllable with an initial

LOW consonant to be pronounced in a falling tone. But although *máaj èek* sits above the second consonant in the cluster, the first consonant, ٹ, determines the tone of the syllable, and so, *máaj èek* refers to ٹ. A MIDDLE class consonant as ٹ with a *máaj èek* as an initial consonant thus determines that the word ٹรุ must be pronounced with a LOW tone (*trìuu*).

#### 1.4.8 Stressed and non-stressed syllables

Just as English words, Thai words are built up from stressed as well as non-stressed syllables. Non-stressed syllables without vowel characters have already been briefly mentioned in 1.3.2. We have seen that in short, non-stressed, initial syllables without vowel characters (*oo àang* (ə), pronounced as short ‘o’ or ‘a’), the tone of these syllables automatically becomes MID in spoken Thai. In non-stressed syllables *with* vowel characters, the tone also automatically becomes MID. For instance, in the word ‘ອະໄຮ’ (*araj*; ‘what?’), the tone of the first syllable normally becomes MID. If ‘ອະໄຮ’ is pronounced in anger or surprise (‘what?!’), the first syllable of the word is usually stressed, and correctly pronounced in a LOW tone. Also in other, poly-syllabic (loan) words we encounter mid tones in non-stressed syllables, where we would expect low or high tones if we adhere to the tone rules. The correct tones for the pronunciation of the word ມາວິທາລັກ (*máhăawíttháalaj* - ‘university’) are, for instance: high-rising-high-high-mid-mid. Most commonly though, the word is pronounced as ‘*mahăawítthajaalaj*’: mid-rising-high-mid-mid-mid. In the transcriptions of dialogues, vocabulary lists and other texts, the tones of words are given as they should be pronounced. On the CD’s, you’ll be able to listen to the actual, daily life pronunciation of the tones.

In the vocabulary lists, words with an ‘illogical’ anomalous pronunciation are marked with an asterisk (\*).

### 1.5 Diacritics and punctuation marks

The Thai script makes use of some punctuation marks which are important for the coordination between speech and script:

- ໌** - The sign over the ٹ is a ກາຣັນຕໍ (kaaran) or ໄມ້ ກັນທານາດ (máaj thanthákhaat); It indicates that the consonant under it, and in some cases part of the whole consonant cluster at the end of a word is not pronounced. The *kaaran* occurs in loanwords from Pali, Sanskrit, and English, such as ອາຈາຮຍ (aacaan - teacher), ຕິລິປີ (sín - art), ສຳຕິລິສ (sàtaj - style)
- ໌** - The sign over the ອ is a ໄມ້ ໄຕ ອຸ່ງ (máaj tâj khûu). It shortens the vowel in the syllable over which main consonant it is placed (for instance: ເລືກ - *lék* - ‘small’).
- ໌** - The ເບຍຍາລ ນ້ອຍ (*peujjaan nóoj*) shortens a long, well known word (for instance: the Chulalongkorn - University (ຈຸພາລົງກຣນົມມາວິທາລັກ) is known as ‘Chula’ (ຈຸພາ) in short.

ໜ່າ - The ເປົ້າຈາລ ໃຫງ່າງ (*peu jaan jàj*) is equivalent with the western etcetera - symbol (&c.)

ໝ - The ໄນ ພມກ (*jámók*) signifies that the word on which it follows has to be pronounced twice (for instance: ບອຂ່າງ - bòj bòj - ‘often’).

Colons (:), semicolons (;), question marks (?), quotation marks (“-”)exclamation marks (!) and thought dots (...), are officially not part of the Thai alphabet, though occur quite often in novels, flyers and other modern Thai texts.

## 1.6 Writing Thai

In a Thai sentence, words are written behind each other without spaces. In places where in English a comma or a full stop would divide clauses and sentences, in Thai a space is left open. Fast word recognition is essential to the fluent reading of Thai. In elementary school, Thai children learn how to read in primers with texts in which separate words are still separated by a space. This is done to make a child recognize the appearance of separate words as fast as possible, in order to enable them, when they start reading books which are written ‘inanadultmanner’, to separate the words in its mind more easily. In this course we shall use the same principle. Until lesson 24, the words in a Thai sentence will be written separately from each other, like in English, by a space. By the time you reach that chapter, your vocabulary will be sufficiently large to recognize words you already know. You’ll also be able to determine patterns of words you don’t know, yet, in a sentence written in Thai-style, so you can easily find those words back in the vocabulary lists provided with each chapter.

## 1.7 Our transcription method

In this course, we shall use an easy method for transcribing Thai sounds. The method will take a minimum of time to get accustomed to for speakers of English. With the help of this method and with the pronunciation- and exercise CD’s you’ll learn to pronounce Thai phonemes quickly and accurately. The system is based on the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), but beware, it has been amended to be optimally serviceable for the Thai language without using IPA characters that might be too obscure for the general learner.

### Transcription of the consonants:

Thai consonant	Transcription for initial use (begin of the syllable)	Transcription for final use (end of the syllable)
ັ	k (unaspirated)	k (unreleased)
າ, ຮ, ແ	kh (aspirated)	k (unreleased)
ິ	ng	ng

Thai consonant	Transcription for initial use (begin of the syllable)	Transcription for final use (end of the syllable)
ຈ	c (unaspirated)	t (unreleased)
ຂ, ຂໍ, ຂໍ	ch (aspirated)	t (unreleased)
ງ, ຜ, ພ, ລ	s	t (unreleased)
ຢ	j (the English ‘y’-sound)	n
ດ	d	t (unreleased)
ທ	th (aspirated) or d	t (unreleased)
ຕ	t (unaspirated)	t (unreleased)
ຖ, ຕົ, ດ, ຖ, ດົ	th (aspirated)	t (unreleased)
ນ	n	n
ບ	b	p (unreleased)
ປ	p (unaspirated)	p (unreleased)
ຜ, ພ, ຜ	ph (aspirated)	p (unreleased)
ຝ, ພ	f	f
ມ	m	m
ຢ	j (the English ‘y’-sound)	j
ຮ	r	n
ລ, ພີ	l	n
ວ	w	w
ຫ	h, or none	none
ອ	o, a, transcription of the vowel borne by ອ, or none	o, oo
ຮ	h	none
glottal stop*	none	?

**N.B.:** The glottal stop is a sound we know well in English, but for which no written sign is in daily use. We hear the glottal stop at the beginning of words, which begin with a vowel. If we say ‘all’ or

‘ever’ Just before we utter the sound written as ‘a’ and ‘e’ in these examples, we open our glottis to release air in order to say the words we want to say. If we do this the other way around, and close our glottis to stop the flush of air from our lungs, we would pronounce a glottal stop *after* a vowel; we would pronounce the ?. Speakers of Cockney do it all the time. For each stop at the end of a word, be it p, t or k, a genuine Cockney substitutes ?. The glottal stop is comparable with the pronunciation of the ‘c’ in the word ‘action’ (an unreleased ‘k’, formed against the soft palate; a so-called velar stop), but is pronounced deeper down the throat: Instead of pressing the uvula against the soft palate, which you do when you pronounce a velar stop, the air flow in pronouncing the glottal stop is stopped by closing your glottis.

In Thai, the glottal stop occurs at the end as well as at the beginning of a syllable. In this course, the sound is transcribed with ? where it is not automatically produced by English speakers. It will not be shown at the beginning of each syllable starting with a vowel, as both English and Thai speakers automatically pronounce a glottal stop before releasing an initial vowel. The glottal stop sign ? will be shown when a glottal stop always occurs at the end of or in the middle of a certain lexeme (ແລະ - lé?, ເກົ້າອື້ນ - kâw-ûn). In a few words, the glottal stop is optional (for instance in ຈະ - cà?, cà; ນະ - ná?, ná). In the transcription of dialogues, words with an optional glottal stop will be transcribed as most appropriate given the circumstances in the texts.

### Transcription of vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs

ອະ	a, a?
ອ້ -	a
ອາ	aa
ອີ	i, i?
ອີ້	ii
ອີ້ວ	ue, ue?
ອູ	<u>ue</u>
ອຸ	u, u?
ອູ້	uu
ເອະ	e?
ເອ	ee
ແອະ	ɛ?
ແອ	ɛɛ
ໂອະ	ø
ໂອ	øø

vowel / diphthong	transcription
ເອກະ	o?
ອອ	oo
ເອວະ	eu?
ເອວ	eu
ເອີ-	eu, <u>eu</u>
ເອີຍະ	ia?
ເອີຍ	ia, iia
ເອີວະ	uea?
ເອີວ	uea, <u>uea</u>
ອ້ວະ	ua?
ອ້ວ	ua, uua
ອໍາ	am
ໄອ	aj, aaj
ໄອ	aj, aaj
ເອາ	aw
ເອຍ	euj, <u>euj</u>
ີ	rí?, rúe?, rí, rue, <u>rue</u> , reu
ີ່	<u>rue</u>
ຳ	lúe?
ຳ່	<u>lue</u>

### Transcription of the tones

Tone indicators are written over the vowels of each syllable, when applicable.

<b>Mid tone</b>	---	O
<b>Low tone</b>	---	Ò
<b>Falling tone</b>	---	Ô
<b>High tone</b>	---	Ó
<b>Rising tone</b>	---	Õ

## 1.8 Thai Grammar and Script

In this course, all aspects of Thai grammar will be elaborately explained. In Thai, there are no cases, no articles, no noun genders, and no verb conjugations. The order of the sentence is Subject-Verb-Object, or Subject-Verb-Adjunct. Certainly, the Thai language offers enough pitfalls and challenges, such as the script, the tones, polite particles, question particles, classifiers, an initially confusing time indication system and a very large amount of idiomatic expressions. But Thai grammar is relatively easy to master.

The Thai script doesn't have a different set of capital letters. There is no difference in form between lower case letters, capital letters, italics and handwritten letters. There is just one alphabet, although many typefaces have been designed (the Thai are enthusiastic graphic designers).

## 1.9 Exercises

To accustom yourself to the forms of the Thai script, write every letter of the alphabet (consonants and vowels) down a number of times, until you get the feeling you're writing the letter right. If you would like to learn the sound that goes with the letter immediately, as well, feel free, although nobody will expect you to master the whole alphabet after this mere introduction. The letters of the alphabet will be thoroughly repeated in the next eleven lessons, and after lesson 12 you'll be able to read and write Thai without cribbing. It must be emphasized once more that is important to get the form of the Thai letters into your subconscious. It is a simple fact that, without learning how to read and write, you'll never learn Thai well.

### Write the letters as follows:

1. You start with the little circle, which you will find on every consonant, except two, and on many of the vowels. The circle is called 'ຫົວ' (*huă*) in Thai; 'head'. The following three

letters, which consist of two components, have two ‘hua’;

**ງ** - joo jing

**ງ** - thoo thaan

**ນ** - soǒ ruesi

Two consonants don't have any ‘hua’:

**ກ** - koo kaj

**ໂ** - thoo thong

When writing the letters without ‘hua’, start with the left-most open end of the letter. When writing ກ and ໂ, start left-below and left in the middle respectively.

2. When the ‘hua’ is complete, draw the rest of the letter without taking your pen from the paper, until finished.
3. The following vowel signs have no ‘hua’:

**ໆ, ່, ້, ໊**, and

When writing these characters, most Thai start in the upper left corner of the ໆ, and draw the curved line through until it reaches the lower limit of the x-height.

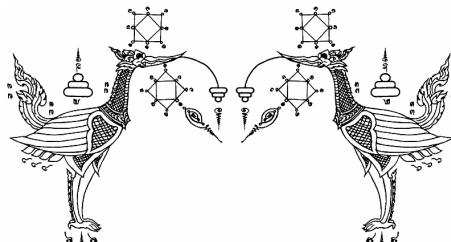
When writing the characters ່ (sàrà i), ້ (sàrà ii) and ໊ (sàrà ue), start at the right, and draw the lower line of the little half moon to the left; then draw the upper line of the little half moon back to the right. After that, add the little vertical strokes.

5. The character ໊ (sàrà ue) has a little circle, but this doesn't count as a ‘hua’, because the vowel sign is formed in the same way as the characters under 4. First the little half moon is drawn, then the little circle.

To show you how what a Thai sentence looks like, here is an example sentence with vowels in front of, behind, under, after, above and around the consonants, tone marks, high-written vowels and diphthongs; spaces between clauses and punctuation marks. Notice that the manner of the parts of letters, vowels, tone marks et cetera, stick out above and under the standard letter height:

ເພື່ອໃຫ້ເປັນໄປຕາມ ພຣບ. ກາຣປະກອບຮູກີຈິຂໍ້ອມຸລເຄຣດີຕ ພສ. 2545 ບຣີໜັກ ໄດ້  
ນໍາສັ່ງຂໍ້ອມຸລເຄຣດີຂອງທ່ານຕາມຮາຍລະເອີຍດີທີ່ແສດງໄວ້ໃນໄເຮົາກເກີບເຈີນຮອບບໍ່ມີທີ່  
ຜ່ານມາຂອງທ່ານແລະຂໍ້ອມຸລອື່ນໆ (ຄ້າມີກາຣະບູໄວ້ທັງນີ້ໄມ່ຮ່ວມຮາຍລະເອີຍດກາຣໃຊ້ຈ່າຍ  
ແຕ່ລະຮາຍກາຣ) ໃຫ້ແກ່ບຣີໜັກຂໍ້ອມຸລເຄຣດີແໜ່ງໝາດ ຈຳກັດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ຂໍ້ອມຸລດັ່ງກ່າວ  
ອາຈແຕກຕ່າງຈາກຂໍ້ອມຸລຂອງທ່ານໃນປັຈຈຸບັນ

Good Luck!





# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 2

### Questions and answers

#### คำ ถ้า และ คำ ตอบ

- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 The Thai sentence (1)
- 2.3 Cultural notes
- 2.4 Characteristics of the Thai language
- 2.5 The Thai sentence (2)
- 2.6 Exercises
- 2.7 Answers to exercise 1





## 2.1 Introduction



In lesson one you have been introduced to the basics of the Thai script and the fundamentals of the Thai language. In this lesson, you actually start learning Thai. Just like a linguist on the first day of his fieldwork, you will learn to ask some simple but important questions – and see some possible answers.

You will notice that the study texts, and every word in the word lists, are offered to you written in the Thai script as well as in the transcription system. This is done to offer you a written reference of every Thai word and sentence you will learn before you have actually mastered the Thai script after lesson 12. It is recommended that you repeat the sections written in Thai from time to time, as in the beginning of your study your reading and writing skills will probably lag behind your speaking and listening skills for a while. Fast word recognition is the basis of learning

to read Thai fluently. As has been made clear in section 1.6., Thai script doesn't use as much punctuation as written English, and words in a sentence are written after each other in fluent rows, without spaces between the words. In this course, Thai texts will be written in the true Thai way starting from the 25<sup>th</sup> lesson (in Intermediate Thai Part 2). Until that lesson, Thai words are written separated from each other, like in Thai primary school primers. This is done to let you gradually reach the point where you'll recognize words as separate entities of form and meaning from what at first will first seem like endless rows of curly characters. Exercises in word recognition are, from now on, an essential part of the course. Starting from lesson seven, when you'll know enough words to be able to actually follow a written text, the alphabet will be repeated step by step, and you'll learn more about the tricks and pitfalls of the Thai system of writing. In the first few lessons of the course, you will learn how to speak basic Thai, and you will start building up your fundamental knowledge of grammar and idioms.

## cd 1a track 3

## 2.2 The Thai sentence (1)

### The affirmative sentence: word order

Thai is an SVO-language; this means that an affirmative sentence consists, in principle, of a Subject, a Verb, and an Object, and is also built up in that order (Subject-Verb-Object); just like English.

ຈ່າຍ ກິນ ຂ້າວ      *côj kin khâaw*      Joy (girl's name)- to eat- rice      Joy eats (rice)

### The interrogative sentence: the question particle

The word order of a question is the same as that of an affirmative sentence. Because Thai is a tonal language, a question is not indicated by intonation as in English (in which every word can be made into a question by using a rising intonation (O.K.? Yes?)), but by means of a question particle, which is a fixed word appearing at the end of a question. There are two basic question particles:

ไหม	măj	used in general questions
หรือ	rue	used in rhetorical questions, or in questions in which the only possible answers are ‘yes’ or ‘no’. (yes-no questions)

The question particle is, just like the rising intonation in English (in spoken language) and the question mark (in written language), always placed at the end of a sentence.

จ้อย กิน ข้าว ไหม	<i>côj kin khâaw măj</i>
Joy eat rice [question particle]	Is Joy eating (rice)?
พี่ กิน ข้าว แล้ว หรือ	<i>phû kin khâaw lêew rue</i>
Older-brother/sister eat already [question particle]	Have you (has elder brother) eaten rice already?

### Demonstrative and relative pronouns

Like in every other language, including English, demonstrative pronouns in Thai are used to indicate things. Demonstrative pronouns should not be confused with relative pronouns. Where in English, the demonstrative pronoun and the relative pronoun can sometimes be easily confused ('That is a book'; 'The book that I read'), the difference between Thai demonstrative pronouns and relative pronouns is clear and lies in the tone... Look at the following questions and answers:

Questions and answers	คำ ถาม และ คำ ตอบ
What is this? <i>nîi àraj</i> นี่ อะไร	What is this? <i>nîi khue àraj</i> นี่ คือ อะไร
What is that? <i>nân àraj</i> นั่น อะไร	What is that? <i>nân khue àraj</i> นั่น คือ อะไร
What is that over there? <i>nôqon àraj</i> โน่น อะไร	What is that over there? <i>nôqon khue àraj</i> โน่น คือ อะไร
This is a book. <i>nîi nângsue</i> นี่ หนังสือ	This is a book. <i>nîi khue nângsue</i> นี่ คือ หนังสือ
That is a pen. <i>nân pâakkaa</i> นั่น ปากกา	That is a pen. <i>nân khue pâakkaa</i> นั่น คือ ปากกา
	That is a pencil. <i>nân pen dinsöo</i> นั่น เป็น ดินสอ

### Questions and answers

What are these?

*nîi àraj*

นี่ อะไร

What are those?

*nân àraj*

นั่น อะไร

What are those (over there)?

*nôqon àraj*

โน่น อะไร

Those (over there) are houses.

*nôqon bâan*

โน่น บ้าน

These are notebooks.

*nîi sàmùt*

นี่ สมุด

Those (over there) are tables.

*nôqon pen tóy*

โน่น เป็น โต๊ะ

Who is this?

(*khon*) *nîi khraj*

(คน) นี่ คร

Who is that?

(*khon*) *nân khraj*

(คน) นั่น คร

Who are they?

(Who are these people?)

(*khon*) *nîi khraj*

(คน) นี่ คร

### คำ ถาม และ คำ ตอบ

What are these?

*nîi pen àraj*

นี่ เป็น อะไร

What are those?

*nân pen àraj*

นั่น เป็น อะไร

What are those (over there)?

*nôqon pen àraj*

โน่น เป็น อะไร

Those (over there) are fields.

*nôqon khue naa*

โน่น คือ นา

Those are erasers.

*nán khue jaang lóp*

นั่น คือ ยาง ลบ

Those (over there) are girls.

*nôqon pen phûu jíng*

โน่น เป็น ผู้ หญิง

These are clothes

*nîi súea phâa*

นี่ เสื้อ ผ้า

Who is this?

(*khon*) *nîi pen khraj*

(คน) นี่ เป็น คร

Who is that?

(*khon*) *nân pen khraj*

(คน) นั่น เป็น คร

Who are they?

(Who are these people?)

*khon nîi pen khraj*

คน นี่ เป็น คร

### Questions and answers

Who are they?  
(Who are those people?)  
*khon nân khraj*

คน นั่น ใคร

Is this a person?  
*nî khue khon măj*  
นี่ คือ คน ใหม

This is a person, isn't it?  
*nî khue khon châj măj*  
นี่ คือ คน ใช่ ใหม

Yes, that is a person.  
*châj nân khue khon*  
ใช่ นั่น คือ คน

No, that is a dog.  
*mâj châj nân khue măa*  
ไม่ ใช่ นั่น คือ หมา

This is a book, isn't it?  
*nî khue nângsue châj măj*  
นี่ คือ หนังสือ ใช่ ใหม

Who are they?  
(Who are those people?)  
*khon nân khue khraj*

คน นั่น คือ ใคร

Is this a dog?  
*nî măa măj*  
นี่ หมา ใหม

This is a dog, isn't it?  
*nî măa châj măj*  
นี่ หมา ใช่ ใหม

Yes, that is a dog.  
*châj nân măa*  
ใช่ นั่น หมา

No, that is a cat.  
*mâj châj nân meeew*  
ไม่ ใช่ นั่น แมว

No, this is a notebook.  
*mâj châj nân sàmùt*  
ไม่ ใช่ นั่น สมุด

### คำ ถาม และ คำ ตอบ

Who are they?  
(Who are those people?)  
*khon nân pen khraj*

คน นั่น เป็น ใคร

Is this a girl?  
*nî pen phûu jing măj*  
นี่ เป็น ผู้ หญิง ใหม

This is a girl, isn't it?  
*nî pen phûu jing châj măj*  
นี่ เป็น ผู้ หญิง ใช่ ใหม

Yes, that is a girl.  
*châj nân pen phûu jing*  
ใช่ นั่น เป็น ผู้ หญิง

No, that is a boy.  
*mâj châj nân pen phûu chaaj*  
ไม่ ใช่ นั่น เป็น ผู้ ชาย

No, this is a pen.  
*mâj châj nân pen pàakkaa*  
ไม่ ใช่ นั่น เป็น ปากกา

Now, compare the demonstrative pronouns shown above with the relative pronouns in the next sentences, and notice that the tone of the relative pronoun is different:

This school is good.  
*røongrian ní dii*  
โรงเรียน นี่ ดี

This person is thin.  
*khon ní phoom*  
คน นี่ ผอม

This chair is old.  
*kâw-ii ní kâw*  
เก้าอี้ นี่ เก่า

That dog bites.  
*măa nán kât*  
หมา นั่น กัด

That cat is cute.  
*meew nán nâa rak*  
แมว นั่น น่า รัก

That house is red.  
*bâan nán deeng*  
บ้าน นั่น แดง

That country there is rich  
*prâthêet nôqon ruaj*  
ประเทศ โน้น รวย

That city there is beautiful  
*mueang nôqon súaj*  
เมือง โน้น สวาย

That star there is far (away)  
*daaw nôqon klaj*  
ดาว โน้น ไกล

## The Plural

A plural is not usually indicated in Thai, but when necessary, the fact that something is plural can be indicated by ‘group words’, such as ‘เหล่า’ (*lāw* - ‘group’) and ‘พวก’ (*phûak* - ‘group’), which are placed in front of the demonstrative or relative pronoun.

Who are those people?  
*khon lāw nân khue khraj*  
 คน เหล่า นั่น คือ คร

Are those dogs?  
*phûak nán mää maj*  
 พวก นั้น หมา ใหม

No, those are cats.  
*mâj châj phûak nán meew*  
 ไม่ ใช่ พวก นั้น แมว

### cd 1a Vocabulary track 4



หนังสือ



ดินสอ

kin	กิน	to eat
khâaw	ข้าว	rice
aahăan	อาหาร	food
léew	แล้ว	1. already; 2. and after that, next
níi	นี่	this, these (relative pronoun)
nîi	นี่	this, these (demonstrative pronoun)
à?raj, àraj, araj*	อะไร	1. what, which; 2. something
khue	คือ	to be (as in: ‘this is a...; this is called a...’)
pen	เป็น	1. to be (as a fact); 2. to exist; 3. to become; 4. to be alive
nân	นั่น	that (demonstrative pronoun)
nán	นั้น	that (relative pronoun)
nôøn	โน่น	that over there (demonstrative pronoun)
nôøn	โน้น	that over there (relative pronoun)
nângsue	หนังสือ	book
pàakkaa	ปากกา	pen
dinsöo	ดินสอ	pencil
bâan	บ้าน	house
naa	นา	field, cultivated land, rice paddy
khon	คน	man, person
sàmùt	สมุด	notebook
jaang lóp	ยาง ลบ	eraser



เก้าอี้



แมว

phûu jing	ผู้หญิง	girl, woman
tô?	โต๊ะ	table
kâw ?î	เก้าอี้	chair
sûea phâa	เสื้อผ้า	clothes, clothing
khraj	ใคร	1. who; 2. someone
làw nî	เหล่านี่	these (plural, demonstrative pronoun)
làw nîi	เหล่านี้	these (plural, relative pronoun)
làw nân	เหล่านั่น	those (plural, demonstrative pronoun)
làw nán	เหล่านั้น	those (plural, relative pronoun)
mää	หมา	dog
măj	ไหม	question particle for an open question
châj	ใช่	yes
châj măj	ใช่ไหม	yes?; isn't it?; isn't that true?
mâj	ไม่	no; not
mâj châj	ไม่ใช่	1. no (not yes); 2. not to be (is not)
meew	แมว	cat
phûu chaaj	ผู้ชาย	man, boy
røongrian	โรงเรียน	school
khon	คน	man, person, human
bâan	บ้าน	house
prâthêet	ประเทศ	country
mueang	เมือง	country, city
daaw	ดาว	star
ruaj	รวย	rich
sûaj	สวย	beautiful
klaj	ไกล	far

## 2.3 Cultural notes: Khunna, Decha and Bunkhun, and your place in Thai society

In almost every sentence a Thai says, he or she can make clear in which relation he stands to the person he is speaking to, and even to which social class he belongs. Immediately, or almost immediately, it becomes clear in which relationship the speakers stand to each other, and how

people should behave towards each other. The different social groups existing within society are not just relatively ‘superior’ or ‘inferior’ in comparison with each other, although social status is very important in Thai society. More abstract social aspects are called ‘khunná’ (คุณ)<sup>1</sup>, moral goodness and virtue, and ‘dèetchá’ (เดช, เดชะ), the power to change chaos into order, are just as important. One finds ‘khunna’ in the monks in the temples, but also in the simple farmer who supports his extended family, in the honest civil servant, and the just policeman. One finds ‘decha’ in one’s King, one’s boss, in the man who holds power and uses it for the good of mankind: The Abbott in the temple whom all monks and villagers revere, the head of a family, the phûu jaj bâan<sup>2</sup>, the Police Colonel at the police station.

In earlier times, relationships were simpler. A farmer worked the land of his Lord, and was thus assured of protection against enemies and intruders. Today, an employee works hard and is polite to his chief, expecting goodwill, a fair treatment and promotion. Such a relation between ‘ruler’ and ‘subject’ is called a patron-client relationship in sociology. In Thai it is better known as a ‘bunkhun’ (บุญคุณ) relation; a relation for which a mutual feeling of dependency and duty is the basis. One could see Thai society as a strictly hierarchical society, which on the other hand forms a community in which everyone fulfils his duty, and each is dependent on the other. One could easily think that a foreigner would only awkwardly fit into this system.

It is a fact, though, that the Thai have been touched by foreign influences since the beginning of their state-formation. The ‘Dewaraja’ or God-King principle as legitimacy of royal power had been loaned from Khmers and Indians. Buddhism arrived both from China and via Sri Langka and the Malay Peninsula. And the tendency to form city-states had been taken from the Thai homeland in Southern China. Also, instead of enslaving or destroying conquered peoples, the Thai assimilated and absorbed them. This benevolent attitude has actually done the Thai a world of good.

Apart from the strong international policy of nineteenth- and early twentieth century kings, early diplomatic ties with the important political powers of the time have been a guarantee for the fact that Thailand, as one of only a few countries in Asia, has never fallen prey to Western colonialism and expansionism.

In Thailand, you will not be called to account as a representative of Dutch or French colonialism or a scion of the British Raj. Nor will you be seen as a superior or inferior being in ethical, military, intellectual, or any other sense.

In Thailand, you shall always be recognizable as an occidental, but you shall, if you learn the language well and adhere to social rules, not stay the odd one out for long. Typical for the Thai mentality in this aspect, is the fact that popular Thai actors, social reformers and sportsmen of mixed parentage are always proudly presented as being Thai, although one of their parents (or grandparents) is a Westerner. Also Thai of a mixed Thai-Chinese, Thai-Indian, Thai-Khmer or Thai-Malay heritage will always consider themselves - and will be considered by others - as Thai.

---

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confused with the word ‘คุณ’ – *khun* – ‘you (polite)’. This word is related to ‘คุณ’ – *khunná*, but has slightly deviated from its original meaning. You might compare it with the formal, old fashioned ‘Your Grace’ in English.

<sup>2</sup> Leader of a village or a rural community.

## 2.4 Characteristics of the Thai Language

Thai is a tonal language with five distinctive tones. Tones co-define the meaning of a morpheme (a morpheme is the minimal distinctive unit of form and meaning in grammar). In principle, Thai is an ‘isolating’, or ‘analytic’ language (like Mandarin, Burmese, Vietnamese and Lao), but it has some lexical derivation by means of prefixes and infixes in Khmer loan words. Furthermore, fusional influence is visible in loan constructions (both ancient and modern) from languages such as Pali and Sanskrit. Thai has thus become a tonal language with a relatively complex morphology.

Thai can be classified as an SVO (Subject-Verb-Object)-language, just like English. Adjuncts follow the subject. There is no inflection. Tenses are indicated with auxiliary words such as ‘then’, ‘before’ and ‘in the future’, not by verbal conjugations. Thai doesn’t know articles, genders or cases...

On the other hand, Thai has dozens of personal pronouns, all in use, and scrupulously utilized in accordance with the status of the speakers. Thai has five tones, and, on the whole, very few Thai words sound in the least bit like English words with the same meaning. Thai has a beautiful writing system, but it differs greatly from the Latin alphabet and cannot be learned in a day or two. Thai has four or five different language levels; from a special vocabulary that is only used when speaking to, or referring to the King, via levels of polite, social and familiar language to a coarse and impolite, intimate language which is only used among close friends, and which can hurt when it is used towards strangers.

But most of all, Thai is a melodious and intriguing language, spoken by many nice people in a beautiful country.

## cd 1a track 5

## 2.5 The Thai sentence (2)

**Considering its construction, an affirmative sentence** in Thai looks in principle exactly like one in English: After the Subject follows a Verb, and after the Verb follows an Object. Note, though, that adjuncts and adjectives follow the noun, like in French.

- |                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. “This is a dog.”               | นี่ คือ หมา                           |
| nî khue măa                       | this - to be - dog                    |
| 2. “This is a lovable dog.”       | นี่ คือ หมา น่า รัก                   |
| nî khue măa nâa rák               | this - to be - dog - loveable         |
| 3. “I hit the dog.”               | ผม ตี หมา                             |
| phóm tii măa                      | I - to hit - dog                      |
| 4. “I hit the dog that bites me.” | ผม ตี หมา ที่ กัด ผม                  |
| phóm tii măa thû kât phóm         | I - to hit - dog - that - to bite - I |

**In informal speech**, the words ‘คือ’ and ‘เป็น’ (see 2.2.) are often omitted.

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. “That is a beautiful girl.” | นั่น สาว สวယ<br>that - girl - beautiful |
| 2. “This is a good bicycle.”   | นี่ จักรยาน ดี<br>this - bicycle - good |

**An interrogative sentence** is formed exactly as an affirmative sentence, but a question particle is placed after the last relevant word of the sentence. The question particle (also called question marker) is generally the last word before the polite particle (see lesson 3).

In general questions, the question particle ใหม (măj) is added. Fortunately, this question particle has a rising tone in standard Thai, so a question with ใหม (măj) does indeed sound as a question in western ears. This is indeed accidental: In other Thai dialects, as for instance Isan or Lao, the question particle has no rising tone. But the fact that a standard Thai question with the question particle măj sounds like a question can help you to recognize questions during the first weeks of your study.

- |                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1. “Is this a Chinese?” | นี่ คือ / เป็น คน จีน ใหม<br>this - to be - man - China - question particle |
| 2. “Is this gold?”      | นี่ คือ / เป็น ทอง ใหม<br>this - to be - gold - question particle           |

**An interrogative sentence**, of which the answer should be ‘yes’, or in which the speaker would take a positive answer for granted, is formed with the question particle หรือ (rue). In English, this type of question would usually be formed by adding ‘isn’t it?’, ‘aren’t you?’, ‘wouldn’t he?’, etc. to a statement, or ‘or what?’ behind a question.

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. “Are you crazy or what?”       | แก บ้า หรือ<br>you (familiar) - crazy - question particle |
| 2. “Are you calling that a dog?”  | นั่น หมา หรือ<br>that - dog - question particle           |
| 3. “That is difficult, isn’t it?” | มัน ยาก หรือ<br>that - difficult - question particle      |

**A rhetorical question** is a question, of which the positive answer is supposed to be well-known to everyone. It is formed with the question particle ใหม (măj), preceded by the word ใช (châj); ‘yes’; ‘it is’.

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. “This is a dog, isn’t it?” | นี่ คือ / เป็น หมา ใช ใหม<br>this - to be - dog - yes - question particle |
|-------------------------------|---|

2. "This is a girl, yes?"  
 นี่ คือ / เป็น ผู้หญิง ใช่ ไหม  
 nî khue/pen phûujing châj măj      this - to be - girl – yes - question particle

**The negation of ใช่ ไหม - châj măj is ไม่ใช่ - măj châj.** This word is also used for the general negation 'no'. Linguists like to describe the word 'ใช่' as one of the possible translations of the verb 'to be'. 'ใช่' could then also be translated as 'is' or 'it is'. 'ไม่ใช่', in any case, has very much the same meaning as 'it isn't'. It is the negation of any question asked with the question particle 'ใช่ ไหม', a particle for a question on which an affirmative answer is more or less expected.

**The auxiliary verbs ได้ - dâj and เป็น - pen ('to can', 'to be able to')** are placed just after the negation 'ไม่': mostly at the end of a sentence. At the end of a sentence they are placed just in front of the question particle and the polite particle.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. "He can speak Thai." (He can make himself understood)<br>khăw phûut thaj dâj | เข้า พูด ไทย ได้<br>he - to speak - Thai - to can                                 |
| 2. "He can speak Thai." (He has a good command of it)<br>khăw phûut thaj pen    | เข้า พูด ไทย เป็น<br>he - to speak – Thai - to can                                |
| 3. "He can speak a little Thai."<br>khăw phûut thaj dâj nítnòoj                 | เข้า พูด ไทย ได้ นิด หน่อย<br>he - to speak - Thai - to can –<br>a bit - a little |

**Note that:** ได้ - dâj and เป็น - pen both mean 'to can', 'to be able to'. For a natural skill, like speaking one's mother language, or swimming like a fish can swim, one would rather use the word 'pen' than the word 'dâj'. For a skill that had been achieved through study or practice, like swimming, playing chess or speaking a language that has been learned after childhood, the word 'dâj' should be used. Example 1 is ambiguous. In speaking about a Thai, it would mean 'Of course he can speak Thai; he is Thai'. Directed towards a foreigner, it could mean that he manages reasonably, but has not arrived at the level of 'pen'; he doesn't control the language completely, yet.

Both ได้ - dâj and เป็น - pen, by the way, have a number of other meanings. For เป็น - pen, you already know the meaning 'to be'. ได้ - dâj means, except 'to can', also 'to get', and is a particle to indicate 'opportunity in the past'.

The verb เป็น - pen in its meaning 'to be' cannot be negated by just putting ไม่ - măj ('no', 'not') in front of it. The negation of เป็น - pen in its meaning 'to be' is ไม่ใช่ - măj châj. The verb คือ - khue ('to be') is negated in the same manner. (see the examples hereafter).

There are no plural forms of the noun in Thai. To indicate plural and variety, one may repeat the noun, or one adds a noun to the singular, which indicates a plural form (in 2.2. you find some examples with the group-noun เหล่า - làw). During this course you will learn more about these group-nouns and other classifiers.

In written language, the reduplication of a word is indicated with the sign ๆ (ไม้ ยมก - máaj jámók).

**In a negative sentence, the negation-particle ไม่ - māj ('no', 'not') is always in front of the part of the sentence that is negated:**

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. "This is not a dog."            | <b>นี่ ไม่ ใช่ หมา</b><br>this - no/not - to be - dog<br>(noun phrase is negated; เป็น - pen or คือ - khue is negated as ไม่ ใช่ - māj chāj.) |
| 2. "He can not speak Thai."        | <b>เข้า พูด ภาษา ไทย ไม่ ได้</b><br>he - to speak - language - Thai - no/not - to can<br>(verb phrase is negated)                             |
| 3.. "This house is not beautiful." | <b>บ้าน นี่ ไม่ สวาย</b><br>house - this - no/not - beautiful<br>(adjective <sup>3</sup> is negated)  |
| 4. "What he says is not true."     | <b>อย่าง ที่ เข้า พูด ไม่ จริง</b><br>thing – that – he – to say – no/not – true<br>(adverb <sup>4</sup> is negated)                          |
| 5. "I am not going to Bangkok."    | <b>ผم จะ ไม่ ไป กรุงเทพฯ</b><br>I – shall – no/not – to go – Bangkok<br>(verb is negated)   |

Please note: ไม่ (māj) is always placed in front of the auxiliary verb ได้ (dāj), with which it forms a fixed combination in certain negations. It doesn't matter in which of her meanings the word ได้ is used. Note: ไม่ (māj) does not appear in front of every auxiliary verb!

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| "He can not speak." (ได้ is 'to can', 'to be able') | <b>เข้า พูด ไม่ ได้</b><br>he - to speak - no/not - to be able |
| khāw phūut māj dāj                                  |  |
| "He gets no money." (ได้ is 'to get')               | <b>เข้า ไม่ ได้ เงิน</b><br>he - no/not - to get - money       |
| khāw māj dāj ngeun                                  |  |

**The use of demonstrative pronouns นั้น (nān) and นี่ (nī), and relative pronouns นั้น (nān) and นี่ (nī) is sometimes ambiguous.** Although the words are still used as described in 2.2, their meanings sometimes overlap. The demonstrative pronouns are often pronounced in a high tone, especially in informal language – just as the relative pronouns.

<sup>3</sup> Thai adjectives and adverbs are often, more correctly, called 'static' or 'stative' verbs (see lesson 3).

### Pronunciation; a short remark about ‘r’ and ‘l’

Many Thais do not pronounce the ‘r’ as a trill, or even at all. If an ‘r’ occurs in a word, people often say ‘l’ instead. People who, due to their profession, have to talk beautifully can pronounce the ‘r’ perfectly well (listen to the television anchormen and -women’s rolling ‘r’-sounds), and they are not the only ones who effortlessly produce a perfect trill if they want. The informal Bangkok dialect, one of the most prestigious dialects in the country, does not recognize the ‘r’-sound, so many people make do without it. In the North, the standard Thai ‘r’ becomes ‘h’, in the dialect of the Northeast (Isan) and in Laotian, the ‘r’ does not exist either. If you want to pronounce a good ‘r’, make it rolling or ‘flapped’. An English ‘r’ won’t do. If you can’t say ‘r’, please use ‘l’.

### cd 1a Vocabulary track 6

phǒm	ຜົມ	1. I (man speaks); 2. hair (on the head)
tii	ຕີ	hit
kàt	ກັດ	bite
khǎw	ເຂົາ	he, she
dâj	ໄດ້	1. to can; 2. to get; 3. particle for perfect past tense
pen	ເປັນ	1. to be; 2. to be able to; to can
phûut	ພູດ	to speak
phaasăa	ភາສា	language
thaj	ໄທ	Thailand (Thai)
neetheulæen	ເນເຊືອຣ්ແລනດ්	The Netherlands (Dutch)
nítñòoj	ນິດໜ່ວຍ	a little
angkritz	ອັງກຸນ	England (English)
färàngsèet	ຝຣັ້ງເຄລ	France (French)
sàpeen	ສເປັນ	Spain (Spanish)
rátsia	ຮັສເຊື້ຍ	Russia (Russian)
ciin	ຈິນ	China (Chinese)
jîpùn	ญຸ່ປຸນ	Japan (Japanese)
indqoniisia	ອິນໂດນີເຊື້ຍ	Indonesia (Indonesian)

N.B. The language of a country or the name of a language is normally preceded by the word ‘ភາສា’ (phaasăa: language). English is ‘ភາສາ ອັງກຸນ’ (phaasăa angkritz). Chinese is ‘ភາສາ ຈິນ’ (phaasăa ciin). The name of a country is mostly preceded by the word ‘ປະເທດ’ (prâthêet: country). China is ‘ປະເທດ ຈິນ’ (prâthêet ciin), Russia is ‘ປະເທດ ຮັສເຊື້ຍ’ (prâthêet rátsia); Indonesia is ‘ປະເທດ ອິນໂດນີເຊື້ຍ’ (prâthêet indqoniisia). In spoken conversation you will often hear the name of language as well as country without ‘phaasăa’ or ‘prâthêet’ in front.

เข้า พูด ไทย ได้ ไหม	khăw phûut thaj dâj măj	Can he speak Thai?
พูด อังกฤษ ไม่ ได้	phۆm phûut angkrìt măj dâj	I cannot speak English.
เข้า จะ ไป อังกฤษ	khăw cà paj angkrìt	He'll go to England

For ‘pràthêet’, also the word ‘เมือง’ (‘mueang’) is used, especially in ‘เมืองไทย’ (‘mueang thaj’): ‘Thailand’). The word ‘mueang’ can mean ‘country’ as well as ‘city’.

## 2.6 Exercises

### 1

a.. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. khăw phûut phaasăa thaj dâj măj
2. meew làw nán sŭaj măj
3. măa nۆon kăt
4. nû pen bâan châj măj
5. nû măj châj phûu chaaj

b. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script.

1. Is this a dog?
2. That is a boy.
3. Those people, are they girls?
4. Who is that?
5. That cat over there.

### 2

a. Learn all words from lesson 2 by heart. Repeat the alphabet in Lesson 1.

b. Translate into English:

1. nû sàmùt châj măj
2. khon nû pen khon jîpùn
3. khon níi pen phûjëng măj
4. nân khue măa châj măj
5. khăw phûut phaasăa ciin pen măj

c. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script:

1. This dog is beautiful.
2. Yes, that is a man.
3. Who are those girls over there?
4. These are pens, aren't they? No, these are pencils.
5. Are these tables?

- d. Make sentences.

Make ten good Thai sentences with the words in the wordlist. Note with every word you use why it should be in the position within the sentence where you have put it. You may take the sentences from 2.2. as examples, but please try to build your sentences as originally as possible.

## 2.7 Answers to exercise 1

- a. 1. Can he speak Thai?  
2. Are those cats beautiful?  
3. That dog over there bites.  
4. This is a house, isn't it?  
5. This is not a man.
  
- b. 1. nû khue măa măj (nû pen măa măj, nû măa măj)  
2. nân phûu chaaj (nân pen phûu chaaj , nân khue phûu chaaj)  
3. khon làw nán pen phûu jîng măj (khon làw nán khue phûu jîng măj, khon làw nán phûu jîng măj)  
4. nân khraj  
5. mæew nôçon

# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 3

### Introducing yourself

#### การ แนะนำ ตัว

- 3.1 Introduction
- 3.2 Introducing yourself
- 3.3 Idioms, polite gestures, greetings
- 3.4 The verb “to be”
- 3.5 Exercises
- 3.6 Answers to the exercises





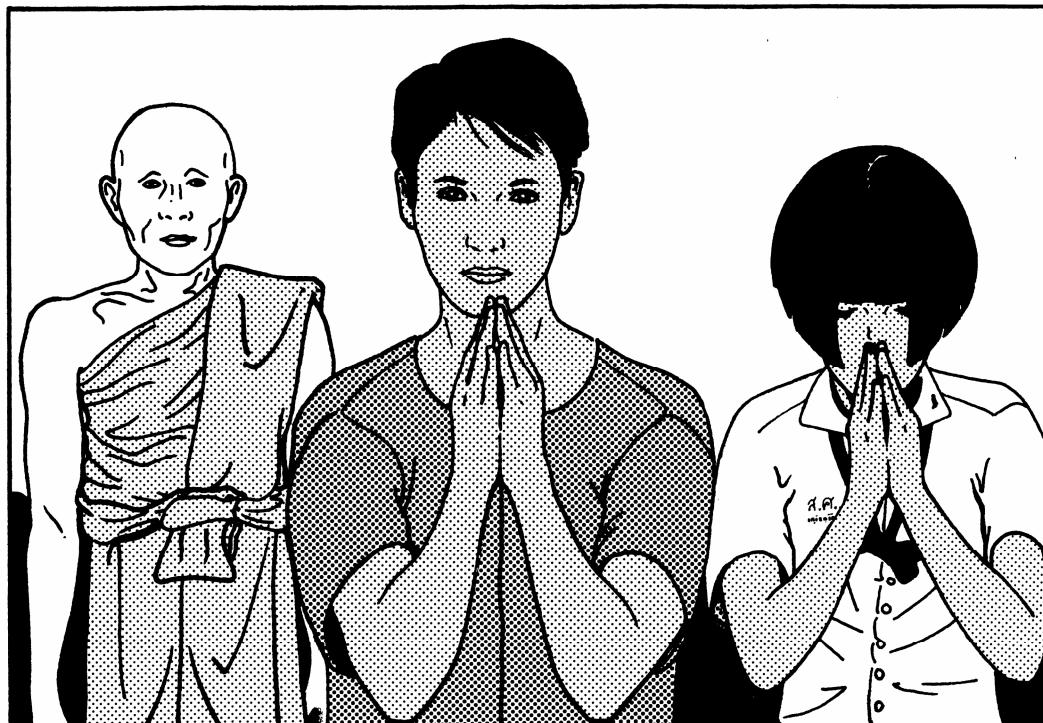
### 3.1 Introduction

In this lesson you will learn how to introduce yourself. You will learn how you get acquainted with other people, and how other people introduce themselves to you. The first ice between you and the Thai will be broken.

cd 1a  
track 7

### 3.2 Introducing yourself

การ แนะนำ ตัว



#### Introducing yourself

This is Jintana Chakraphet.

(Her) nickname is “Joy”.

She is 21 years old.

She studies English and French.

She is a student.

#### การ แนะนำ ตัว

นี่ คือ จินตนา จักรเพชร

ชื่อ เล่น “จ้อย”

เข้า อายุ ยี่ สิบ เอ็ด ปี

เข้า ศึกษา ภาษา อังกฤษ

และ ภาษา ฝรั่งเศส

เข้า เป็น นัก ศึกษา

#### kaan nénam tua

nî khue cintànaa càkphét<sup>4</sup>

chûe lén côj

khâw aajú jîi sìp èt pii

khâw sùeksää phaasää

angkrìt lè? phaasää fâràngséet

khâw pen nák sùeksää

<sup>4</sup> NB. Jintana's surname can be pronounced ‘càkphét’ as well as ‘càkràphét’. In Thai, there exist more words which can be pronounced in slightly different manners. Especially in complex loan words and surnames, pronunciation is sometimes not fixed, and more than one pronunciation is often accepted.

This is Surasak Chakraphet.	นี่ คือ สุรศักดิ์ จักรเพชร	nî khue surásàk chàkphét
(His) nickname is “Sua”.	ชื่อ เล่น “เสือ”	chûe lén súea
He is 24 years old.	เขา อายุ ยี่ สิบ สี่ ปี	khăw aajù jîi sìp sìi pii
He has just graduated.	เขา พึ่ง จบ มหาวิทยาลัย	khăw phûeng còp máhăawítthájaalaj
He is an engineer.	เขา เป็น วิศวกร	khăw pen wísàwákoon
This is Kanya.	นี่ คือ กัญญา	nî khue kanjaa
Her nickname is “Noi”.	ชื่อ เล่น “น้อย”	chûe lén nóoj
She is 19 years old.	เขา อายุ สิบ เก้า ปี	khăw aajù sìp kâw pii
She is a servant.	เขา เป็น คน รับ ใช้	khăw pen khon ráp châj
He is Mr. Peter Wolf.	ท่าน คือ คุณ เพเตอร์ วอล์ฟ	thân khue khun peeteu woof
Everyone calls him: “Mr. Peter”.	ทุก คน เรียก ท่าน ว่า: “ท่าน เพเตอร์”	thuk khon riak thân wâa thân peeteu
He is 40 years old.	ท่าน อายุ สี่ สิบ ห้า ปี	thân aajù sìi sìp hâa pii
He is a Dutchman.	ท่าน เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์	thân pen khon neetheuelæen
He works in Thailand.	ท่าน ทำงาน ที่ เมือง ไทย	thân tham- ngaan thû mueang thaj
Good day. (woman speaking)	สวัสดี ค่ะ	sàwàtdii khâ
My name is Jintana.	ติณัณ ชื่อ จินตนา ค่ะ	dichän chûe cintànaa khâ
Good day. (man speaking)	สวัสดี ครับ	sàwàtdii khráp
I am Peter Wolf.	พม เพเตอร์ วอล์ฟ ครับ	phóm peeteu woof khráp

### cd 1a      Vocabulary track 8



นัก ศึกษา

nénam	แนะนำ	to introduce
kaan nénam	การ แนะนำ	introduction; the act of introducing'
tua	ตัว	1. body; 2. oneself
kan	กัน	1. each other; 2. particle of reciprocity
kòon	ก่อน	first
nâ? ; nâ	นะ	particle for mild emphasis, or confirmation of the



### ศึกษา

ná? ; ná	ນະ	preceding statement
sì	ສີ	particle for mild emphasis in questions
nîi	ນີ້	particle for affirmative emphasis
níi	ນີ້	this (demonstrative pronoun)



### คน รับ ใช้

khăw	ເຂາ	he, she (3 <sup>e</sup> person singular)
chûe	ຊື່ອ	1. name; 2. to be named
lên	ເລ່ນ	to play
chûe lên	ຊື່ອ ເລ່ນ	nickname
jîi sîp	ຢື່ ລົບ	twenty
jîi sîp èt	ຢື່ ລົບ ເອັດ	twenty-one
sùeksää	ຄືກິຈາ	to study
nák sùeksää	ນັກ ຄືກິຈາ	student
jîi sîp sii	ຢື່ ລົບ ສີ້	twenty-four
phûeng	ພິ່ງ	just; a moment ago
còp	ຈົບ	to end, to finish, to complete



### เนเธอร์แลนด์

máhăawíttháaalaj	มหาวิทยาลัย	university
wítsàwákoon	ວິສວກຣ	engineer
khon ráp cháj (khon cháj)	ຄນ ຮັບ ໃໃໝ່ (ຄນ ໃໃໝ່)	servant, resident domestic servant
thân	ທ່ານ *	1. you (2 <sup>nd</sup> person singular); 2. he, she (polite, towards elders and superiors)
khun	ຄຸນ	1. you (polite); 2. honorific used in front of the first name of people (compare to Mr.; Mrs., Miss)
thúk khon	ຖຸກ ຄນ	every person; everyone
rîak	ເຮືຍກ	1. to call; 2. to call out;



### เมือง ไทย

sìi sìp	ສີ ສີບ	3. to address; 4. to demand
neethe <u>ue</u> en	ເນເທୋວ່ແລນດ	forty
tham	ທຳ	1. to do; 2. to make
ngaan	ງານ	1. work (n); 2. party (n)
thamngaan	ທຳການ	to work
thî	ທີ	in, at, on (adjunct of place)
mueang	ເມືອງ	1. city, town; 2. country
thaj	ໄທຍ <sup>5</sup>	Thai
mueang thaj	ເມືອງ ໄທຍ	Thailand
sàwàtdii	ສວັສດີ	hello; good morning; good afternoon; good evening
khâ	ຄະ	polite particle for women in affirmative sentences
díchǎn	ດີຈັນ	I (woman speaking)
khráp	ຄວັບ	polite particle for men
phǒm	ຜມ	I (man speaking)

\* Irregular pronunciation: Written with a long ‘aa’; pronounced with a short ‘a’.

### Thai names and nicknames

Apart from his official given name, almost every Thai has a nickname, which is used far more often than his official name. The official first name - hardly ever more than one – is printed in front of his family name on his national identity card and in his passport, and is only used for official occasions. The nickname is intended for daily use. The official given name is often a name based on beautiful Sanskrit and Pali terms, and always indicates quality: ‘piety’, ‘beauty’, ‘strength’, ‘intelligence’, ‘wisdom’ ... The nickname is generally monosyllabic and not always flattering. Many Thai go by names as ‘Fat’, ‘Dented’, ‘Silent’, ‘Little’, ‘Tiny’ and ‘Very Tiny’. Other nicknames are animal names. People can be called after any animal, from mighty beasts like the tiger and the elephant, to the bear and the cat and the rat, to animals like the grasshopper, the chicken, and the mosquito larva. Furthermore, names of expensive and beautiful things are used as nicknames (Diamond, Crystal, Gold), names of flowers (Lotus, Blossom, Rose), and names of fruits (Apple, Rambutan, Rose Apple). Sometimes one’s features as a newborn baby cause one to be nicknamed ‘Red’ or ‘Black’, Or ‘Flabby’. A baby with widely opened eyes will be called ‘Eyes’, a child with a flat face ‘Flat’. Often, the characteristics, which someone is named after, don’t fit in with reality when one grows up, but a nickname often stays.

<sup>5</sup> The word “ໄທຍ” is one of the very few words in the Thai language that is written with the letter-combination ໄ-ຍ for the sound ‘aj’.

In the seventies and eighties English words and names of Western status symbols were popular as nicknames. There are people who are called ‘Cartoon’ and ‘Benz’. In the last decades of the 20<sup>th</sup> century people also started to give their children real English names as given names. There are Thai men who are called ‘Joe’ and Thai girls who are called ‘Jane’. Famous actors and actresses of mixed blood became well known by their foreign given name, like Willy MacIntosh and Marsha Wattanaphanit. There are now plenty of Thai children who are called after their parent’s idols, and who carry the name ‘Willy’ or ‘Marsha’ as a nickname or a given name. Another foreign name that was already popular in the eighties is Linda. Linda Kathancharoen was a very popular actress in those days. There are now many people named Marisa, James (after James Wattana, the snooker-player), Tiger (after Tiger Woods) and even a fair number of people named Jackie (Jackie Chan, though not Thai, is a popular actor here).

Thais who carry an official given name consisting of only one or two syllables, such as ‘Krit’, ‘Buppha’ or ‘Mali’, sometimes don’t feel the need to use a nickname. Most Thai names, though, consist of three or four syllables, and because given names are often used as personal pronouns (1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular), the constant repetition of your own name and that of your discussion partner during a dialogue would make a conversation needlessly long. Polysyllabic nicknames, which also exist, are often shortened to one syllable in their turn. ‘Grasshopper’ (tákàteen) will be shortened to ‘teen’. ‘Cartoon’ (kaatuun) will become ‘tuun’ under friends.

The official number of names from which one could choose when naming one’s child, has always been more or less finite, but today no official registrar will be amazed when a Thai couple decides to give their child an English, French, or Japanese official first name. Where until after the Second World War (when a last large group of Chinese arrived in Thailand’s harbors) it was good form for immigrants to adopt a Thai name even before naturalization, today parents can give their child any name they wish.

There is still a small group of aged Thai citizens that goes through life with only a single, monosyllabic name. This group has been born before 1925 – when the King ordered all his subjects to take a surname – in desolate areas in some of the least inhabited provinces of the Kingdom.

Most Chinese-Thai now carry Thai names. In the 1950s most Chinese families exchanged their Chinese name for a Thai one. Their surnames are often poetic and flowery; their first names are often classically Thai – a bit old-fashioned. The Sino-Thai who have not taken a Thai surname can be recognized by their monosyllabic surname, which is preceded by the word ‘ແຊ່ງ’, sêe - ‘clan’.

### **Forms of address**

The polite way to address a Thai is ຄຸນ (khun) + first name. In Britain, Mr. Peter Wolf would be called “Mr. Wolf” by strangers, vague acquaintances and his personnel. In Thailand he would be called “Khun Peter”. Strangers with a higher or equal status as the speaker are also addressed with ຄຸນ, but without the surname. To attract someone’s attention, one says: “ຄຸນ ຄວບ/ຄຸນ ຂະ” (khun khráp/khun khâ). People with an obviously higher status, such as (high) police officers, professors, ministers, etc., one addresses with ທ່ານ (thân) in front of the first name of the person in question. Young children (and girls up to an age of about 17) can be addressed as ນູ້ - nǚu - ‘mouse’, or, if one is about the same age as their parents, as ລູກ - lûuk - ‘child’. A general and neutral way to address people is by using the words ພິ - phûi - ‘older brother or sis-

ter' and น้อง - nōong - 'younger brother or sister'. Relatively elder people are addressed as อา - aa - 'younger brother or sister of father', น้า - náa - 'younger brother or sister of mother', อุ่ง - lung - 'older brother of father or mother' of ป้า - pâa - 'older sister of father or mother'.

The ways in which Jintana Chakraphet (Joy) could be addressed, (if one knew her first name) would be as follows:

in the birth register	by vague acquaintances (younger than she)	by acquaintances (older than she)	by friends and family
น.ส. จินตนา จักรเพชร	คุณ จินตนา (คุณ จ้อย)	คุณ จ้อย (คุณ จินตนา)	จินตนา, จ้อย
			จ้อย

น.ส. stands for: นางสาว - naangsăaw - 'miss'. The forms of address in parentheses would be less frequently used alternatives.

One's surname is used a lot less in Thailand than in Western countries. In all kinds of directories, people are alphabetically arranged according to their first name. Even close friends are sometimes not even sure of each other's surname. Some families, though, regard their surname in high esteem. A family name can be old or famous, and sometimes indicates that one has royal blood running through one's veins. Sometimes, a new surname is chosen as a sign of the fact that one has broken with his past or family. A surname can also be changed to change one's luck in life. Given names are changed even more often.

A nickname can be changed in accordance with one's profession. Many guides and other people working in the tourism industry are no longer called Narong, Saowalak, Preecha or Sriporn, but David, Suzy, Ken and Charlie.

There are countless manners to transcribe Thai names in Latin script. In Thailand most people transcribe their language, and also their name, according to their own insights and tastes. Although the Royal Council for Language (ราชบัณฑิตยสถาน - râatchâbandîttâjásâth  an) advises in matters of transcription, the average Thai doesn't care about that. In this course every name will be transcribed according to our transcription system. In the translations, names are Latinized in recognizable ways. The girl's nickname 'จ้อย' (côj), for instance, will be transcribed in the way most girls who bear that nickname, or as 'Joy' would transcribe it. The same is valid for the boy's name 'สุรศักดิ์' (sùrasâk), which would be transcribed as 'Surasak'.

## Vocabulary

chûe	ชื่อ	name
chûe l��n	ชื่อ เล��น	nickname
chûe cing	ชื่อ จริง	real (given) name
naam s��kun	นาม สกุล	surname
naangsăaw	นางสาว	miss (abbreviated: น.ส.)

**cd 1a**      **Some examples of nicknames and their literal meaning:**  
**track 9**

suěa	เสือ	tiger
côj *	จ้อຍ	1. talkative; 2. small, tiny
nóoj	น้อຍ	small, little; few
dæng	แดง	red
bຸ່ມ	ບຸ່ມ	dimpled, dented
kêew	ແກ້ວ	glass, crystal, gemlike
kòp	ກປ	frog
mǐ	ໜີ	bear

Some nicknames are typically given to boys, like เสือ (suea), some are typical for women, like จ้อຍ (côj). Names such as น้อຍ (nóoj) and แดง (dæng) can be used by both men and women.

Some examples of nicknames which are not originally Thai are:

ceenii	เจนี	Janie, Jane
ben	เบนซ์	Benz (from Mercedes)
níkkî	นิกกี้	Nikki, Nicky
<u>beut</u>	ເບີ່ວດ	Bird

### 3.3 Idioms, polite gestures, greetings

There are several ways in which you can greet, or introduce yourself to a person in Thailand. Your choice of words and your body language during the greeting are important in order to establish your status with regard to the other person. First of all, there is the (ไหว้ - wâj). A person who makes a wâj brings the palms of his hands together and rises them above his head, his forehead, his nose-bridge, under his chin or in front of his chest. The higher he raises both his hands, the more respectful is the greeting. If one brings a ‘wâj’ with the hands above the head or at forehead-level, one sometimes goes down on one’s knees, inclines the upper body deeply forward and reaches the hands amply above the head. The gesture of the ‘wâj’ is not only a greeting, but also a gesture of respect. The aforementioned deep ‘wâj’-s you’ll often see on Thai television, used during visits by politicians, high military personnel, and common people towards members of the Royal Family. Probably, you’ll never meet a member of the Royal Family as most Thais never will. But there is a likely chance that you’ll meet a politician or a general. These people are treated with not nearly as much awe as the King or the Crown Prince, but it will do no harm to practice the ‘high wâj’ for a bit. You keep your body up straight, your elbows against the sides of your chest, and you bring your hands, with palms and fingers pressed together, up to your face, the ends of your thumbs touching your brow, so that your fingers reach a point a little higher than the top of your head. Then, you bring your upper

body slowly forward, and bow your head. You've just made a 'high wâj'. Lower 'wâj'-s are made in a similar manner, but with the hands lower and less bowing of the head and less lowering of the upper body. The fingertips can reach the level of the eyebrows, the nose bridge, the nose point, the lips, the chin, and the neck. The lowest 'wâj' is made with the hands at chest level. The higher the status of the person you 'wâj', the higher your hands reach and the deeper you bow.

You don't 'wâj' everybody. 'Wâj'-ing to high or to often, or 'wâj'-ing the wrong people can be seen as an insult. The people you 'wâj' may think you're playing a game with them or that you're being sarcastic. You don't 'wâj' servants, cashiers or children; and certainly not beggars; Those people have already a difficult life as it is. 'Wâj'-ing someone who is younger than you can shorten that person's life, they say. It is something completely different when you answer a 'wâj' of a younger person with your own. Someone who 'wâj's you first, 'wâj's you high. Your return 'wâj' will be lower (there are of course exceptions; when you didn't see a person of high status coming towards you, and he 'wâj's you suddenly, your 'wâj' should be a 'wâj' of the appropriate level). Some people, such as the King, never 'wâj', and neither do monks. If a child 'wâj's you, you don't 'wâj' back. A smile will do as an answer. Might it ever come so far that you're being arrested, please feel free to 'wâj' every police officer you meet in the process, even the lowest cop. Your 'wâj' hardly has any influence on your punishment, but a policeman softened with a polite 'wâj' might be more easily inclined to buy a few soft drinks or snacks for you while you're in custody.

The 'wâj' can, but doesn't necessarily have to, be accompanied by a spoken greeting. When a greeting is exchanged, this will mostly be 'สวัสดีค่ะ / ครับ' (sàwàtdii khâ / khráp; 'good day/morning/afternoon; respectively female and male speech'), in some situations followed by คุณ / ท่าน (khun / thân), and the name of the person spoken to.

The polite particles ค่ะ (khâ - female speech, affirmative) ค่ะ (khá - female speech, interrogative) and ครับ (male speech) always come at the end of a sentence, and indicate that one considers the status of the person spoken to is equal to or higher than one's own. The polite particles mentioned above are the three basic varieties of the particle. In colloquial and very polite language there are more. Note that women may use two standard polite particles, which only differ from each other in tone; an affirmative one with a (short) falling tone, and an interrogative one with a high tone. The male polite particle always has a high tone. Also note that the use of the polite particle is not dependent on the fact whether you speak to a man or to a woman; it is dependent on your own sex. If you're a man, you use ครับ (khráp). If you're a woman, you use ค่ะ (khâ) in affirmative sentences, and ค่ะ (khá) in interrogative sentences. In the early stages of your study, you might find it easy to use these particles to everybody you meet – except children, beggars, and servants. In the end, your experience will teach you to whom to be polite and to whom politeness is an unnecessarily extended favor.

Attention: The particles ค่ะ (khâ) and ครับ (khráp) can also be used as an affirmative answer on a question: They can be used for the word 'Yes'.

### 3.4 The verb ‘to be’

The Thai language has more than just one word for the verb ‘to be’. In most dictionaries, you’ll find four translations for the Thai verb ‘to be’. These are เป็น (pen), อยู่ (jìu), คือ (khue) and ใช่ (châj). These words are used as translations for the English verb ‘to be’ in different circumstances.

The verb ‘เป็น’ (pen) is the translation for ‘to be’ if talking about static, or certain facts. The verb ‘เป็น’ (pen) used in the description of objects, persons, situations and the like. ‘เป็น’ (pen) can also mean ‘to exist’, ‘to be alive’ or ‘to become’. Moreover, เป็น (pen) can be used to describe functions or professions (‘เขา เป็น ทหาร’ - khăw pen tháhăan - ‘he is a soldier’), types of people, or things (‘เป็น คนจน’ - pen khon con - ‘to be a poor person’, ‘to be poor’), and situations (‘เป็น ปัญหา’ - pen panhăa - ‘(it) is a problem’).

The verb ‘เป็น’ (pen) also means: ‘to suffer from an illness’. The sentence ‘เขา เป็น หวัด’ – khăw pen wàt means: ‘he suffers from a cold’; ‘he has a cold’.

**เขา เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์**

khăw pen khon neetheuleen

He is a Dutchman.

**เจนี เป็น น้อง ของ ผู้ชาย**

ceenii pen nóong khöong phom

(ของ - khöong - ‘of’ (preposition))

Janie is a younger sister of mine.

**เขา เป็น โรค เรื้อรัง**

khăw pen rôök rúean

(โรค - rôök - ‘disease’; เรื้อรัง - rúean - ‘leprosy’)

He suffers from leprosy.

The verb ‘อยู่’ (jìu) means ‘to be’ in the sense of: ‘to be present’, ‘to stay’. อยู่ (jìu) can also indicate a static situation, which can be translated as ‘still’, or ‘to be busy doing...’:

**เขา อยู่ ที่ ประเทศ อังกฤษ**

khăw jìu thîi prâthêet<sup>6</sup> anngkrìt

He is in England; He’s staying in England

**เขา ทำงาน อยู่**

khăw thamngaan jìu

He is (busy) working.

The verb ‘คือ’ (khue) means ‘to be’ in the sense of ‘namely’; ‘the fact is that’. The verb คือ (khue) indicates a certainty; a definition:

**นี่ คือ บ้าน**

nîi khue bâan

This is a house.

<sup>6</sup> ประเทศไทย - prâthêet- ‘country’, ‘state’. Is usually placed before the name of the country, but is often omitted in speech. Another word for ‘country’ is ‘เมือง’ - mueang, which can also mean ‘city’.

The meaning of the verb **គូ** (*khue*) overlaps **បែន** (*pen*) in several situations. **គូ** (*khue*) is usually used in definitions and declarations. **គូ** often determines a fact over which no discussion is possible, and classifies stricter than ‘**បែន**’. The sentence ‘**នឹងគូ ខ្សោយករណ៍**’ (*nî khue àatchájaakam*) - ‘This is (a) crime’ is somewhat stronger than ‘**នឹងបែន ខ្សោយករណ៍**’ (*nî pen àatchájaakam*), and more determined as a statement than ‘**នឹងខ្សោយករណ៍**’ (*nî àatchájaakam*). In many cases, the difference between **គូ** (*khue*) and **បែន** (*pen*) is a matter of sense or feeling. Furthermore, the verb ‘**គូ**’ is often used as a stopgap in case of uncertainty: (‘**គូ...**’ - ‘I don’t know’; ‘Er...’; ‘Eh...’). In many cases, the difference between the verbs ‘**គូ**’ (*khue*) and ‘**បែន**’ (*pen*) are erasable.

Remember: The verbs ‘**គូ**’ (*khue*) and ‘**បែន**’ (*pen*) don’t occur in negative sentences. Both these verbs are both negated with ‘**មិន ឲ្យ**’ (*mâj châj*); and not with: \***មិនគូ** (\**mâj khue*) or \***មិនបែន** (\**mâj pen*).

But there are a few exceptions in the negation of the verb ‘**បែន**’ (*pen*), ‘**មិន ឲ្យ**’ (*mâj châj*) may be used, but ‘**មិនបែន**’ (*mâj pen*) is a correct negation in some idiomatic phrases (មិនបែនបញ្ជាតា - *mâj pen panhăa* - ‘it’s no problem’; មិនបែននឹង - *mâj pen raj* - ‘it doesn’t matter’.)

Normally, the verbs **បែន** (*pen*), **គូ** (*khue*) and **ឲ្យ** (*châj*) are negated with the phrase **មិន ឲ្យ** (*mâj châj*):

‘ <b>នៅន បែន មេវា ឲ្យ</b> ’	<i>nân pen mœew mäj</i>	‘ <b>មិន ឲ្យ</b> (នៅន មិន ឲ្យ មេវា)	<i>mâj châj (nân mâj châj mœew)</i>
‘ <b>នៅន គូ មេវា ឲ្យ</b> ’	<i>nân khue mœew mäj</i>	‘ <b>មិន ឲ្យ</b> (នៅន មិន ឲ្យ មេវា)	<i>mâj châj (nân mâj châj mœew)</i>
‘ <b>នៅន មេវា ឲ្យ ឲ្យ</b> ’	<i>nân mœew châj mäj</i>	‘ <b>មិន ឲ្យ</b> (នៅន មិន ឲ្យ មេវា)	<i>mâj châj (nân mâj châj mœew)</i>

The first two question sentences mean: ‘Is that a cat?’, the third one means: ‘That is a cat, isn’t it?’ The answers are all: ‘no (that is not a cat)’.

The verb **ឲ្យ** (*châj*) means ‘to be’ in the sense of: ‘it is so’, ‘it is’. In many cases this word can be translated with ‘yes’:

**នឹងគូ មេវា ឲ្យ ឲ្យ**  
nî khue mœew châj mäj

This is a cat, isn’t it?

**ឲ្យ**  
châj

It is (yes)

In many situations, it is the Thai equivalent for ‘yes’ as a confirmative answer to questions. Situations in which **ឲ្យ** is used as our verb ‘to be’ are rather scarce, and often idiomatic.

‘**នឹង ឲ្យ គីឡូ**’ (*nî châj rûe*) - ‘this is it, isn’t it?’ is an example of the use of the verb **ឲ្យ** (*châj*) which is coherent with the use of such a verb in English.

There is still another ‘translation’ of the verb ‘to be’, and that is: to not translate it.

Especially in common oral language and simple statements, the verb ‘to be’ is omitted:

นี่ แมว	nî meew	‘This is a cat’
มัน แดง	man deeng	‘It is red’

This phenomenon is also common in other languages of Southeast Asia. Linguists who study these languages consider all Thai nouns and adjectives as verbs: ‘Stative’ or ‘static’ verbs. In linguistics, a static verb is a verb of which no imperative can be formed. According to this theory the noun ‘แมว’ (meew) means either ‘cat’ or ‘to be a cat’. The adjective ‘แดง’ (deeng) would mean either ‘red’ or ‘to be red’.

In the following sentence:

‘นี่ แมว’ nî meew ‘that (is a) cat’

The noun ‘แมว’ (meew - ‘cat’, ‘to be a cat’) thus carries the verb ‘to be’ with it.

In the following sentence:

แมว นั้น แดง meew nân deeng ‘That cat is red’

The adjective ‘แดง’ (deeng - red; to be red) thus carries the verb ‘to be’ with it.

### 3.5 Exercises

a. Translate into English:

1. nî khue cintànaa
2. khaw pen khon thaj
3. sàwàtdii khráp
4. phóm chûe peeteu
5. khaw aajú jîn sîp èt pii
6. nî khue sùrasàk châkráphét
7. khaw pen wítsàwákoon
8. kanja pen khon ráp chaj

b. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script.

1. Jintana is a student.
2. Surasak is 24 years old.
3. Mr. Wolf works in Thailand.
4. Kanya is 19 years old.
5. Surasak just graduated.
6. Good afternoon, my name is Peter Wolf.
7. Everyone calls me Peter.
8. I am an Australian.

c. Learn all new words in this lesson by heart. Repeat the words from the previous lessons.

- d. Arrange the following sentences into the right order :

  1. woof phǒm khráp peeteeu chûe sàwàtdii
  2. còp phǒm máhääwítthájalaj phûeng
  3. pen đichǎn khon neetheueen
  4. pen ráp phǒm cháj khon
  5. đichǎn sùeksää nák pen
  6. mǎj chûe cintànaa khun
  7. phûut dâj thaj khăw
  8. côj khue lêñ chûe khăw

e. Translate into Thai. Use the transcription script:

  1. Mr. Wolf is a Dutchman.
  2. He works in Thailand.
  3. Jintana is a student.
  4. Surasak is an engineer.
  5. That is a crime!
  6. He speaks a little Thai.

f. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative:

  1. khăw pen wàt
  2. nân phûu jing súaj
  3. phǒm paj thamngaan
  4. nû khue mæew
  5. khun pen khon thaj

### **3.6 Answers to the exercises**

- a. Translation into English:

  1. This is Jintana.
  2. He/She is a Thai.
  3. Good day. (man speaking)
  4. My name is Peter.
  5. He/She is twenty-one years old.
  6. This is Surasak Chakraphet
  7. He is an engineer.
  8. Kanya is a servant.

b. Translation into Thai (in transcription script):

  1. cintànaa pen nák sùeksăa
  2. sùrásàk aajú jíp sìu pii
  3. khun woof (a Thai would say: ‘khun peeteu’) thamngaan thîi mueang thaj
  4. kanjaa aajú sìp kâw pii
  5. sùrásàk phüeng còp máhääwítthájalaj

6. sàwàtdii khráp phǒm chûe peeteu woof  
 7. thúk khon rîak phǒm wâa peeteu  
 8. phǒm pen khon òtsàtreelia
- d. 1. sàwàtdii khráp phǒm chûe peeteu woof  
 2. phǒm phûeng còp máhăawíthhájalaj  
 3. đichăñ pen khon neetheuen  
 4. phǒm pen khon ráp châj  
 5. đichăñ pen nák sùeksää  
 6. khun chûe cintànaa măj  
 7. khăw phûut thaj dâj  
 8. chûe lén khăw khue côj
- e. 1. khun woof pen khon neetheuen  
     (คุณ וואล์ฟ เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์)  
 2. khăw tham-ngaan thîi pràtêet thaj  
     (เข้าทำงานที่ประเทศไทย)  
 3. cintànaa pen náksùeksää  
     (จินตนาเป็นนักศึกษา)  
 4. sùràsàk pen witsàwákoon  
     สูรศักดิ์ เป็น วิศวกร  
 5. nân khue àatchájaakam  
     นั่น คือ อาชญากรรม  
 6. khăw phûut thaj dâj nítñòoj  
     เข้า พูด ไทย ได้ นิด หน่อย
- f. Interrogative:
1. khăw pen wàt măj
  2. nân phûu jing súaj măj
  3. phǒm paj thamngaan măj
  4. nî khue meew măj
  5. khun pen khon thaj măj

Negative:

1. khăw măj pen wàt
2. nân phûu jing măj súaj
3. phǒm măj paj thamngaan
4. nî măj châj meew
5. khun măj châj khon thaj



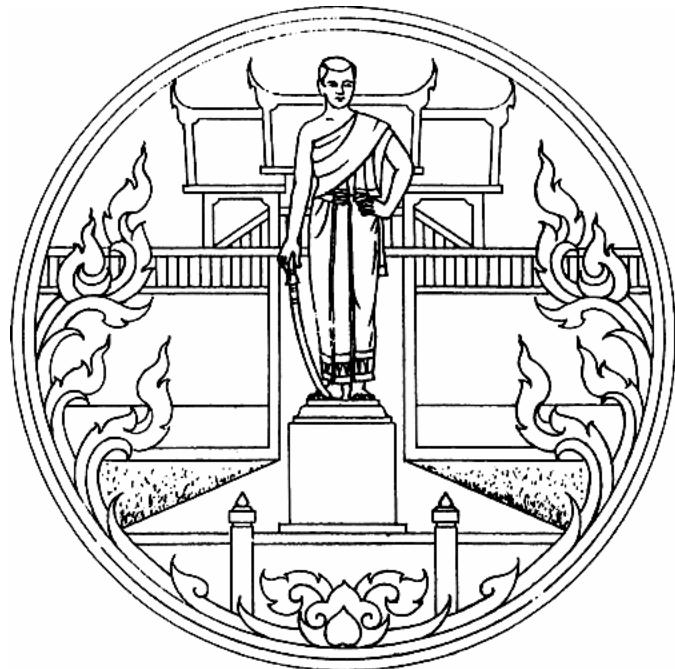
# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 4

### Two friends

### เพื่อน ผู้หญิง ส翁 คน

- 4.1 Introduction
- 4.2 Dialogue
- 4.3 The tones 1: the mid tone and the low tone
- 4.4 Grammar and idioms
- 4.5 Exercises
- 4.6 Answers to exercise 1





## 4.1 Introduction

In order to teach you how to speak – and later how to read – Thai in a natural manner, every lesson will from now on start with a text in the form of a dialogue, accompanied by a description of setting and situation. The dialogues are written in the language that the average Thai uses every day: spoken language. The spoken language, which you will learn in this course, is the language as spoken in Bangkok, which is understood all over the country. Here and there you will be made acquainted with a word originating from another dialect, but which will be recognized and understood by every Thai.

The dialogue will first be given in Thai script. During the start of your study, this will be of little use to you, but you will learn how to read very rapidly, and rereading the first dialogues of the course in Thai script will be an excellent exercise for when you have become more advanced. Please try to direct your attention not only to the transcribed texts, but also to the original Thai. Although it is possible to learn a little Thai without learning to read and write, it is of the greatest importance to be able to write the script well and read it fluently if you really want to learn the language well. Try to recognize letters and words by using the lists of consonants and vowels, and the reference diagram for the tone rules given in lesson 1. From lesson 7 on, when you'll have built up a basic vocabulary and know the basic principles of Thai grammar, you'll begin to learn to read and write Thai properly. When you've studied lesson 12, you'll be able to read not too difficult Thai texts (with the help of vocabulary lists, of course) rather fluently.

Men and women in Thailand have a slightly different vocabulary and they use their language differently from each other; not only through their use of different personal pronouns and polite particles, but also in their general manner of speech. Timbre and intonation, the rhythm of speech and the use of vocabulary are distinctly different between the sexes. You will see that, in the first lessons, women will play the lion's share of the roles in the dialogues. This method has been chosen because women are often more meticulous in their speech, and generally pronounce the tone of a word more clearly. For the gentlemen among you, it is therefore better to initially adjust your hearing to women's voices and a female pronunciation, before you start practicing your male Thai language usage. Later in the course, there will be enough male roles in the dialogues to help you perfect your male pronunciation.

If you have a Thai partner, you'll undoubtedly take over figures of speech, turns of phrase and expressions from him or her. Remember though, that boys and girls speak rather differently in almost all matters and situations. Keep this in mind, if you don't want people to inadvertently hold you for a '*kàtheuj*'<sup>7</sup>.

Furthermore, in Thailand there exist - like everywhere else in the world - differences between the speech of the highly educated and the less highly educated. There is political, military and scientific jargon, teenage language, argot and slang. There is true language, false language and the language of Buddhism. Elderly people sometimes still speak the Thai of the forties or fifties, which is, among other features, characterized by a series of archaic personal pronouns.

Generally, Thai people use more sayings and idiomatic expressions in their language than Westerners. You will thus be duly introduced to all kinds of idioms and proverbs. Also of importance is a vocabulary of special words which are only used in reference to the King and the Royal House: 'râatchásáp'. You shall have to learn this vocabulary well enough to be able to understand news items about the Royal Family on radio and television, and to take part in conversation when you have an audience with the King.

---

<sup>7</sup> *kàtheuj* (କାତ୍ହେଜ): transvestite or transsexual. In Thailand, transsexuality is not frowned upon like in the West. Sex change surgery stands on a very high level in Thailand, and *kàtheuj* are actually found in all professions and all social strata. In speech, *kàtheuj* always use the language characteristics of their new sex.

cd 1a      4.2      Dialogue  
track 10      Two friends.

๔.๒.บก สนทนา  
เพื่อน ผู้หญิง ส่อง คน



[“เพื่อน ผู้หญิง ส่อง คน”]

สองสาว จ้อย กับ นิกกี้ มี อายุ ยี่ สิบ เอ็ด ปี เข้า ห้า สูง เป็น นิสิต ที่ จุฬาลงกรณ์ มหาวิทยาลัย จ้อย เรียน ภาษา อังกฤษ และ ภาษา ฝรั่งเศส อญี่ ที่ คณะ มนุษยศาสตร์ ส่วน นิกกี้ เป็น นิสิต คณะ เศรษฐศาสตร์ หลัง จาก เข้า พัง บรรยาย วิชา ที่ เรียน จบ แล้ว จ้อย กับ นิกกี้ ก็ พบ กัน ที่ ร้าน กาแฟ ข้าง หน้า มหาวิทยาลัย ...

(นิกกี้ เข้า มา ใน ร้าน ใน ขณะ ที่ จ้อย กำลัง นั่ง ดื่ม โอลีเยียง อญี่)

จ้อย: (โบก มือ) เอ้ย นิกกี้ ฉัน อญี่ ที่ นี่

นิกกี้: เอ้า จ้อย มา นาน แล้ว หรือ

จ้อย: ฉัน มา เมื่อ กี้ นี้ เอง นิกกี้ อยาก ดื่ม อะไร มั้ย

นิกกี้: (พูด กับ เด็ก เลิร์ฟ) เอา แฟนต้า แดง ขาด หนึ่ง นะ น้อง

จ้อย: นิกกี้ เเรอ ไม่ สนับย หรือ เปล่า ทำไม หน้า แดง แดง

นิกกี้: หน้า แดง หรือ คง เป็น เพาะะ อากาศ ร้อน มั้ง หิว น้ำ จัง

จ้อย: ใช่ วัน นี้ อากาศ ร้อน มาก คืน นี้ ว่าง มั้ย มี นัด กับ ใคร หรือ เปล่า

นิกกี้: ฉัน ว่าง จะ ไป เที่ยว กัน ใหม

จ้อย: ฉัน ก็ ว่าง เหมือน กัน จัง ไป เที่ยว กัน ดี กว่า

**Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 4.2.**

[phûean phûujing sôong \*khon .]  
*[Friend woman/girl two \*person (classifier)]*

sôong sâaw côj kàp níkkîi mii aajú jîi sìp èt pii . khăw tháng sôong pen >  
*Joy with/and Nikki two girl (young woman) have age 21 year . He/she all two (both) to-be >*  
 nísit thîi cùlaalongkoon máhăawítthájaalaj . côj rian phaasăa angkrít lé? phaasăa fàràngsèet >  
*student at Chulalongkorn University. Joy learn language English and language French >*  
 jùu thîi kháná? mánútsåat . sùan níkkîi pen nísit kháná? sèetthásåat . lăng càak >  
*To-stay/busy-to-do at/in faculty humanities. Part/as-to Nikki to-be student faculty economy. After from (after) >*

khăw fang banjaaj wíchaa thîi rian còp lëew . côj kàp níkkîi kô phóp kan thîi >  
*he/she to-hear lecture subject which/that to-learn to-finish already, Joy and/with Nikki also/rather to-meet each-other at/in >*

ráan kaafee khâang nâa máhăawítthájaalaj ...  
*Shop coffee (café) side front university ...*

(níkkîi khâw maa naj ráan . naj khàná thîi côj \*kamlang nâng dùem oqoliang jùu.)  
*(Nikki to-enter to-come in shop, in moment that/which Joy \*situation-particle to-drink sweet-ice-coffee to-stay/busy-to-do.)*

côj: (bòqok mue) héuj níkkîi . chän jùu thîi nîi .  
*Joy: (to-wave hand) hey Nikki. I to-stay here.*

níkkîi: âw . côj maa naan lëew \*rûe .  
*Nikki: Aha! Joy to-come long (time) already \*question particle.*

côj: chän maa mûea kîi ní eeng . níkkîi jàak dùem àraj \*mâj .  
*Joy: I to-come just-now only/self. Nikki to-want to-drink something \*question particle.*

níkkîi: (phûut kàp dèk seuf) aw feentâa deeng khuat nûeng \*ná nóong .  
*Nikki: (towards (to) child to-serve) to-take Fanta red bottle one \*emphasis particle. younger brother/sister.*

côj: níkkîi . theu mâj sàbaaj rûe plâaw . thammaj nâa deeng deeng .  
*Joy: Nikki, you not/no comfortable or no. Why face red red.*

níkkîi: nâa deeng rûe . khong pen phró? aakàat róon \*mâng . hîw náam cang .  
*Nikki: Face red [question particle]. Probably to-be because weather warm \*anticipation part. Hungry/thirsty water really.*

côj: châj . wan níi aakàat róon mâak . khuén níi wâang mâj . mii nát kàp kraj rûe plâaw .  
*Joy: Yes. Day this weather warm much. Night/evening this to-shall free (not busy)[question part]. Have appointment with someone/who or no/not.*

níkkî: chăñ wâang . cà paj thîaw kan \*măj .

Nikki: *I free (not busy). To-shall to-go to-go-out each-other/together \*question part..*

côj: chăñ kô wâang müean kan . ngán paj thîaw kan dii \*kwaa .

Joy: *I also/rather free (not busy) same each-other/together. So/Thus to-go to-go-out together/each-other good [\*comparative part.]*

**cd 1a Vocabulary  
track 11**



สาว

บท สอนทนา	bòt sõnthanaa	dialogue (in a lesson, in a play)
กับ	kàp	1. with; 2. and
สอง	sõong	two
สาว	săaw	girl, young woman
มี	mii	1. to have; 2. to be present
อายุ	aajú	age
ยี่ สิบ เอ็ด	jû sìp èt	twenty-one
ปี	pii	year
เขา	khăw	1. he; 2. she (3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular)
ทั้ง	tháng	1. all; 2. complete(ly), the whole
ทั้งสอง	tháng sõong	both; ‘all two’
เป็น	pen	1. to be; 2. to can, to be able to
นิสิต	nísít	student (at Chulalongkorn University)
ที่	thîi	1. in, at; 2. place
จุฬาลงกรณ์	cùlaalongkoon	Chulalongkorn
มหาวิทยาลัย	máhăawítthájaalaj	university
เรียน	rian	learn, study
ภาษา	phaasää	language
อังกฤษ	angkrít	English
และ	lé?	and
ฝรั่งเศส	fàràngsèet	French
อยู่	jùu	1. to dwell, to be (at), to stay; 2. to exist, to remain; 3. to be alive; 4. particle to indicate continuous action
เรียน	kháná?	1. faculty; 2. faction, group
มนุษยศาสตร์	mánútsàjásàat	humanities (also: mánútsàat - see



เรียน



ส่วน	sùan	dialogue)
เศรษฐศาสตร์	sèetthàsàat	1. as for, as to...; 2. part
หลัง จาก	lăng càak	economy
ฟัง	fang	after
บรรยาย	banjaaj	to listen, to hear
วิชา	wíchaa	1. speech; lecture
จบ	còp	(school) subject
แล้ว	léew	to finish, finished
ก็	kô, kôo	1. already; 2. further, next
พบ	phóp	also, likewise, as well
กัน	kan	to meet
		reciprocal particle: each other, together



ร้าน	ráan	store, shop
กาแฟ	kaafec	coffee



ข้าง	khâang	1. side; 2. faction; 3. one of a pair
ข้าง หน้า	khâang nâa	1. front side; 2. in front
เข้า	khâw	to enter
มา	maa	to come
ใน	naj	in, inside, within
ขณะ	khànà, khànà?	moment
ใน ขณะ ที่	naj khànà thî	while
กำลัง	kamlang	situation particle; 'busy to do ...'
ดื่ม	dùem	to drink

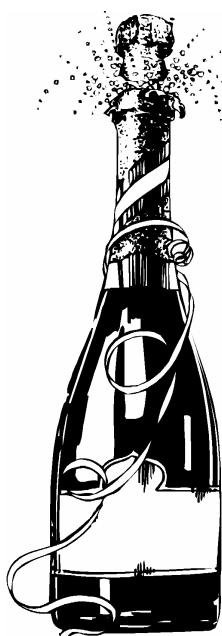


ไอศรีинг	øolíang	iced coffee with sugar, no milk
โบก มือ	bøøk mue	to wave (wave hand)
เอี้ย	héuj	hey
นัน	chǎn	I (informal)
ที่ นี่	thîi nûi	here
เอ้า	âw	aha!; ah!; hey! (expresses surprise)
นาน	naan	long (in time expressions)
หรือ	rüe	1. or; 2. question particle for yes/no questions
เมื่อ กี่ นี้	müea kîi níi	just now

โบก มือ



เด็ก



ขวด

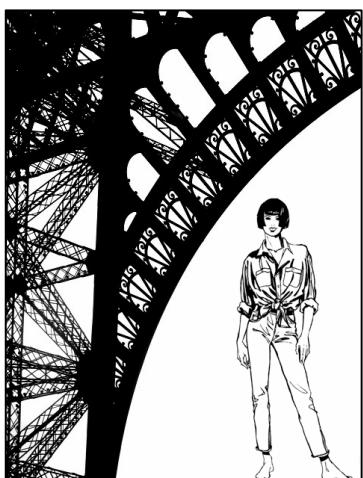


หน้า

ເອງ	eeng	1. only, just; 2. self
ອໝາກ	jàak	to want
ອະໄຮ	àraj	1. something; 2. what?
ນັ້ນ	máj	informal question particle for general questions (compare: ໄທນ)
ພຸດ	phûut	to speak, to talk, to say
ເຕັກ	dèk	child
ເຕັກ ເລີຣົບ	dèk <u>seuf</u>	teenager who serves in a restaurant
ເອາ	aw	1. to take; 2. to want
ແພນຕ້າ	feentâa	Fanta
ແດງ	deeng	red
ຂວາດ	khùat	bottle
ໜຶ່ງ	nùeng	one
ນະ	ná, ná?	emphasis particle: ‘yes?’ , ‘all right?’ , ‘O.K.’
ໜ້ອງ	nóong	1. younger brother or sister; 2. form of address to people younger than the speaker
ເຈືອ	theu	1. you (informal); 2. she (3 <sup>rd</sup> pers. singular, mainly for women)
ໄມ່	mâj	no, not
ສົບຍາຍ	sàbaaj	1. comfortable, cozy; 2. happy, relaxed; 3. healthy
ຫົວໜ້າ	rüe plàaw*	or not (question particle for yes/no questions)
ທຳໄມ່	thammaj	why
ຫັໍາ	nâa	1. face; 2. front side
ຄ່ງ	khong	1. probably; 2. possibly; 3. may; 4. maybe, perhaps
ອາກາສ	aakàat	weather
ຮ້ອນ	róon	warm, hot
ມັ້ງ (ກະມັ້ງ)	máng (kràmang)	probably; seemingly
ຫິວ	hǐw	to be hungry; to crave (for)
ຫິວ ນ້າມ	hǐw náam (nám)	to be thirsty (to crave for water)
ຈັງ	cang	really, truly; indeed
ໃຊ້	châj	yes



พิว



ไป เที่ยว

วัน	wan	day
นี่	níi	this
วัน นี่	wan níi	today
มาก	mâak	1. a lot; 2. many; 3. very
คืน	khuen	evening; night
คืน นี่	khuen níi	this evening; tonight
จะ	cà, cà?	1. shall, will; 2. particle for future tense
ว่าง	wâang	1. free; not busy; 2. vacant, unoccupied; 3.; idle, free; 5. empty appointment
นัด	nát	
ใคร	khraj	1. who (interrogative pronoun); 2. someone
ไป	paj	1. to go; 2. to
ไป เที่ยว	paj thiâw	1. to go out; 2. to travel; 3. to make a trip
ไหม (comp. มั้ย)	măj	question particle for a general question
เหมือน กัน	müean kan	1. the same; 2. also, too
นั้น	ngán	then, in that case (abbreviation of ออย่าง นั้น - <i>jàang nán</i> , ยังนั้น- <i>jang-ngán</i> )
กัน	kan	1. together, each other; 2. particle of reciprocity
ดี กว่า	dii kwàa	better (good + particle for comparative degree)

### Translation dialogue 4.2.

[Two friends]

Joy and Nikki are two twenty-one year old girls. Both of them are students at the Chulalongkorn University. Joy studies English and French at the faculty of Humanities. As for Nikki, she is a student at the Faculty of Economics. After they have followed the lectures of their subjects, Joy and Nikki meet each other in a coffee bar. [literally: coffee shop] in front of the University.

(Nikki enters the coffee bar, while Joy is drinking ice coffee)

Joy: (waves her hand) Hey, Nikki! I am here!

Nikki: Ah! Have you been here long already?

Joy: I just came in. Do you want to drink something, Nikki?

Nikki: (speaks to the waitress) I'll have a bottle of red Fanta, please.  
 Joy: Nikki, are you not feeling well or what? Why is your face so red!  
 Nikki: Is my face red? That'll be because the weather is so hot. I'm really thirsty!  
 Joy: Yes, today it is really hot. Are you free tonight? Do you have an appointment with someone or not?  
 Nikki: I am free. Shall we go out together?  
 Joy: I'm free, too. In that case we'd better go out together.

### 4.3 The tones 1: The mid tone and the low tone

Thai is a tonal language. For a native speaker of a non-tonal language it might take you a little while to get used to the notion that tones are morphemes in your new language. But with the help of the CDs, which accompany this course, you will learn the tones quite fast. Furthermore, you should take the effort to listen to your Thai friends and acquaintances when they speak, and try to imitate them as often as possible. Listen to the lessons on the CDs, try to get used to the sound and the tones of the language, and imitate them aloud. In the following exercise you don't have to pay attention to the meaning of the words. Some have no meaning.

**cd 1a**      **Tone exercise 1: The mid tone and the low tone**  
**track 12**

maa	-	màa	taa	-	tàa	kii	-	kìi
kaa	-	kàa	cing	-	cìng	pii	-	pìi
ngaa	-	ngàa	ling	-	líng	mii	-	mìi
caan	-	càan	mee	-	mèe	nguu	-	ngùu
klaang	-	klàang	dii	-	đìi	duu	-	dùu
kuu	-	kùu	kεε	-	kèε	thεeng	-	thèεng
ruu	-	rùu	pheε	-	phèε	cueng	-	cùeng
fuu	-	fùu	meeεw	-	mèεw	mueng	-	mùeng
puu	-	pùu	meeεng	-	mèεng	dueng	-	dùeng
ree	-	rèe	phreε	-	phrèε	khuen	-	khùen
<u>tue</u> n	-	<u>tùe</u> n	che <u>u</u>	-	ch <u>eu</u>	m <u>o</u> ø	-	m <u>ø</u> ø
<u>mu</u> en	-	<u>mùe</u> n	le <u>u</u> j	-	l <u>eu</u> j	b <u>ø</u> ø	-	b <u>ø</u> ø
<u>de</u> un	-	<u>dùe</u> un	d <u>ø</u> øj	-	d <u>ø</u> øj	oom	-	òom
<u>ke</u> un	-	<u>kùe</u> un	t <u>ø</u> ø	-	t <u>ø</u> ø	ploom	-	plòom
<u>e</u> u	-	<u>è</u> u	m <u>ø</u> øng	-	m <u>ø</u> øng	roong	-	ròong

## 4.4 Grammar and idioms

### Words for ‘and’

The words กับ (kàp) and และ (lé?) can both mean ‘and’. The word กับ (kàp), though, also means ‘with’. กับ (kàp) is used in situations in which two objects or persons are obviously closely linked. และ (lé?) means ‘and’, ‘next’, ‘then’, ‘and after that’, ‘and apart from that’, and is used in situations or persons which do not obviously belong together. In English, a more or less comparable rule is valid in the use of ‘and’ as a conjunction in common phrases connecting things or people that are closely and obviously linked (like: ‘a knife and fork’), whereas in phrases where the link is less obvious, the determiner ‘a’ would be used after ‘and’ (like: ‘a knife and a spoon’). Examples:

จอย กับ นิกกี้	côj kàp níkkîi	Joy and Nikki (two good friends)
ข้าว กับ แกง	khâaw kàp keeng	Rice and curry (always belongs together)
กาแฟ และ แฟนต้า	kaafee lé? feentâa	Coffee and Fanta (two different drinks)
ไปบ้าน และ ไปหาด	paj bâan lé? paj hât	To go home and to the beach (first ... and also ...)
ผู้หญิง และ ผู้ชาย	phûujing lé? phûuchaaj	Women and Men (apart from each other)
ผู้หญิง กับ ผู้ชาย	phûujing kàp phûuchaaj	Women and men (together)

The word แล้ว (léew) means, among other things, ‘and’, ‘next’, ‘then’, and ‘eventually’. It is used, just like และ (lé?) to indicate an order of action, often in combination with ที่ (kô, kôo) - ‘rather’, ‘also’, ‘too’, ‘as well as’, ‘then’, ‘next’. The words แล้ว (léew) and และ (lé?) overlap each other in meaning and use.

เข้าไปกรุงเทพฯ มา แล้ว กลับบ้าน  
khâw paj krungthêep maa léew klâp bâan

*she to-go Bangkok to-come next return house*  
She came back from Bangkok and went home.

ขึ้นรถ และ ขึ้นรถไฟ แล้ว กี ลงเรือ  
khûen rót lé? khûen rótfaj léew kô long ruea

*to-get-in car and to-get-in train and too to-descend ship*  
By car and by train and also by ship.

ต้องใส่เกลือ น้ำตาล และ พริกไทย  
tóng sàj kluea námtaan lé? phríkthaj

*must to-put-in salt sugar and pepper*  
(You) have to put salt, sugar and pepper in it.

เข้าใส่เกลือ น้ำตาล แล้ว กี พริกไทย  
khâw sàj kluea námtaan léew kô phríkthaj

*he to-put salt sugar and then (also) pepper*  
He put in salt and sugar and also pepper.

**The word กัน (kan)** is a particle that indicates reciprocity. You could translate it as ‘together’, ‘each other’ or ‘with each other’. It can also be used to indicate a certain measure of diversity.

เข้าไปชื้อของ กัน  
khǎw paj súe khǒong kan

*he/she to-go to-buy thing 'kan'*

They are going to buy things together.

เข้า พูด กัน  
khăw phûut kan

*he/she to-speak 'kan'*

They talk to each other.

คนมาขอเงิน กันมาก  
khon maa kh&#65302;o ngeun kan m&#65302;ak

*people to-come to-ask money 'kan' much*  
Many different persons came to ask money.

**Long loan words from foreign languages:** It might have struck you that Thai, for a language that is essentially monosyllabic, has a fair number of long, polysyllabic words. These words, which are mainly loans from the classical languages Pali and Sanskrit, are often academic words and are used in connection with subjects as education, science, religion and politics. Modern loan words are mainly from English. Loan words that might even be considered older than the Pali- and Sanskrit influences, are from Khmer, Mon, Chinese and Malay. As in the short, Thai words, every syllable of the long loan words has its own fixed tone; but in a poly-syllabic word, tones around the fixed tone of the syllable have a certain influence on the preceding and following syllable. In Thai words, an unstressed syllable is often pronounced in a mid tone, as we have seen in the example **ə:rl̩** ('àraj' becomes 'araj'), in which the first syllable, 'a', is practically always pronounced in a mid tone, although it should get a low tone according to the tone rules. Examples of polysyllabic loan words from Pali and Sanskrit in this lesson are, for instance:

**เศรษฐศาสตร์** sèetthàsàat economy  
commonly pronounced as: sètthasàat

**มนุษยศาสตร์** mánútsàjàsàat humanities  
commonly pronounced as: *manútsajasàat*

Notice the mid tone of the syllable ‘ma’ in the word ‘mahāwítthajalaj’, which should get a high tone according to the tone rules; the mid tone ‘tha’ in the word ‘sèetthàsàat’, which should be a low tone according to the tone rules; the mid tone ‘ma’ in ‘mánútsàjàsaat’, which should get a high tone; and the mid tone syllables ‘saja’ in ‘manútsajasàat’, which should, strictly according to the tone rules, be low tones.

## 4.5 Exercises

1.

Translate into English:

- 1.níkkû rian thî chùlaalongkoon máhăawítthájaalaj
2. cój mii aajú jî sîp èt pii
3. níkkû mâj sàbaaj măj khráp
4. sàwàtdii khâ cój jàak dùem àraj măj
5. khuен ну theu wâang măj
6. cà paj thiaw kan măj
7. theu jàak dùem àraj rüe plàaw

2.

Seek at least ten words from the Thai version of lesson 4.2. that you can read with the assistance of the explanation of the Thai alphabet in lesson 1. Identify all letters of the words, and transcribe them in the transcription script. Give reasons why the words are pronounced as you think they are.

## 4.6 Answers to exercise 1

1. Nikki studies (learns) at Chulalongkorn University.
2. Joy is 21 years old.
3. a. Are you not feeling well? (man speaking to Nikki).  
b. Is Nikki not feeling well? (man speaking about Nikki).
4. a. Good morning, afternoon etc. (woman speaking). Would you like something to drink?  
(speaker to Joy).  
b. Good morning, afternoon etc. (woman speaking). Would Joy like something to drink?  
(speaker about Joy).
5. Are you free tonight?
6. Shall we go out together?
7. Do you want to drink anything or not??



# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 5

In the morning at the university

ตอน เช้า ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย

- 5.1 Introduction
- 5.2 Dialogue1
- 5.3 Dialogue 2
- 5.4 Idioms
- 5.5 The tones 2: The mid tone and the high tone
- 5.6 Grammar
- 5.7 Exercises
- 5.8 Answers to exercise 1





## 5.1 Introduction

In this lesson you'll be further acquainted to Thai life and language through two simple dialogues, introduced with short outlines of their setting in uncomplicated Thai. You'll start to make yourself more and more familiar with the pattern of a Thai sentence. Furthermore, a number of typical idiomatic expressions and descriptions of grammatical features in the Thai language will be offered in this lesson.

The Thai language doesn't hold any basic 'large' grammatical features, such as cases like in Russian or German, or verb conjugations as in French. The 'difficulties' within the Thai language lie for the greater part in quite unsuspected corners, such as in the use of adverbs of time, which are supposed to be placed in a fixed position within a sentence. Without the starting student of Thai knowing, a change of position of a single adverb can change the whole meaning of an expression.

You will also carry on with your tone exercises in this lesson. You'll probably have heard or read somewhere that the correct tone of a word doesn't really matter very much in Thai, as its meaning will always become clear from its context within the sentence, but this is not always the truth<sup>8</sup>. In any case, it is necessary to be able to pronounce your tones correctly if you wish to learn to speak Thai fluently or even understandably. So pay attention to the tone exercises and listen to the dialogues while you read them.

It is also of the utmost importance to learn all words in the vocabulary lists thoroughly. The larger your vocabulary in the first stadium of your study, the more you'll be able to say when you really start communicating with Thai people.

## 5.2 Dialogue 1

cd 1a  
track 13

In the morning at the University

## ๕.๒. บทสนทนาระบบที่ ๑

ตอนเช้าที่มหาวิทยาลัย

[ตอนเช้าที่มหาวิทยาลัย]

แม้ว เป็น นักศึกษา เช้าไม่ได้ เรียน มหาวิทยาลัย เดียว กัน กับ จ้อย และ นิกกี้ แม้ว เป็น นักศึกษา ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง รามคำแหง เป็น มหาวิทยาลัย เปิด ที่ ใหญ่ มาก และ ทุก คน เช้า มา เรียน ได้ โดย ไม่ ต้อง ผ่าน การ สอน แค่ มี วุฒิบัตร รองเรียน มัธยม ก็ พอ แต่ ... ถ้า อยาก จบ บริณญา มัน ยาก เหมือน กัน ... ดัง นั้น คน ไทย มัก พูด ว่า: "รามคำแหง เช้า ง่าย แต่ ออ ก ยาก"

แม้ว เป็น "เด็ก ราม ๆ" ได้ ส่อง ปี กว่า แล้ว และ เช้า แหน่ง ใจ ว่า เช้า จะ จบ การ ศึกษา ได้

<sup>8</sup> The word *ใกล้* (*klâj*), for instance, means 'closeby', and the word *ไกล* (*klaj*) means 'far away'; The difference in pronunciation lies only in the falling tone of the word *klâj* and the mid tone of the word *klaj*.

ตอน เช้า แมว คุย อยู่ กับ เพื่อน ๆ ที่ ศาลา “ร้อย เอ็ด” ใน มหาวิทยาลัย (“ร้อย เอ็ด” เป็นชื่อ ศาลา พักผ่อน สำหรับเด็ก ราม ๆ ที่ มา จาก จังหวัด ร้อย เอ็ด เหมือน แมว)



ยุ้ย: เอ้ย แมว อยาก กิน ป้าท่องโก๋ ใหม่ ยุ้ย มี น้ำ ชา ด้วย เอา มั้ย

แมว: ขอบ คุณ มาก แมว มี น้ำ ส้ม แล้ว

เย็น: แมว ยัง คง กับ สาว ตื้อ คน นั้น อยู่ หรือ เปล่า คน ที่ หน้า ตา เหมือน ดาว นะ

ยุ้ย: แล้ว สาว ลูก ครึ่ง คน นั้น ล่ะ เป็น เพื่อน แมว ด้วย ใช่ ใหม

แมว: อ้อ ใช่ เข้า เป็น เพื่อน ฉัน ตั้ง แต่ สมัย เด็ก ๆ

ยุ้ย: พวກ เข้า เป็น เด็ก ราม ๆ ด้วย หรือ เปล่า

แมว: ไม่ ใช่ พวກ เข้า เป็น เด็ก จุฬา ๆ

เย็น: ฮ่า ฮ่า รู้ มั้ย เมื่อ อาทิตย์ ที่ แล้ว ทีม ฟุตบอลล์ ของ เรา ชนะ จุฬา ๆ ห้า ต่อ  
ศูนย์

แมว ยุ้ย และ เย็น หัวเราะ เลียบ ตั้ง

#### Transcription and word for word translation of 5.2.; dialogue 1

toon cháaw thîi máhääwítthájaalaj .

Part (time) morning at/in university.

meew pen nák-sùeksää . khăw mâj dâj rian máhääwítthájaalaj diaw kan kàp côj lé? níkkû . >  
*Maew to-be student. She/he no/not<sup>1</sup> can<sup>2</sup> (¹ & ² here: emphatic negative) learn university same together/each-other with Joy and Nikki. >*

meew pen nák sùeksää thîi máhääwítthájaalaj raamkhamhëeng . raamkhamhëeng pen  
máhääwítthájaalaj >

*Maew to-be student at/in university Ramkhamhaeng. Ramkhamhaeng to-be university >*

peut thî jàj mâak . lé? thûk khon khâw maa rian dâj døoj mât tông phaan >  
*open that/which large much/many. And all/every people/person to-enter to-come to-learn to-can by no/not to-must to-pass >*

kaan sòop . khêe mii wútthíbât røøng-rian >  
*[noun particle] examine apply-for-entry. Only to-have/to-be-present diploma school >*

mâtthájom kô phoo . tèè ... thâa jàak còp prinja >  
*secondary-school also/rather enough. But ... if to-want to-finish academic-degree >*

man jàak müean-kan . dang-nán khon thaj mák phûut wâa: >  
*It/that difficult also/as-well. Therefore people/person Thai often/like-to speak/say that: >*

‘raamkhamhëeng khâw ngâaj . tèè òok jâak’ . mæew pen ‘dèk raam’ >  
*“Ramkhamhaeng to-enter easy. but to-exit difficult”. Maew to-be “Child Ram(khamhaeng)” >*

dâj sôong pii kwâa lëew . lé? khâw nêe-caj wâa khâw cà còp >  
*[tense indicator] two year more-than already. And she/he to-be-certain (certain-heart) that she/he shall to-finish >*

kaan sùeksää dâj .  
*[noun particle] to-study to-can.*

toon châaw mæew khuj jiù kàp phûean-phûean >  
*Part (time) morning Maew to-chat to-be-busy/to-stay with friend [reduplication mark] >*

thî sâalaa ‘róoj èt’ ('róoj èt' pen chûe sâalaa phákphòn sámrap dèk raam thî maa >  
*In/at pavilion 'Roi Et' ('Roi Et' to-be name pavilion to-rest for child Ram(khamhaeng) which/that to-come >*

càak cangwât róoj èt müean mæew) .  
*From province Roi Et same/like Maew).*

júj: êuj mæew . jàak kin paathöngkøo mât . júj mii náam chaa dûaj . >  
 Yui: Hey Maew . To-want to-eat 'patongko' [question particle]. Yui (I) to-have water tea also. >

aw mât .  
*To-take/to-want [question particle (shortened)].*

mæew: khòop khun mâak . mæew mii náam sôm lëew .  
*Maew: Thank you (idiom). Maew (I) to-have/to-be-present water orange already.*

jen: mæew jang khóp kàp sâaw dûe khon nán jiù rüe plâaw . >  
 Yen: Maew (you) still/yet to-associate with girl self-willed [classifier for persons] that to-stay/still or no/not. >

khon thî nâa-taa müean daaraa nâ? .  
*Person (classifier\*) that/which face-eyes (appearance) same/like movie-star [emphatic particle].*

júj: lëew sâaw lûuk khrûeng khon nán lâ? . pen phûean mæew >  
 Yui: And (further) girl child half[classifier for persons] that [emphatic particle]. To-be friend Maew >

dûaj châj măj .  
*also yes [question particle].*

m  ew:   o ch   . kh  aw pen ph  ean ch  an t  ang-t  e s  am  j d  ek d  ek  
*Maew: Oh, yes. She/he to-be friend I since time/era child [reduplication mark].*

*Júj:* phuak khaw pen dèk raam dùaj rüe plàaw .  
*Yui:* Group she/he to-be child Ram(khamhaeng) also or no.

meeuw: māj chāj . phūak khāw pen dèk cùlaa .  
*Maew: Not yes (no). Group she/he to-be child Chula(longkorn University).*

jen: hâahâa . rúu mäj . mûea aathít thîi léew thiim fútboon khöong raw cháná >  
Yen: *Haha! To-know [question particle]. When week that/which finished/already team soccer [possessive particle] we/us to-win >*  
cùlaa hâa tòo sűun .

meeuw júj lé? jen húaró? shiang dang .  
*Macu Yuu and Yan to laugh together noise loud*

## **cd 1a      Vocabulary track 14**

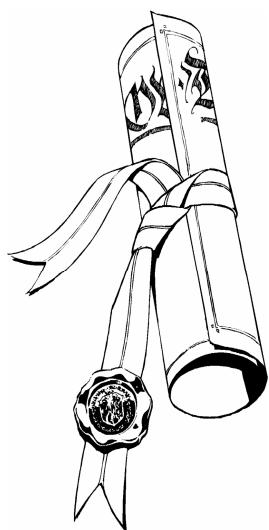




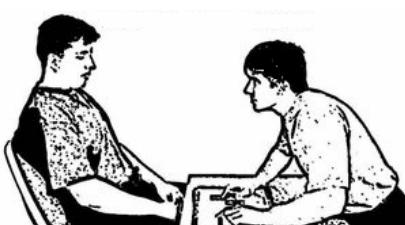
แมว	meew	cat; <i>here</i> : nickname for a girl: ‘Maew’.
เป็น	pen	1. to be; 2. to can
นัก ศึกษา	nák sùeksăa	student
ไม่ ได้	mâj dâj	1. cannot; 2. <i>here</i> : ‘hasn’t’
เดียว กัน	diaw kan	the same, identical, similar
กับ	kàp	with
ของ	khöong	1. object, good, thing; 2. to belong to, of
รามคำแหง	raamkhamhëeng	Ramkhamhaeng (University)
เปิด	pèut	1. to open; 2. open
มหาวิทยาลัย เปิด	máhääwítthájalaj pèut	open university
ใหญ่	jàj	large, big, great
มาก	mâak	1. many, much; 2. very (adverb)
แล้ว	lé?	and
ทุก	thúk	every, each
คน	khon	person, man, people



คน



วุฒิบัตร



การ สอ บสมัคร

เข้า	khâw	to enter, to come in, to get into
เรียน	rian	to learn
มา	maa	1. to come; 2. direction-marker for action/movement towards speaker or subject
ได้	dâj	1. to can; 2. particle to indicate an action in the past, or a taken opportunity
โดย	d�oj	by, through, by means of
ไม่	m�j	no; not
ต้อง	t�ong	(to) must
ผ่าน	ph�an	pass; <i>here</i> : to pass an exam
การ สอ บ	kaan s�op	(entrance) examination
แค่	kh�e	1. only; 2. to the extend of; 3. up to
มี	mii	1. to have; 2. to be present; there is..., there are...
วุฒิบัตร	w�utth�ib�t�at	diploma, certificate
โรง เรียน	r�oeng rian	school
พอ	phoo	1. enough; 2. as soon as
ถ้า	th�aa	if, in case
อยาก	j�aak	to want; to wish
จบ	c�op	to end, to finish; to conclude; to graduate
ปริญญา	p�arinj�aa	university degree
มัน	man	it; that
ยาก	j�aak	difficult, hard
เหมือน (ก�น)	m�uean (kan)	1. the same (- as: - ก�น); 2. also; 3. ( <b>เหมือน</b> - to resemble, to be alike)
ดัง	dang	1. like, as; 2. loud; 3. celebrated, famous; 4. to sound (to ring, to
ดัง น�น	dang n�n	break out (of a sound) therefore, thence, hence; accordingly, so
มาก	m�k	1. often, frequently; 2. likely



ปริญญา

พูด

phûut

1. to speak; 2. to say

ว่า

wâa

1. to say; 2. to scold; 3. conjunction: verbs of speech ('to say', 'to judge' etc.), and verbs like 'to think', 'to suspect' etc. are mostly followed by **ว่า**.

ง่าย

ngâaj

easy

ออก

òok

1. to exit, to go out; 2. out; 3. to give (out), to issue; 4. to set off, to leave, to start going; 5. to put forth, to vent; 6. to draw, to make out



เพื่อน ๆ

ช่วง นี้

chûang ní

now, in this time  
'Child of Ram(khamhaeng)', student at Ramkhamhaeng Univ.

"เด็ก ราม ๆ"

dèk raam

สอง

söong

two

ปี

pii

year

กว่า

kwàa

1. more (than); 2. particle for the comparative degree

แล้ว

léew

1. already; 2. to come to an end, to be finished, to be over; 3. particle for registration of a certain fact; 4. '(and) afterwards'

เข้า

khâw

he, she (3<sup>rd</sup> person singular; short 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural (for พวກเข้า - phûak khâw)

แน่ใจ

nêe caj

to be certain ('certain heart', 'sure heart')

จบ

còp

to end, to finish; to conclude; to graduate

การ ศึกษา

kaan sùeksää

study; the 'act of studying'

ตอน เช้า

toon cháaw\*

in the morning ('unit of time' + 'morning')

ที่

thîi

1. place; 2. land, soil; 3. space, site;

คุยก

khuj

4. preposition of place: in, on, at

อยู่

jùu

to chat

เพื่อน ๆ

phûean phûean

1. to stay, to remain; 2. to be (at, in, on); 3. to live, to dwell, to reside; 4. to exist; 5. to be living; 6. particle to indicate a continuous action

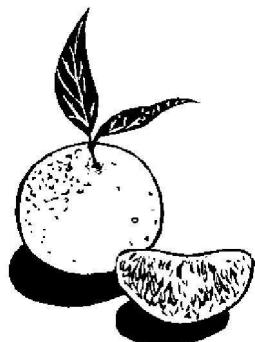
friends (several different)



การ ศึกษา



พักผ่อน



ล้ม



สาว

ศาลา	săalaa	pavilion, kiosk, public (covered) resting place
ร้อย เอ็ด	róoj èt	Roi Et, a city and province in Northeastern Thailand
ใน	naj	1. in, inside; 2. amidst
พักผ่อน	phákphòn	to rest (pronunciation also: <i>phákphòn</i> )
สำหรับ	sămràp	for (the benefit of), to
จังหวัด	cangwàt	province
เอ้ย	êuj; êuj	hey!; here! (exclamation)
ยัย	júj	round, chubby; <i>Here</i> : nickname of a girl
ปาท่องโก๋	paathôngkòo	deep-fried dough sticks, eaten as a fast breakfast
ชา	chaa	tea (leaf)
น้ำ	náam* (nám)	water
น้ำ ชา	náam chaa	'tea water'; brewed tea
ด้วย	dûaj	also
เอา	aw	to take
เอา มั้ย	aw máj	do you want ...? (informal; short form of the question particle)
ขอบ คุณ	khòop khun	thank you/thanks
ส้ม	sôm	orange; tangerine
น้ำ ส้ม	náam sôm	orange or tangerine juice
เย็น	jen	cool; <i>Here</i> : nickname of a girl
ยัง	jang	1. still, yet
คง	khóp	to associate (คง กับ - khóp kàp: to associate with)
สาว	săaw	girl, young woman
ตื้อ	dûe	naughty, self-willed, opinionated
คน	khon	1. person, people; 2. <i>Here</i> : classifier for people
นั้น	nán	that



ເປົ່າ	plääw*	1. no; 2. not, nothing; 3. for nothing, in vain; 4. plain, empty, without additions
ໜ້າ ຕາ	nâa taa	appearance, complexion
ດາරາ	daaraa	movie star, also pop star
ນະ	nâ (nâ?)	particle to emphasize the message in a sentence
ລູກ ຄຣິ່ງ	lûuk khrueng	person of mixed blood
ລໍ່	lâ (lâ?)	variation on ລະ (lá, lá?); ‘concerning’ ‘(and) as for’
ໃຊ່	châj	yes
ໃຊ່ ໄທນ	châj măj	isn’t it?; question particle for a question on which an affirmative answer is expected
ອ້ອ	�o	Oh...
ຈັນ	chăñ	I (informal. Currently mostly used by women, but until the recent past also by men; Still not exclusively a female personal pronoun)
ຕັ້ງ ແຕ່	tâng têe	since
ສົມຍີ	sàmăj	era, time, period
ເຕືກ ພ (ເຕືກ ເຕືກ)	dèk dèk	1. children (several); 2. young (of a child)
ສົມຍີ ເຕືກ ພ	sàmăj dèk dèk	childhood, early adolescence
ພວກ ເຂາ	phûak khåw	they (plural)
“ເຕືກ ຈຸພາ ພ”	dèk cùlaa	‘Child of Chula(longkorn University), student at Chulalongkorn University
ສໍາສໍາ	hâahâa	Haha!
ຮ້ວຍ	rúu	to know
ຮ້ວຍ ມັຍ	rúu máj	do you know?; have you heard? (informal)
ເນື່ອ	mûea	1. once, when; 2. at (a certain time)
ອາທິຕິຍ	aathít	week
ທີ່ ແລ້ວ	thî lêew	last
ທຶນ	thiim	team
ຝຸດບອລິລ	fútboon	soccer
ເຮົາ	raw	we, us



ພຸຕບອລ໌



ชนะ	cháná?	to win
ห้า	hâa	five
ต่อ	tòo	1. against; 2. per
ศูนย์	sǔun	zero
หัวเราะ	húaró?	to laugh
เสียง	šiang	sound
ชนะ	dang	1. loud; 2. to sound; to make sound

### Translation 5.2; dialogue 1

#### In the morning at the university

Maew is a student. She doesn't study together with Joy and Nikki at the same university. Maew is a student at Ramkhamhaeng University. Ramkhamhaeng is an open university, which is very large. And everyone can come and study here without having to pass an entrance examination. You need a diploma from secondary school, that's enough. But ... if you want to get an academic degree there, it's just as difficult (as at another university). Thai people often say: 'to enter Ramkhamhaeng is easy, but to get out (graduate) is difficult.' Maew has been a 'Child of Ram' for two years, now. And she is certain that she will finish her study, too. In the morning at the university, Maew chats with her friends in the "Roi-Et"-pavillion ("Roi Et" is a rest-pavillion for 'Children of Ram' who come from Roi Et province, like Maew.

Yui: Here, do you want to eat *Patongkoo*? I've got tea, as well, do you want some?

Maew: Thanks, I've got orange juice already.

Yen: Do you still associate with that naughty girl, or not? The one who looks like a movie star?

Yui: And that mixed blooded girl. She's a friend of yours, too, isn't she?

Maew: Oh, yes. They have been my friends since childhood.

Yui: Are they also 'Children of Ram', or not?

Maew: No, they are 'Children of Chula (they study at Chulalongkorn university).

Yen: Haha. Do you know what? Last week, our soccer team beat Chula 5 to 0.

Maew, Yui and Yen laugh heartily.

cd 1a      5.3      Dialogue 2

track 15

“Do you want to buy anything else?”

๕.๓. บทสนทนาที่๒

“อยากรื้ออะไรอีกไหม”



[“อยากรื้ออะไรอีกไหม”]

บ่ายวันหนึ่ง แมว กับ จ้อย เจอ กัน ที่ หน้า ราม ๆ สาว ทั้งสอง อยากรื้อ เลือ ผ้า ที่ ตลาด หน้า ราม ๆ เพราะ เลือ ผ้า ที่ นั้น ถูก และ ดี นอก จาก สิ่ง ทอ และ เลือ ผ้า ยัง มี หนังสือ สมุด บันทึก และ อื่น ๆ ขาย ด้วย

แมว: จ้อย อยากรื้ออะไรอีกไหม

จ้อย: ที่นี่มีร้านขายยาไหม

แมว: มีสิ จ้อย เป็นอะไรไหม

จ้อย: ไม่ เป็นไร ปวดหัว เจย ๆ อยากรื้อยา แก้ ปวด

แมว: แมวมีแอสเพริน ใน กระเปา อยาก กินไหม

จ้อย: ไปซื้อน้ำ กัน ก่อน ที่นั้นมีน้ำ อ้อย ขาย

แมว: จ้อย ไม่ เอา น้ำ เปล่า หรือ ที่นี่ มีขาย

จ้อย: เอา กิน ยา ก่อน ดี กว่า

**Transcription and word-for-word translation of 5.3; dialogue 2**

jàak súe àraj ùik mǎj

To-want to-buy what/something more/else [question particle].

bàaj wan nùeng mèew kàp côj cèu? kan thûi nâa raam . sǎaw tháang sǒong jàak >

Afternoon day one Maew and/with Joy to-meet each-other at/in in-front-of Ram. Girl entire two to-want »

súe súea-phâa thî tâlât nâa raam , phró? súea-phâa thî nân thùuk lé? dii . nôok-càak >  
*To-buy clothes in/at market opposite Ram, because clothes there cheap and good. Apart-from >*  
 sîng thoo lé? súea-phâa . jang mii nângsúe . sàmùt banthuék lé? ùen-ùen khăaj dûaj .  
*textiles and clothes, still/yet to-have/to-be-present book, notebook to-record and other-other to-sell also.*

mæew: cój . jàak súe àraj`nk măj .

*Maew: Joy. To-want to-buy what/something more/again [question particle].*

cój: thî nî mii ráan khăaj jaa măj .

*Joy: Place this to-have/to-be-present shop to-sell medicine [question particle].*

mæew: mii sì . cój pen àraj măj .

*Maew: To-have/to-be-present [emphatic particle]. Joy (you) to-suffer-from something [question particle].*

cój: măj pen raj . pùat húa chĕuj chĕuj . jàak súe jaa k  e pùat .

*Joy: Not to-be something. To-ache head without-any-reason. To-want to-buy medicine to-alleviate pain.*

mæew: mæew mii èesphajrin naj kr  p  w . jàak kin măj .

*Maew: Maew (I) to-have/to-be-present aspirin in bag. To-want to-eat [question particle].*

cój: paj súe n  am kan k  on . thî nân mii n  am ôj khăaj .

*Joy: To-go/to to-buy water together first. Place that to-have/to-be-present water sugarcane to-sell.*

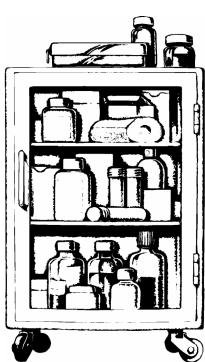
mæew: cój măj aw n  am pl  aw r  e . thî nîi mii khăaj .

*Maew: Joy (you) no/not to-take water plain [question particle yes/no questions]. Place this to-have/to-be present to-sell.*

cój: ch  j . kin jaa k  on dii kw  a .

*Joy: Yes. To-eat medicine first good [particle comparative degree].*

## cd 1a Vocabulary track 16

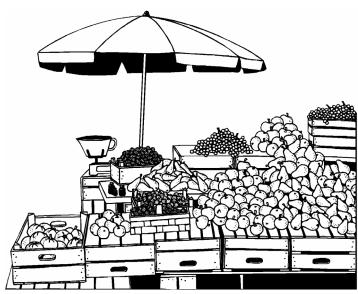


ຢາ

ອຢາກ	jàak	to want, to desire, to wish
ໜ້ວ	súe	to buy
ອະໄຈ	àraj	1. what; 2. anything (in questions)
ອີກ	ìnk	1. more; 2. again; 3. yet
ຮ້ານ	ráan	shop
ເພຣະ	phró?	because
ບໍາຍ	b��aj	afternoon
ເຈອະ (ເຈວ)	c��eu? (ceu)	to meet, to encounter
ໜ້າ	nâa	1. face; 2. in front of



เสื้อผ้า



ตลาด



ปวดหัว

หน้า รามฯ	nâa raam	the part of Ramkhamhaeng Road in front of the university
ทั้งสอง	thâng sôong	both, both of them
เสื้อผ้า	sûea phâa	clothing
ตลาด	tàlât	market
ถูก	thùuk	1. cheap; 2. correct; 3. particle for the passive voice
ดี	dii	good
ถูก และ ดี	thùuk lê? dii	inexpensive and good
นอกจาก	nôok càak	except; besides; apart from
สิ่ง	sìng	thing (compare with ของ (khöong) and อื่นๆ (jàang))
สิ่ง ทอ	sìng thoo	textile
สมุด บันทึก	sàmût banthuék	notebook
และ อื่นๆ (อื่น อื่น)	lê? ùen ùen	1. and other things; 2. et cetera
อยาก	jâak	to want
อะไร	àraj	1. what ? (interrogative pronoun) 2. something
อีก	ìik	1. once more; 2. still more; 3. yet; 4. besides
ที่นี่	thîi nîi	here (literally: place-this)
ขาย	khăaj	to sell
ยา	jaa	medicine
ร้าน ขาย ยา	ráan khăaj jaa	pharmacy (shop to-sell medicine)
ลี	sì?, sì	particle to emphasize the previous
เป็น อะไร	pen àraj	to suffer from something (illness)
ไม่ เป็น ไร	mâj pen raj	it is nothing, it doesn't matter
ปวด	pùat	to be in pain
หัว	húa	head
เฉย ๆ (เฉย เฉย)	chéuj chéuj	1. without any reason; 2. just like that; 3. for free; 4. indifferent; 5. idle
ยา แก้ ปวด	jaa kêe pùat	painkiller, analgesic
แอสไพริน	àesphajrin	aspirin (from English)
กระเป๋า	krâpâw	bag



ยา แก้ ปวด

กิน	kin	to eat, to consume, to use, to drink
น้ำ	náam (nám)	1. water; 2. juice
กัน	kan	1. together; 2. each other
ก่อน	kòon	1. first; 2. before; 3. earlier
น้ำ อ้อย	náam ôj*	sugarcane juice
ขาย	khääj	to sell
มี ขาย	mii khääj	to have for sale; to be available (for sale)
น้ำ เปล่า	náam plàaw	plain (drinking) water
ใช่	châj	yes
ดี กว่า	dii kwàa	better ('good' plus particle comparative degree)

### Translation of dialogue 5.3.

#### Do you want to buy anything else?

One afternoon, Maew and Joy meet each other ‘in front of Ram’ (the part of thànǒn [ถนน - ‘street’] Ramkhamhaeng that stretches out in front of the university). The two girls want to buy clothes at the market in front of Ramkhamhaeng University, because the clothes there are inexpensive and good. Besides textiles and clothes, there are also books, notebooks and other things for sale.

- Maew: Do you want to buy something else?  
 Joy: Is there a pharmacy around here?  
 Maew: Of course. Is something the matter? (Are you ill?)  
 Joy: It's nothing. I just have a headache. I want to buy a painkiller.  
 Maew: I've got aspirin in my bag. Do you want some?  
 Joy: Let's buy some water (something to drink) first. Over there, there's sugarcane juice for sale.  
 Maew: Don't you want plain water? They have it for sale right here.  
 Joy: I'll take that, I'd better have an aspirin first.

## cd 1a 5.4 Idioms

track 17

ซื้อ	súe	to buy, to purchase for money
เอา	aw	to take, for example an order in a restaurant, goods at a market, a drink at a stand
ขอ	khöo	1. to ask (for); 2. to order (polite)
ขโมย	khamoqj*	to steal (ขโมย - khamoqj* also means 'thief')

ขาย	khăaj	to sell (also one's country, one's body)
มีขาย	mii khăaj	to be for sale, to have for sale

cd 1a      **5.5 The tones 2: The mid tone and the high tone**  
 track 18

(The 'mid' tone is also called the 'level' tone. Don't confuse the 'mid' tone with 'middle class consonants')

In this tone exercise you can listen to the 'mid' or 'level' tone, and to the 'high' tone. Listen carefully to the words and repeat them one by one. The meaning of these words is not important; some have no meaning.

baan	báan	chaang	cháang	phraaw	phráaw
laan	láan	maan	máan	khron	khrón
maa	máa	dóon	dóon	traa	tráa
lóo	lóo	luem	lúem	daam	dáam
tóo	tóo	kin	kín	thiim	thíim
mii	míi	dii	díi	daaj	dáaj
pii	píi	duem	dúem	khrang	khráng

## 5.6 Grammar

### 1. Head nouns

A head noun is used in compounding. Compounding is the joining of two or more words together to form a new word. The first word of the compound is a 'head noun', which may be followed by either one of two 'attributes'; a noun ('noun attribute') or a verb ('verb attribute'). The 'noun attribute' and 'verb attribute' either restricts or qualifies the meaning of the head noun.

Examples of common head nouns and their attributes are:

รถไฟ	rót faj	vehicle + fire	(noun + noun)	train
ห้องน้ำ	hōng náam	room + water	(noun + noun)	bathroom
ทหารเรือ	tháhăan ruea	soldier + ship	(noun + noun)	sailor (in the navy)
ที่ดิน	thíi din	place + earth	(noun + noun)	lot, piece of land
เครื่องบิน	khrûeang bin	machine + to fly	(noun + verb)	airplane
น้ำดื่ม	náam dùem	water + to drink	(noun + verb)	drinking water
ร้านซักรีด	ráan sak rít	shop + to wash + to iron	(noun + verb + verb)	laundry shop

Some head nouns have a verb *and* an object as attributes. Examples are:

ช่าง ถ่าย รูป	châng thàaj rûup	expert + to photograph + picture	photographer
ยา แก้ ปวด	jaa kêe pùat	medicine + to alleviate + pain	painkiller (medicine)
ร้าน ขาย ของ	ráan khääj khöong	shop + to sell + thing	shop

Two other important head nouns in Thai are: **การ** (*kaan*) and **ความ** (*khwaam*):

- a. **การ** (*kaan*) means in fact ‘work’, ‘duty’, ‘task’, and is used as a head noun for the formation of nouns with dynamic verbs and with other nouns. As a rough translation of the word ‘**การ**’ (*kaan*), we can use ‘work of...’, or ‘task of...’ when it is used in combination with a noun, and ‘act of...’ when the head noun is used in combination with a verb:

บ้าน	bâan	house	การ บ้าน	kaan bâan	homework
เมือง	mueang	country	การ เมือง	kaan mueang	politics
ฝี มือ	fîi mue	craft	การ ฝี มือ	kaan fîi mue	craftsmanship
ทำงาน	thamngaan	to work	การ ทำงาน	kaan thamngaan	the act of working; the work
ตรวจ	trùat	to control	การ ตรวจ	kaan trùat	the act of controlling; the control
รักษา	ráksää	to keep, to maintain	การ รักษา	kaan ráksää	the keeping; the maintenance
โจมตี	côømtii	to attack	การ โจมตี	kaan côømtii	the act of attacking; the attack

- b. **ความ** (*khwaam*) means ‘case’, ‘matter’, ‘substance’, and is used as a head noun in combination with abstract static verbs:

รู้	rúu	to know	ความ รู้	khwaam rúu	knowledge
เห็น	h��n	to see	ความ เห็น	khwaam h��n	opinion
กล้าหาญ	klâah��an	(to be) brave	ความ กล้าหาญ	khwaam klâah��an	courage
ดี	dii	(to be) good	ความ ดี	khwaam dii	goodness, virtue
สวย	s��aj	(to be) beautiful	ความ สวย	khwaam s��aj	beauty
ยินดี	jindii	(to be) glad	ความ ยินดี	khwaam jindii	gladness, joy

Note: Some verbs can be preceded by **ການ** (kaan) as well as **ຄວາມ** (khwaam). These are verbs, which in some cases can be earmarked as dynamic, and in other cases as static:

<b>ฝິນ</b>	fān	to dream	<b>ກາຣິຟິນ</b>	kaan fān	dreaming as an ‘action’
			<b>ຄວາມ ພິນ</b>	khwaam fān	the dream, the illusion
<b>ເຫັນ</b>	hēn	to see	<b>ກາຣິເຫັນ</b>	kaan hēn	the action of seeing, looking
			<b>ຄວາມ ເຫັນ</b>	khwaam hēn	the opinion

## 2. Classifiers: A first introduction

There is a certain group of words - called ‘classifiers’ - which are used frequently in Thai. A classifier is a linguistic ‘pointer’, which indicates the semantic class to which a group of nouns belongs. Classifiers are thus in fact ‘*sort name-words*’; indicators of people, animals or things as part of a collection of comparable items or beings. A classifier can be used for the following:

- a. To specify a noun within a semantic group;
- b. To specify a noun in a list or summing up;
- c. To replace nouns in certain constructions;

Classifiers are roughly comparable in use and function with English words as ‘slice’ (a slice of bread), ‘head’ (20 heads of cattle) or ‘pack’ (a pack of cigarettes). Also, in the expressions ‘a (or per) piece’, and ‘please give me five slices’, a Thai would use a classifier for the words ‘piece’ and ‘slices’. Where English only knows a limited number of this kind of words, the Thai language uses a whole range of classifiers.

A classifier can be either a repetition of the noun it specifies, or a specific word, which is not used in any other context but as a classifier. Furthermore, some classifiers have - apart from their semantic use as a classifier - their own meaning as a noun, which has little or nothing to do with the noun for which they are used as a classifier (such as ‘piece’ in English). Sometimes, a classifier may specify the character, shape or status of a noun. There are, for instance, classifiers that specify the contents of a book, classifiers that identify round or flat objects, and classifiers that are only used for kings and monks. There are about eighty or ninety classifiers which are still in use. About fifty of them are frequently met with in daily speech.

Classifiers are thus used in the following manner:

**a. As a sort- or class-indicator for a noun which is used in combination with a demonstrative pronoun in one sentence**

In these constructions, the classifier appears behind the noun:

<b>ຮອດ ຄັນ ນີ້ ດື່ງ -</b>	car [classifier for cars] this good
rót khan nû dii -	This is a good car.
<b>ຮອດ ຄັນ ນີ້ ແດ່ງ -</b>	car [classifier for cars] this red
rót khan nû deeng -	This car is red.

### b. In summing up persons, animals or things

Here, classifiers are used to emphasize the difference and variety between things, animals or persons of one kind. After it has become clear about what or whom one is talking or writing, the original noun to which the classifier is referring can be left out:

**มี รถ คัน สี แดง มี คัน สี เขียว และ มี คัน สี ขาว อีก คัน หนึ่ง -**  
 mii rót khan sǐi dèeng . mii khan sǐi khiew . lé? mii khan sǐi khaw èik khan nùeng -  
*to-have/to-be-present car [classifier for cars] color red . to-have/to-be-present [classifier for cars] color green . and to-have/to-be-present [classifier for cars] color white also [classifier for cars] one*  
 There is a red car, a green one, and also a white one.

### c. In combination with numerals

Classifiers are placed after the cardinal numeral:

<b>ผอม เท็น ผู้ชาย สี่ คน -</b> phǒm hěn phûu chaaj sìi khon -	I to-see man four [classifier for people] I see four men.
<b>เข้า มี รถ ส่อง คัน -</b> khaw mii rót sòong khan -	he to-have car two [classifier for cars] He has two cars.

The cardinal numeral **หนึ่ง - nùeng** - ‘one’ may also be placed behind the classifier:

<b>ผอม เท็น รถ คัน หนึ่ง -</b> phǒm hěn rót khan nùeng -	I to-see car [classifier for cars] one I see one car; I see a car
---	--

หนึ่ง - *nùeng* (one) is here often translated with the English indefinite article ‘a’.

The classifier is always placed before the definite ordinal:

<b>รถ คัน แรก -</b> rót khan rêek -	car [classifier for cars] first The first car.
--	---

The classifier is placed in front of adjectives such as **เดียว - diaw** - a single, **หน้า - nâa** - next, in front, and **สุดท้าย - sùttháaj** - last:

<b>ผอม มี รถ คัน เดียว -</b> phǒm mii rót khan diaw -	I (man speaking) to-have car [classifier] a single I've got (only) one car.
<b>เรา จะ ขึ้น รถ เมล์ คัน หน้า -</b> raw cà khüen rót mee khan nâa -	We shall to-get-on bus [classifier] in-front We shall get on the bus in front (the first bus).
<b>หนังสือ เล่ม นี้ เป็น เล่ม สุดท้าย -</b> nângsue lêm ní pen lêm sùttháaj -	book [classifier] this to-be [classifier] last This is the last book.

- c. If, within a given situation, it is perfectly clear about which subject one is talking, a classifier can replace a noun completely.

Classifiers, which replace nouns, are placed in stead of the noun (see also the example in 2.b):

คัน นั่น ไม่ สวาย -	[classifier for cars] that no/not beautiful
khan nán māj súaj -	That one is not beautiful (speaking about cars).
ตัว นั่น ไม่ น่ารัก -	[classifier for animals] that no/not loveable
tua nán māj náarák -	That one is not loveable (speaking about, for instance, a cat or a dog).
เล่ม นั่น สนุก -	[classifier for books] that amusing
lêm nán sànūk -	That one is amusing (speaking about a book)

### 3. The degrees of comparison

The comparative degree is formed with the particle กว่า (*kwàa*), a word that, in itself, can be translated with ‘more’ or ‘more than’, but when placed in another position within the sentence, means ‘till’, ‘until’, ‘by the time’. The superlative degree is formed with the word สุด (*sùt*), which means ‘last’, ‘to end’, ‘beyond’: or, more correct and in written language: ที่ สุด (*thî sùt*). In spoken language the expression: กว่า เพื่อน (*kwàa phûean*) is used for the superlative degree:

ดี	dii	good
ดี กว่า	dii kwàa	better
ดี กว่า เพื่อน	dii kwàa phûean	better (spoken language)
ดี ที่ สุด	dii thî sùt	best
ดี สุด	dii sùt	best (spoken language)

### 4. Manners of speech.

You already know the word ‘เป็น’ in the meaning of ‘to be’. Another meaning of ‘เป็น’ is: ‘to have a disease’, ‘to suffer from something’.

ผม เป็น หวัด	- phǒm pen wàt	- I’m having a cold
หวัด	- wàt	- a cold
เข้า เป็น โรค บิด	- khăw pen rôqök bít	- he/she is suffering from dysentery
โรค	- rôqök	- illness, disease
โรค บิด	- rôqök bít	- dysentery

ไม่ได้ (mâj dâj) is used in dialogue 5.2. in the sense of ‘on the contrary’, ‘certainly not’:

แม้ว่าไม่ได้เรียนมหาวิทยาลัยเดียว กัน กับ จ้อย และ นิกกี้ -

meeuw māj-dāj rian máhāawítthájalaj diaw kan kàp cōj lē? níkkii

*Maew [on the contrary not] learn university same each-other with Joy and Nikki -*  
On the contrary, Maew doesn't study at the same university as Joy and Nikki.

N.B.: The word **ଦାବ** (dâj) can also be used as a particle to indicate a past event, which still has a certain influence on the present, or to indicate an opportunity, which has been taken. The word doesn't mean 'to be able' in these contexts.

ຜົມ ໄນ ໄດ້ ໄປ - phǒm māj dâj paj - I [haven't happened] to-go - I haven't gone

ไม่เป็นไร (*mâj pen raj*) means: ‘it doesn’t matter’, ‘it doesn’t bother me’, ‘it is o.k.’. This expression is one of the most famous in Thailand, and can be used in many different situations. To prevent another person to loose face, a small offense is forgiven with a mild ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘*mâj pen raj*’. Are you feeling a bit down hill? ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘*mâj pen raj*’. Have you forgotten something? ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘*mâj pen raj*’. But don’t say ‘ไม่เป็นไร’ - ‘*mâj pen raj*’ on a funeral (although there are many Thai who would gladly play down the futility of life with the expression), but: เสียใจ (*sia caj*); ‘broken heart’; ‘my heart is broken’, ‘I’m desolate’, ‘I’m sorry’.

## 5.7 Exercises

## Exercise 1

Answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script.

1. m̄eeuw rian nāngsüe thī näj . (เรียน หนังสือ - rian nāngsüe - to learn, to study)
  2. m̄eeuw jàak kin náam chaa mäj .
  3. m̄eeuw jàak kin paathōngkǫö mäj .
  4. phûean phûean m̄eeuw chûe àraj .
  5. thiim fútboon khōong máhăawítthájalaj näj cháná? thiim cùlaa hâa tòo súun .
  6. côj pen rôqök àraj rüe plàaw .
  7. m̄eeuw káp côj jàak súe àraj thî nâa raam .
  8. m̄eeuw káp côj pen sääw dûe rüe sääw súaj .

## Exercise 2

**Exercise 2**  
Listen to tone exercise 5.5., and repeat each word.

### Exercise 3

**Exercise 3**  
Learn all new words in lesson 5 by heart.

## Exercise 4

**Exercise 4**  
Write – in the transcription-script – a story of about a hundred words. Use the words and the grammar you have learned thus far. Give a translation in English.

## 5.8 Answers to exercise 1

(In this stadium, you don't have to be able yet to read the Thai script. The answers are also given in Thai script for later reference.)

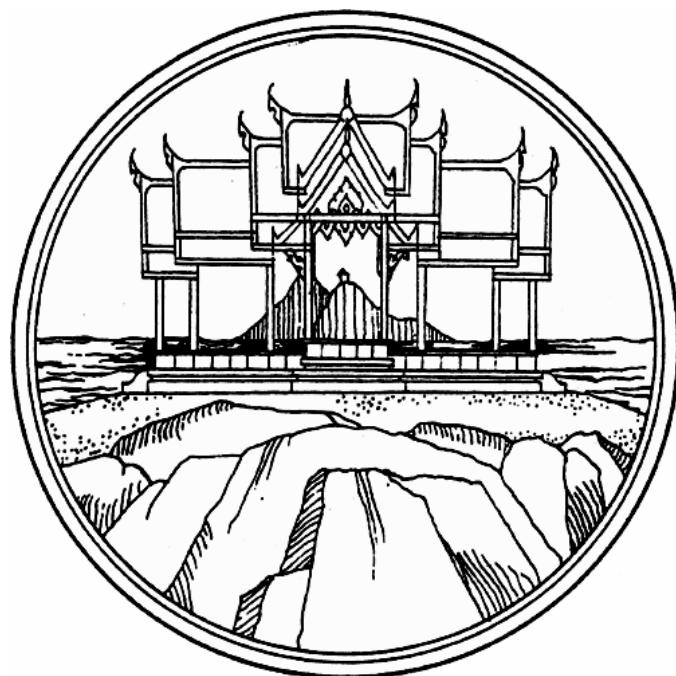
1. mœew rian năngsüe thii máhääwítthájaalaj raamkhamhëeng .
๑. แมว เรียน หนังสือ ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง
2. mœew mâj jàak kin . mœew mii náam sôm jùu lëew .
๒. แมว ไม่ อายาก กิน แมว มี น้ำ ส้ม ออยู่ แล้ว
3. mœew mâj jàak kin paathöngkǫo .
๓. แมว ไม่ อายาก กิน ป่าท่องโกก
4. phûean phûean mœew chüe júj lë? jen .
๔. เพื่อน ๆ แมว ชื่อ ยุ้ย และ เย็น
5. thiim fútboon khöong máhääwítthájaalaj raamkhamhëeng cháná? thiim cùlaa hâa tòo súun .
๕. ทีม ฟุตบอลล์ ของ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง ชนะ ทีม จูฬาฯ ห้า ต่อ สูญ
6. côj pùat húa . tèe mâj pen àraj ráaj reëng .
๖. จ้อย ปวด หัว แต่ เธอ ไม่ เป็น อะไร ร้าย แรง (ร้าย แรง - ráaj reëng - serious, severe)
7. mœew kàp côj jàak súe súea phâa thiî tálàat nâa raam .
๗. แมว กับ จ้อย อายาก ชื้อ เลือ ผ้า ที่ ตลาด หน้า รามฯ
8. mœew kàp côj duu pen sâaw dûe mâak kwâa . tèe theu nâa taa súaj thâng khûu .
๘. แมว กับ จ้อย ดู เป็น สาว ดื้อ มา กว่า แต่ เธอ หน้า ตา สวย ทึ้ง คู่

# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 6

### A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin พักผ่อนที่หัวหินในวันสุดสัปดาห์

- 6.1 Introduction
- 6.2 Dialogue
- 6.3 The tones 3: The mid tone, the rising tone and the falling tone
- 6.4 Idioms
- 6.5 Grammar
- 6.6 Exercises
- 6.7 Answers to exercise 1





## 6.1 Introduction

Thai people love to go sight-seeing during their vacations and holidays: a day at the beach, a weekend in the mountains, a trip to the parental village in the countryside; a trek through the jungle, or a visit to a town or area with a certain culinary specialty. Thai people don't like to travel alone. On bus stations and train terminals you can recognize the holiday-goers and day-trippers by the happy demeanor they display while waiting for their transport in small, colorfully dressed groups: teenagers and students in shorts, T-shirts and caps; groups of friends in leisure clothing; families with children and bags full of presents for the family... ไปเที่ยวสนุก (paj thìaw sàñùk) - 'to go on a trip is fun'!

cd 1a 6.2 Dialogue

## 6.2 Dialogue

## ๖.๒.บท สันธานา

track 19

## A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin

## พักผ่อน ที่ หัว หิน ใน วัน สุด สปดาห์



## พักผ่อนที่หัวหินในวันสุดสัปดาห์

จ้อย และ พี่เลือ พี่ชาย ของ จ้อย ไปเที่ยว หัวหิน กัน เข้าพานิภก์ แมว และเพื่อนพี่เลือ ชื่อ พี่คง ไปด้วย หนุ่มสาว ทั้ง ห้า คน ขึ้นรถ โดยสาร ที่สถานีขนส่งสายใต้ ที่ กรุงเทพฯ เมื่อถึง หัวหิน พากเข้าลงรถ ที่ ตลาด และเดินไปที่ชายหาด พี่คง รู้จัก โรงแรม ที่ ถูก และ ดี ออยู่ หลัง สวน ต้นมะพร้าว ที่ ริมชายหาด

คิง: นั่นไง โรงแรม “เจ็ด พี น้อง” โรงแรม ดี ดี จัง เลย เทืน มั้ย

แมว: แพง ใหม่ ๑๘

จ้อย: ไม่ แพง หรอก แต่ ถ้า เงิน แมว ไม่ พอ จ้อย จะ ออกราคา ก่อน

เพื่อนทั้งกลุ่มเข้าไปในโรงแรม และสอบถามพนักงานต้อนรับว่า ราคาห้องจะเท่าไร

- จ้อย: มี ห้อง สาม ที่ นอน กับ ห้อง ส่อง ที่ นอน ใหม่ ค่ะ

พนักงาน: มี ค่ะ ห้อง สาม คน กับ ห้อง ส่อง คน ราคา เดียว กัน ค่ะ

แมว: ราคา เท่าไร ค่ะ

พนักงาน: วัน ละ เจ็ด ร้อย บาท ค่ะ

แมว: (พูด เบ้า ๆ กับ จ้อย) แพง จัง แมว เอา เงิน มา แค่ แปด ร้อย บาท เท่า นั้น

จ้อย: ไม่ เป็น ไร หรอ กแมว จ้อย จะ ออก ให้ เอง เพื่อน ผุ้ กัน

เลือ: เอา ส่อง ห้อง ครับ ห้อง ผู้ หญิง หนึ่ง ห้อง ผู้ ชาย หนึ่ง ตก ลง ใหม่

พนักงาน: เชิญ ลง ทะเบียน ก่อน ค่ะ คุณ จะ จ่าย ตอน นี้ หรือ ตอน ออกราคา โรงแรม ค่ะ

เลือ: ผม จะ จ่าย ค่า ห้อง เดียว นี้ เลย ที่ นี่ รับ บัตร เครดิต ใหม่ ครับ

พนักงาน: รับ ค่ะ... เที่ยว ให้ สุก นะ ครับ

เลือ: แน่นอน ครับ

## **Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 6.2.**

phákphòn thîi húa hín naj wan sùt sàpdaa.

*To-relax in/at Hua Hin in/on day end week.*

côj lè? phii sua . phii chaaj khöong côj . paj thiaw húa hín kan . >

*Joy and older-sibling Sua. Older-sibling man belonging-to Joy. Go to-make-pleasure-tour Hua Hin together. >*

khăw phaa níkkî . mæew . lé? phûean phîi súa chûe phîi khing paj dûaj . >

*He/she to-lead Nikki. Maew. and friend older-sibling Sua older-sibling Khing go/to also. >*

nùm sǎaw tháng hâa khon khüen rót dોojsaan thîu sàth anii kh n >

*Young-man young-woman all five [classifier f. people] to-get-in car to-travel in/at station to-transport >*

sòng sääj tâj thii krungthêep . müea thüeng húa hín . phûak khăw long rót thii >

*to-send line south in/at Bangkok. When to-arrive Hua Hin. Group he/she to-descend car in/at >*

tàlaat lé? deun paj thîi chaaj-hàat . phîi khing rúucàk røøng-reem thîi >

*market and to-walk to-go in/at beach. Older-sibling Khing to-know hotel that/which >*

thùuk lé? dii jùu lǎng sǔan tòn máphráaw thii rim chaaj-hàat .

*Cheap and good to stay behind garden tree coconut at/in edge beach.*

khing: nân ngaj . røøng-reem ‘cèt phîi nóong’ . røøng reem duu dii cang leuj . h n m j .

*Khing:* That how. Hotel 'Jet Pee Nong'. Hotel to-appear good really indeed. To-see [shortened question particle].

- meeuw: pheeeng māj khá .  
*Maew: Expensive [question particle][polite particle f.].*
- cōj: māj pheeeng rōok . tēe thāa ngeun meeew māj phoo . cōj >  
*Joy: No/not expensive [modifying sentence particle]. But if money Maew (you) not enough. Joy (I) >*  
 cà òok hāj kòn .  
*shall to-offer/to-issue to-give/to first.*
- phūean tháng klùm khāw paj naj rōøng-reem lé? sòop-thääam phánák-ngaan tōon-ráp >  
*Friend entire group to-enter to-go in hotel and to-inform-about person-in-charge to-welcome (receptionist) >*
- wâa raakhaa hôong lá thâwraj .  
*that price room per how much.*
- cōj: mii hông sääam thîi-noon kàp hôong söong >  
*Joy: To-have/to-be-present room three place-sleep (bed) with/and room two >*  
 thîi-noon māj khá .  
*place-sleep (bed) [question particle] [polite particle f.].*
- Recept.: mii khâ . hông sääam khon kàp hôong söong >  
*Recept.: To-have/to-be-present [polite particle f.]. Room three person and/with room two >*
- khon raakhaa diaw kan khâ .  
*person price the-same together [polite particle f.].*
- meeuw: raakhaa thâwraj khá .  
*Maew: Price how-much [polite particle f.].*
- Recept.: wan lá cèt róoj bàat khâ .  
*Recept.: Day per seven hundred Baht [polite particle f.].*
- meeuw: (phûut baw-baw kàp cōj) pheeeng cang . meeew aw ngeun maa khêe pèet >  
*Maew: (to-talk softly with Joy) Expensive quite. Maew to-take money to-come only eight >*  
 róoj bàat thâwnán .  
*hundred Baht merely.*
- cōj: māj pen raj rōok meeew . cōj cà òok hāj eeng . phûean füung kan .  
*Joy: 'It doesn't matter' (idiom) [modifying sentence particle] Maew. Joy (I) to-shall to-offer/to-issue to-give/to (my)self. Friend group together.*
- süea: aw söong hôong khráp . hôong phûu jing nüeng . hôong phûu chaaj nüeng . >  
*Sua: To-take two room [polite particle m.]. Room girl one. Room boy one. >*  
 tòk-long māj .  
*'All right' (idiom) [question particle].*

- Recept.: cheun long-thábian kèon khâ . khun cà càaj toon-níi >  
*Recept.: to-invite/please to-register first [polite part. f.]. You to-shall to-pay time-this (now) >*
- rüe toon òok càak røøng reem khá . >  
*Or time exit from hotel [polite particle f.]. >*
- súa: phóm cà càaj khâa hóng díaw-níi leuj khráp . thíi níi ráp bát khreedít măj khráp.  
*Sua: I (man speaking) to-shall to-pay price room moment-this (now) indeed [polite particle m.]. Place this to-accept card credit [question particle]/[polite particle m.].*
- Recept.: ráp khâ... thíaw háj sàñuk ná khá  
*Recept.: To-accept [polite particle f.]... To-make-pleasure-tour to-let/to-give pleasant [emphatic particle] [polite particle f.].*
- súa: nêënoon khráp  
*Sua: Sure [polite particle m.].*

### cd 1a Vocabulary track 20



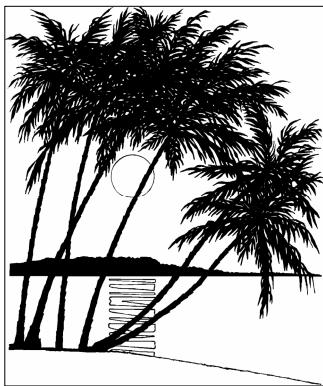
พี่ชาย

วัน สุด สัปดาห์	wan sùt sàpdaa	weekend
พักผ่อน	phákphòn	to rest, to relax (also: phákphòn)
หัว 亭	húa hin	Hua Hin; a seaside resort on the coast of the Gulf of Thailand
พี่	phíi	elder sibling (elder brother; elder Sister)
พี่ ชาย	phíi chaaj	elder brother
ของ	khöong	1. thing, object; 2. to belong to (possessive pronoun. E.g. หมา ของ เขา - măa khöong khaw - dog belonging-to he - 'his dog')
ไป	paj	1. to go (in a direction away from the speaker or the subject of a sentence); 2. to (direction)
เที่ยว	thíaw	to go out; to go on holiday or vacation for pleasure; to make a pleasure tour
กัน	kan	1. together, collectively; 2. each
พาน	phaa	to lead; to guide; to bring along (said only of persons)
รถ	khing	Khing (nickname - from English)
คิง	dûaj	1. also; too; as well; likewise; 2. by, with, by means of
ด้วย		





รถ โดยสาร

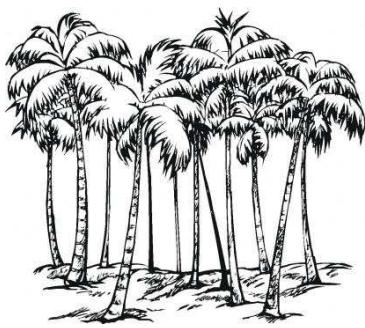


ชายหาด

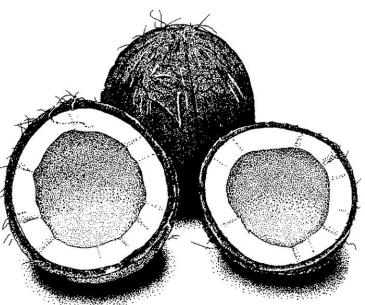


สวน

หนุ่ม	nùm	young man
สาว	sǎaw	young woman
ทั้ง	tháang	1. completely, wholly, entirely; 2. all, whole, entire; 3. every(thing) of something; 4. also, as well; 5. both, five
ห้า	hâa	
ทั้ง ห้า	tháang hâa	all five (of them)
ออก ไป	dok paj	1. to go out; 2. to leave; 3. from, away from; 4. ‘Go away!’
ขึ้น	khüen	1. to ascent; 2. to get in, to board (car, bus, plane)
รถ	rót	1. car; 2. vehicle; 3. cart, van, wagon, carriage
รถ โดยสาร	rót doøjsääan	bus which serves routes between cities
สถานี	sàthääanii	station
ขน ส่ง	khõn sòng	1. to transport, to deliver;
	2. transportation	
สาย	sääj	1. line, route, road; 2. late, delayed
ใต้	tâj	1. south, southern; 2. under, beneath
เมื่อ	mûea	1. when, while, at, in (time); at the time; as soon as; 2. time, moment
ถึง	thüeng	1. reach; 2. until; 3. about, concerning
พวก เขา	phûak khäw	they (plural)
ลง	long	1. to descend; 2. to get out, to get off (car, bus, plane, train)
ตลาด	tàlàat	1. market; 2. center of a village or small town
เดิน	deun	to walk
ชาย หาด	chaaj hääat	beach
รู้จัก	rúucák	to know, to be acquainted with
โรงแรม	røøng ræem	hotel
ถูก	thùuk	1. cheap; 2. correct, right; 4. to hit, To touch; 5. grammatical element in passive constructions



ต้น มะพร้าว



มะพร้าว



พนักงาน

ดี	dii	good, fine, well, nice, satisfactory, virtuous, favorable
หลัง	lăng	1. behind; 2. classifier for houses, tents, mosquito-nets; 3. back (body-part); 4. afterwards, after, later
สวน	săan	garden
ต้น	tôn	tree
มะพร้าว	máphráaw	coconut
ริม	rim	edge, rim, border; margin; shoreline
นั่น ไง	nân ngaj	'Look!', 'There!', 'There it is!'
"เจ็ด พี โนong"	'cèt phîi nóong'	'Jet Pee Nong', hotel in Hua Hin
ดู	duu	1. to look, to look at; 2. to watch; to stare, to observe; 3. to appear, to seem; 4. to consider, to judge
ดู ดี	duu dii	to look well, to look good
จัง	cang	greatly, quite, extremely, fully
จัง เลย	cang leuј	1. extraordinarily; 2. quite, extremely
เห็น มั้ย	hĕn măj	you see?
แพง	pheeঁng	expensive
ไม่	mâj	no, not
หรอก	ròok	'modifying sentence particle'; 'หรอก' is a particle used to: 1. soften a statement or to mellow an order; 2. to reassure someone; 3. to express mild surprise or amazement; 4. to express mild annoyance
ไม่ หรอก	mâj ròok	not at all
ถ้า	thâa	if, in case
เงิน	ngeun	1. money; 2. silver
พอ	phoo	1. enough; 2. as soon as
ออก	òok	1. to come out, to go out; 2. out, outwards; 3. to pay, to spend; 4. to leave; 5. to issue; 6. to sprout, to flower; 7. to set going; 8. to result; 9. to follow from, come from
ออก ให้	òok hâj	1. to pay, to spend (for someone); 2. to lend, to advance
ทั้ง	tháng	1. completely, wholly, entirely;



เงิน

กลุ่ม

klùm

สอบถาม

sòop thăam

พนักงาน

phánák-ngaan

800

แปด ร้อย

ว่า

wâa

ราคา

raakhaa

ห้อง

hôong

ละ

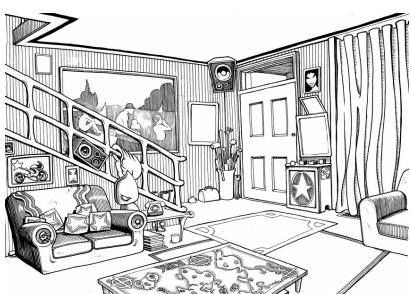
lá

เท่าไร

thâwraj

มี

mii



ห้อง

ที่นอน

thîu noon

กับ

kàp

เดียว กัน

diaw kan

วัน

wan

วัน ละ

wan lá

เจ็ด

cèt

ร้อย

róoj

บาท

bàat

เบา ๆ (เบา เบา)

baw baw

เอาร...มา

aw ... maa



ที่นอน

แค่

khêe

แปด

pèet

แปด ร้อย

pèet róoj

เท่านั้น

thâwnán

2. all, whole, entire; 3. every(thing) of something; 4. also, as well; 5. both, group

to inquire, to ask (for information), to question

receptionist, officer, clerk; person in charge

to welcome, to receive. (comp.: รับรอง - ráp roong - 1. to confirm; 2. to guarantee)

1. to say, to speak; 2. to criticize, to scold, to admonish; 3. that (conj.)

price

room

each; every; per

how much; how many

1. to have; to possess; to own 2. to be present; there is; there are; 3. to exist; 4. to happen; to occur; 6. to enjoy (rights, prestige)

bed, place to sleep

1. (together) with; 2. and the same

day

per day; each day

seven

hundred

Baht (Thai monetary unit)

softly, lightly, quietly

to take (something) into the direction of the subject or speaker

as much as ..., to the extend of ...

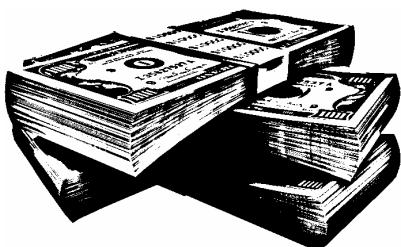
eight

eight hundred

merely, only



ผู้ชาย



เงิน สตด



บัตร เครดิต

ไม่ เป็น ไร	mâj pen raj	it doesn't matter (idiom)
ເອງ	eeng	1. self; 2. own; 2. alone
ຝູງ	fûung	1. group, mass, crowd; 2. flock
ເພື່ອນ ຝູງ ກັນ	phûean fûung kan	friends together in a group
ເອາ	aw	1. to take; 2. to bring; 3. to want
ຝູ້ ໜົງ	phûu jing	1. woman, girl; 2. female
ທີ່ນຶ່ງ	nûeng	one (numeral)
ຝູ້ ຂາຍ	phûu chaaj	1. man, boy; 2. male
ຕກ ລົງ	tòk long	O.K., all right (idiom)
ເຂີ້ມ	cheun	1. to invite; 2. to bid welcome; 3. "please"
ທະບັບ	thâbian	register
ລັງ ທະບັບ	long thâbian	to register
ກ່ອນ	kòon	first, before
ຄຸນ	khun	you (neutral polite form of address)
ຈະ	cà	will, shall, should, would
ຈ່າຍ	càaj	to pay
ຕອນ	toon	1. period, time, point in time; 2. group; installment; paragraph; 3. portion, group
ຕອນ ນີ້	toon níi	now
ອອກ ຈາກ	dok càak	1. to go out from... ; 2. to depart; to check out
ເງິນ ສດ	ngeun sòt	cash (money)
ຈ່າຍ ເປັນ ເງິນ ສດ	càaj pen ngeun sòt	to pay in cash
ບັດ	bât	card
ບັດ ເຄຣດິຕ	bât khredit	credit card
ສຳກັນ	sànùk	1. enjoyable, cheerful, nice; entertain-ing, amusing; 2. to have fun, to enjoy oneself
ເຖິ່ງວ່າ ໄກສຳກັນ	thîaw hâj sànùk	have a nice stay; have a nice trip
ແນ່ນອນ	nêenoon	1. sure; 2. certainly

**Translation of dialogue 6.2.****A relaxing weekend in Hua Hin.**

Joy and Sua, Joy's elder brother, are making a trip to Hua Hin together. They take Nikki, Maew and a friend of Sua's, whose name is Khing, with them. The five young men and women take the bus from the Southern Bus Station in Bangkok. When they arrive in Hua Hin, they get out at the market and walk to the beach. Khing knows a good and inexpensive hotel which is situated behind the coconut gardens at the edge of the beach.

Khing: There, you see? Hotel 'Jet Pee Nong'. The hotel looks very good indeed, you see?  
 Maew: Is it expensive?  
 Joy: It's surely not that expensive. But if you don't have enough money, I'll pay for you first.

The group of friends enter the hotel, and they inquire at the receptionist desk how much a room costs.

Joy: Do you have a room with three beds and a room with two beds?  
 recept.: Yes, we have. A room for three persons costs the same as a room for two persons.  
 Maew: How much is that?  
 recept.: Seven hundred Baht a day.  
 Maew: (speaks softly to Joy) That is really expensive. I have only taken eight hundred Baht with me.  
 Joy: That really doesn't matter, Maew. I'll pay that for you. We are friends, aren't we?  
 Sua: We'll take two rooms; one for the girls and one for the boys. Is that all right?  
 recept.: Would you please register first? Would you like to pay now or when you check out?  
 Sua: I'll pay for the rooms now. Do you accept credit cards here?  
 Receipt.: Yes, we do... Have a nice stay.  
 Sua: We certainly will.

cd 1a

**6.3 The 5 tones:**

track 21

**The mid tone, the rising tone and the falling tone**

In tone-exercise 6.3. you'll be able to compare the mid tone with the rising and the falling tone. Listen carefully to the tones and repeat the words. The meaning of the words doesn't matter here. Some have no meaning.

naa	nää	nâa	roo	rőo	rôo
paa	pää	pâa	bõo	bõö	bôo
daa	dää	dâa	chõo	chõö	chôo
kaa	kää	kâa	lõo	lõö	lôo
saa	sää	sâa	buea	büea	bûea
koo	kõo	kôo	kia	kia	kîa
boo	bõo	bôo	mia	mia	mîa

Now listen carefully to the following words on the CD, and notice the difference between the high, low and falling tones in short syllables. The use of a glottal stop (the closing of the glottis or vocal cord region after the pronunciation of a short vowel is optional):

ná?	nà?	nâ?	mí?	mì?	mî?
sí?	sì?	sî?	lá?	lă?	lâ?

## cd 1a    6.4      Idioms

track 22

### 1. Personal pronouns and other terms of address.

The Thai language knows dozens of personal pronouns. You already know a couple of them, but following here is a list with some additions. By choosing the correct personal pronoun (the word for ‘I’ as well as the words for ‘you’, ‘he’ or ‘she’) one indicates one’s own status towards one’s conversation partner. If you are not sure of the status of the person you are talking to, you should use the polite neutral combination ผู- phöm (‘I’ man speaking); ติฉัน- dîchän (‘I’ woman speaking) for the first person; คุณ - khun (‘you’) for the second person and เขา - khaw (‘he’/‘she’) for the third person. For these and other personal pronouns and their use, please look at the following diagram:

<i>1<sup>st</sup> person</i>	<i>2<sup>nd</sup> person</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup> person</i>	
คุณ - kuu	มีง - mueng	มัน - man	Intimate/rude <sup>1</sup>
Nickname (e.g. จ้อย - côj)	Nickname (e.g. นิกกี้ - níkkî)	Nickname (e.g. แมว - mæew)	Intimate/friendly; used with friends, intimate colleagues etc.
ชัน - chän <sup>2</sup>	ເຮືອ - theu	ເຮືອ - theu	Intimate/old fashioned
เขา(ເອງ) - khaw (eeng) ເគົ້າ(ເອງ) - khaw <sup>3</sup> (eeng)	ຕ້ວ ເອງ - tua eeng ເອີງ - eng	เขา - khaw (ເគົ້າ - khaw) <sup>3</sup>	Intimate/modern
ເຮົາ - raw <sup>4</sup>	ເຮືອ - theu	ເຂາ - khaw (ເគົ້າ - khaw) <sup>3</sup>	Intimate/friendly
ผู-phöm/ติฉัน- dîchän	คุณ - khun	เขา - khaw	Polite
ผู-phöm/ติฉัน- dîchän	ท่าน - thân	ท่าน - thân	Respectful
ເຮົາ- raw	ພວກ ເຮືອ- phûak theu <sup>5</sup>	ພວກ ເຂາ - phûak khaw ພວກ ເກົ້າ - phûak khaw <sup>3, 5</sup>	Intimate/friendly (plural)

**Notes on the diagram:**

- <sup>1</sup> These personal pronouns are extremely insulting if you use them to others than your most intimate friends.
- <sup>2</sup> the pronoun ฉัน - chǎn has been replaced by ผู้ - phǒm as the most common personal pronoun for men a few decennia ago. Women still using ฉัน - chǎn towards people they don't know nowadays are mostly of exceptionally high status. In an old fashioned way, ฉัน - chǎn can still be used as a non-status dependent personal pronoun between friends.
- <sup>3</sup> เขา - khǎw is normally written as เข้า, although in normal speech the tone of the word is high (kháw). In modern literature and in comics the word is often written as it is pronounced: เค้า. เค้า is also used as a first person personal pronoun, mostly by young women. It is paired with ตัวเอง - 'you'.
- <sup>4</sup> เรา - raw is mostly a plural pronoun, but it is used as first person singular, as well.
- <sup>5</sup> In informal speech, the plural particle พวກ - phûak is often omitted.

**2. Particles, interjections and stopgaps**

1. Particles for toning down an expression like เลย - leuj, หรอກ - ròok and หรือก - ròk are put at the end of a sentence. They change an order into a request, soften an expression that might otherwise come over too harshly, and ease the tone of a reproach. They may also indicate contradiction, or imply an incentive.

ได้ เลย

can 'leuj'

dâj leuj

'You *may*.'; 'It's *O.K.* if you do that.'

ไม่ได้ เลย

no/not can 'leuj'

mâj dâj leuj

'You *can't do that.*' (it's actually forbidden)

สูบ บหรี่ ที่ นี่ ไม่ได้ หรอก

To-smoke cigarette place this no/not to-can  
'ròok'

sùup bùrì thîi nîi mâj dâj ròok

You *can't smoke in here, actually.*

ผู้ เอง หรือก -

I (man speaking) myself 'ròk'

phǒm eeng ròk

It's *only me.*

ไม่ได้ ง่าย เมื่อ่อน ที่ เธอ คิด หรอก

no [in contrast to] easy same that you  
think 'ròok'

mâj dâj ngâaj müean thîi theu khít ròok

It's not as easy as you think, *don't you know?*

In some cases, หรอก - ròok rather strengthens the essence of an expression:

ไม่มี ใคร สวาย เท่า เธอ หรอก

No/not to-have someone beautiful as-much-as  
you 'ròok'

mâj mii khraj súaj thâw theu ròok -

There is *really* nobody who's as pretty as  
you.

2. Polite particles are either used to make an expression more polite, or to soften it. Polite articles are used towards elders and people who possess a higher position on the social standard than the speaker. Polite particles are also used as 'charms'. Many couples use polite

particles to each other after a lifetime of marriage (though it must be admitted that others absolutely don't), and a person may use more polite particles than usual if he wants to borrow some money from his father. A husband who wants to make up a quarrel with his wife will use polite particles in the process. Also, if you want something simple, but you're too lazy to get it yourself, a polite particle might help:

ที่ รัก ครับ ชง ชา ให้ หน่อย ครับ - thîi rák khráp . chong chaa hâj nòoj khráp  
darling [polite part. m.]. pour-hot-water tea to-give a-little [polite part. m.] -  
Darling, would you mind terribly to make me a cup of tea?

As you already know, a polite particle indicates the sex of a person. People of the 'third sex', of whom there are many in Thailand, use the polite particle which corresponds with the sex they wish they had; not the one which corresponds with their actual biological nature. Of course, people who have undergone a sex-operation use the polite particle which corresponds with their new biological nature by right.

3. Incentive particles and emphatic particles intensify an expression. Like most particles, they are difficult to translate directly into English. In this course, you will learn through practice and repetition how to add them automatically to certain idioms. Examples of often used incentive and emphatic particles are:

The particles ชิ - sí - สิ - sì and ชี - sii and ชี - sîi - are different variants of a particle that emphasizes or nearer defines orders or other expressions of urgency. Appear at the end of the sentence, just in front of the polite particle.

ไป ชิ ครับ - paj sí khráp - go ahead; please go.

The particles ชิ - sii and ชี - sîi can express compulsion or impatience:

ไป ชี - paj sîi - please go now!

นะ - ná - is a particle that adds friendly emphasis to an expression. It can also soften a prohibition or a reproof. It is used as an informal or intimate question particle. Appears at the end of a sentence, just in front of the polite particle:

อย่า นะ - jàa ná - you shouldn't do that.

ไป กัน นะ - paj kan ná - shall we go, then?

นะ - nâ - is a particle which expresses incentive and instigation. It can also indicate the confirmation of an agreement. In another sense, it can mark the subject of a conversation in informal speech. The particle is often pronounced as 'น่า' (nâa) or 'น້າ' (nâa), and also written that way in popular literature and comics. Appears at the end of a sentence, in front of the polite particle:

ไป กัน นะ - paj kan nâ - O.K. let's go (as agreed).

ภาษี นะ ไม่ ชอบ จ่าย - phaasîi nâ . phöm mâj chôop càaj -

Taxes... I don't like to pay them. (ภาษี - phaasîi - 'taxes' is marked as the subject of the conversation)

## 6.5 Grammar

### The use of the verbs ไป (paj - ‘to go’) and มา (maa - ‘to come’) as directional verbs

ไป (paj) - *to go* and มา (maa) - *to come*, have, except from their use as intransitive verbs, another function as directional verbs. As directional verbs, both words can mean ‘to’ and ‘from’. Other than in most western languages, the concepts of direction are relative in Thai. ‘ไป’ and ‘มา’ change their meaning dependent on the position of the speaker or the subject of the sentence. In any action that involves a movement away from the speaker, the direction is indicated with ‘ไป’ (paj); in any action that involves an action towards the speaker, the direction is indicated with ‘มา’ (maa):

เข้า เดิน มา หา ผอม

khăw deun maa hăa phom

he to-walk to-come/towards to-seek I

He walks towards me.

ผอม เดิน ไป หา เข้า

phom deun paj hăa khăw

I to-walk to-go/towards to-seek he

I walk towards him.

In these sentences, the words ไป (paj) – *to go* and มา (maa) – *to come* are directional verbs, which follow on the principal verb in the sentence. As you see, the use of ไป (paj) – *to go* and มา (maa) – *to come* are determined by the position of the speaker.

เข้า ส่ง จดหมาย ไป กรุงเทพ

khăw sòng còtmăaj paj krungthēep

He to-send letter to-go/towards Bangkok

He sends a letter to Bangkok.

แม่ ส่ง จดหมาย มา ให้ จ้อย

meew sòng còtmăaj maa hâj côj

Maew to-send letter to-come/towards to-give Joy

Maew sends a letter to Joy.

In the first sentence; ‘เข้า ส่ง จดหมาย ไป กรุงเทพ’, the action is seen from the viewpoint of the principle subject in the sentence, ‘เข้า’. ‘He’ sends a letter *to* Bangkok, so as a directional verb, the word ‘ไป’ must be used; as the action is ‘away from the principal subject’.

In the second sentence, we can only conclude that either Joy is speaking in the first person singular, the sentence has been written by Joy, or the writer of the sentence has had Joy in mind as the principal person in the sentence; as Joy is the person to which the directional verb is modified. She is the principal subject in the sentence. Although in grammatical terms, the subject of the sentence is ‘Maew’, the action is towards the person from whose point of view the world is seen in this sentence. As you can see, it is not the grammatical subject of the sentence which determines whether the directional verb to be used will be ‘ไป’ or ‘มา’.

The directional verbs ไป (paj) and มา (maa) are mostly used in combination with verbs as เดิน (deun - ‘to walk’); ส่ง (sòng - to send); กลับ (klăp - ‘to return’); ข้าย (jáaj - to move); โทรศัพท์ (thoqrásap - to telephone) เอา (aw - to take); พา (phaa - to take, to lead) and เปลี่ยน (plian - to change).

Also when ไป (paj) – *to go* and มา (maa) – *to come* are used independently as a principal verbs, their use is dependent on the position (whereabouts) of the principal subject of the sentence:

เข้าไปเที่ยวหัวหิน  
khăw paj thiaw húa hin  
*he to-go travel-for-pleasure Hua Hin*  
He's going on a holiday to Hua Hin.  
(he's not yet there, but he'll go)

เข้ามา กิน ที่ ร้าน ปูม  
khăw maa kin thî ráan phǒm  
*he to-come to-eat in shop I*  
He's eating in my restaurant.  
(he's sitting in my restaurant; he's come to me)

## 6.6 Exercises

### 1.

Translate the following sentences into Thai. Use the transcription script used in the course.

1. I'll take two rooms. How much are they per room?
2. I would like to pay when I check out. Is that possible?
3. The beach here is very beautiful.
4. I don't have enough money with me. Can you advance it for me?
5. I'm going on a holiday to Bangkok.
6. The receptionist says: '700 Baht'.
7. I'll pay with a credit card.
8. Hotels in Thailand are not expensive.
9. He's getting on the bus to Hua Hin.
10. She gets off at the market.

### 2.

1. Write a short story in Thai (about 50 words). It doesn't matter what you write about. Use the transcription script.
2. Listen to tone exercise 3 on the CD without looking in your book, and note down the tones you hear.

## 6.7 Answers to exercise 1

*(In this stadium, you don't have to be able yet to read the Thai script. The answers are also given in Thai script for later reference.)*

๑. ติจัน / ปูม จะ เอา สอง ห้อง ห้อง ละ เท่าไร
  1. dìchǎn/phǒm cà aw sōong hōng . hōng lá thâwraj .
๒. ติจัน / ปูม อายาก จ่าย เงิน เมื่อ ออก จาก โรงแรม ได้ ใหม
  2. dìchǎn/phǒm jiàak càaj ngeun mûea òok càak røøngreeem . dâj măj .
๓. ชาย หาด ที่ นี่ สวาย มาก
  3. chaaj hàat thî nîi súaj mâak .
๔. ติจัน เอา เงิน มา ไม่ พ่อ เออ ออก ให้ ก่อน ได้ ใหม
  4. chǎn aw ngeun maa mâj phoo . theu òok hâj kòon dâj măj .

๔. ติฉัน / ผม จะ ไป เที่ยว กรุงเทพฯ  
5. dìchǎn/phǒm cà paj thâaw krungthêep .
๖. พนักงาน พูด: “เจ็ต ร้อຍ บາທ”  
6. phánák-ngaan phûut: ‘cèt róoj bâat’
๗. ติฉัน / ผม จ่าย เงิน ด้วย บัตร เครดิต ( except ‘also’ and ‘too’, ด้วย- dûaj can mean ‘with’, ‘by means of’ as well)  
7. dìchǎn/phǒm càaj ngeun dûaj bât khreedít .
๘. rong ram ที่ เมือง ไทย ไม่ แพง  
8. røongræem thûi mueang thaj mâj pheëng .
๙. เข้า ขึ้น รถ โดยสาร ไป หัว หิน  
9. khăw khûen rót døojsăan paj húa hín .
๑๐. เข้า ลง ที่ ตลาด  
10. khăw long thûi tâlât .



# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 7

**Joy! Wake up!**

จ้อย ! ตื่น ได้ แล้ว !

- 7.1 Introduction
- 7.2 Dialogue
- 7.3 Idioms
- 7.4 Writing I: The consonants ก - ດ
- 7.5 Exercises
- 7.6 Answers to exercise 1





## 7.1 Introduction

In this lesson we'll have a look into the home of a modern Thai family in Bangkok. The Chakraphet family consists of father Udom, mother Thanida, son Surasak ('Sua') and daughter Jintana ('Joy'). The family lives in a roomy and luxurious house at Soi Sainte Louise 3 in the district of Thung Mahamek, on the edge of the old centre of the city. The home is built on land that has been the property of the Chakraphet family for almost two hundred years. The residence consists of an old edifice, crafted from teak and meticulously preserved. Next to it stands a large, modern, and very comfortable private house. The old building is used for parties, ceremonies and receptions; the new quarters were built when Udom and Sunisa's first child was on the way. It is a cool building with high rooms, a broad gallery with impressive staircases, and a lot of imported marble. Son Sua and daughter Joy both have their own 'apartment' with shower, toilet and kitchenette, where they can study, rest and receive their friends. In the main kitchen of the house there's always something cooking, and within the fenced compound, between the many garages, residences, and smaller buildings which have fallen into disuse, red jasmine bushes, mahogany and teak trees offer nesting places for birds not found elsewhere in the metropolis. There is a pond with carp, turtles and lotus flowers, and a marble fountain. The chauffeur/guard and the cooks/maids – a small family consisting of father, mother and daughter – have their own comfortable quarters in a separate building. Naaj Udom, Naang Sunisa and their son Sua drive their own cars, all kept in mint condition by their chauffeur.

Joy hasn't taken the effort yet to obtain her driving license, but there is a fourth car, which is always at her disposal to take her to and from the university. Joy, though, is someone who seems to prefer a more perilous form of transport; the motor-taxi...

## cd 1b 7.2 Dialogue

track 01 “Joy! Wake up !”

## ๗.๒. บท สันทนา

“จ้อย ! ตื่น ได้ แล้ว !”

[“จ้อย ! ตื่น ได้ แล้ว !”]

จ้อย ยัง นอน อุญ แต่ จ้อย ต้อง ไป มหาวิทยาลัย แล้ว คุณ แม่ จึง มา ปลุก จ้อย

คุณ แม่: จ้อย จะ จ้อย เอี่ย ตื่น ได้ แล้ว นะ แปด โมง แล้ว นะ ลูก

จ้อย: โอ้ ถ้า อาย่าง นั้น จ้อย ต้อง รีบ ตื่น แล้ว ซึ แม่ จ้อย มี สอบ ตอน ลิบ โมง  
เข้า ค่ะ

คุณ แม่: อ้าว ลูก ทำไม เมื่อ ศืน นี้ ไม่ นอน แต่ หัว ค่ำ อาบ น้ำ เร็ว

จ้อย: แ昏 จ้อย ไป ทัน แน่

จ้อย ลุก ขึ้น และ รีบ เข้า ไป ใน ห้อง น้ำ จ้อย อาบ น้ำ เช็ด ตัว ทา ครีม และ หวี ผม  
เร็วๆ จ้อย แต่ง ตัว เธอ ใส่ ชุด นัก ศึกษา จุฬาฯ กระโปรง สี ดำ กับ เสื้อ สี ขาว  
จ้อย ใส่ หนังสือ ปากกา และ สมุด ไว้ ใน กระเบ้า แล้ว ลง ไป ข้าง ล่าง คุณ แม่ ของ

จ้อย และ พี่ ชาย ของ จ้อย พี่ เสือ กำลัง กิน อาหาร อญู่ คุณ พ่อ ของ จ้อย ไม่ อญู่  
ท่าน ออก ไป ทำงาน แล้ว



- จ้อย: สวัสดี ค่ะ คุณ แม่ สวัสดี พี่ เสือ คุณ พ่อ ไป ทำงาน แล้ว หรือ
- พี่ เสือ: โอ้ย ตาย แล้ว น้อง จ้อย ตีน เช้า ได้ ด้วย หรือ เก่ง จัง เลย
- จ้อย: แ昏 พี่ เสือ ตีน สาย เป็น หรือ เปล่า
- คุณ แม่: จ้อย มา กิน ข้าว ก่อน ลิ ลูก
- จ้อย: ไม่ มี เวลา แล้ว ค่ะ จ้อย ต้อง รีบ ไป แล้ว
- คุณ แม่: จ้อย จะ ชี้ มอง เตอร์ ไซค์ ไป หรือ อย่า เลย มัน อันตราย นะ
- จ้อย: ไม่ เป็น ไร ไม่ เห็น อันตราย เลย

#### Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 7.2.

côj tùen dâj léew .

*Joy to-wake-up to-can already.*

côj jang noon jiuu . tèe côj tòong paj máháwítthájaalaj léew . khun mêe >

*Joy still to-sleep to-stay. But Joy to-must to-go university already. Mr./mrs. mother >*

cueng maa plùk côj .

*therefore to-come to-awaken Joy.*

khun mêe: côj cá. côj euj. tùen dâj léew ná . >

*Mother: Joy [affectionate particle]. Joy [affectionate particle] . To-wake-up to-can already [modifying sentence particle]. >*

pèet møong léew ná lúuk .

*Eight o'clock already [modifying sentence particle] child. >*

- côj: ໂດ . thâa jàang nán côj tōng rīp tùen léew sí mēe . >  
*Joy: Oh. If sort that (like that) Joy (I) to-must to-hurry to-wake-up already [emphatic particle] mother. >*
- côj mii sòop toon sìp móong cháaw khâ .  
*Joy (I) to-have exam period-of-time ten o'clock morning [polite particle f.]*
- khun mēe: âaw . lûuk thammaj mûea khuen níi māj noon tèe húa khâm . >  
*Mother: [Expression of surprise]. Child why while night this no/not to-sleep since head evening (early in the evening). >*
- àap náam rew .  
*to-bathe water fast.*
- côj: mēe . côj paj than nêe .  
*Joy: [expression of mild annoyance]. Joy (I) to-go on-time certainly.*
- côj lúk khüen lé? rīp khâw paj naj hông náam . côj àap náam . chét tua thaă khriim . wîi >  
*Joy to-get-up and to-enter to-go inside room water. Joy to-bathe water. To-wipe body to-smear cream. To-comb >*
- phöm rew rew . côj tèeng tua . theu saj chút náksùeksää cùlaa .  
*hair fast fast. Joy to-dress body. She to-put-on suit/uniform student Chula(longkorn University).*
- kràprøong sǐl dam kàp sùea sǐl khăaw . côj saj năngsue . pàakkaa . lé? sàmùt wáj naj kràpaw .  
*Skirt colour black with/and shirt/blouse colour white. Joy to-put-in book. pen. and notebook to-keep inside bag.*
- léew long paj khâang lâang . khun mēe khöong côj . lé? phîi chaaj khöong côj . phîi sùea . >  
*Afterwards to-descend to-go side below.Mrs./mr. Mother of Joy. And older-brother/sister man of Joy. Older brother Sua >*
- kamlang kin aahăan jùu léew . khun phôo khöong côj māj jùu . >  
*[auxiliary verb indicating action going on] To-eat food to-stay/to-be-busy already. Mrs./Mr. Father of Joy no/not to-stay/to-be-present. >*
- thân òok paj tham-ngaan léew .  
*He to-go-out to-go to-work already.*
- côj: sàwàtdii khâ khun mēe . sàwàtdii phîi sùea . >  
*Joy: Good morning [polite particle f.] Mr./Mrs. mother. Hello older-brother/sister Sua. >*
- khun phôo paj tham-ngaan léew rüe .  
*Mr./Mrs. father to-go to-work already [question particle yes/no question].*
- phîi sùea: óoj . taaj léew . nóong côj tùen cháaw >  
*O.B. Sua: Wow. To-die already (expression of surprise; slang). Younger-brother/sister to-wake-up morning/early >*
- dâj dûaj rüe . keng cang leuj .  
*To-can also [question particle yes/no question]. Capable really [modifying sentence particle].*

côj: měe . phū súea tüen săaj pen rue plàaw .  
 Joy: [expression of mild annoyance]. Older-brother/sister Sua to-wake-up late to-be-able-to [question particle yes/no question] not (nothing).

khun mēe: côj . maa kin khâaw kòn sì lûuk .

Mother: Joy. To-come to-eat rice first.[incentive particle]child.

côj: mâj mii weelaa lëew khâ . côj tōong rîip paj lëew .

Joy: No/not to-have/to-be available time already [polite particle f.]. Joy (I) to-must to-hurry to-go already.

khun mēe: côj cà khùi mooteusaj paj rue . jàa leuj .

Mother: Joy to-shall to-ride motorcycle to-go [question particle yes/no question]. Don't [modifying sentence particle]

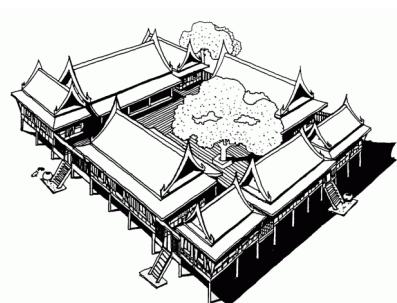
man antàraaj ná .

*It dangerous [emphatic particle].*

côj: mâj pen raj . mâj hén antàraaj leuj .

Joy: *It doesn't matter (idiom). No/not see dangerous [modifying sentence particle]*

## cd 1b Vocabulary track 02



บ้าน

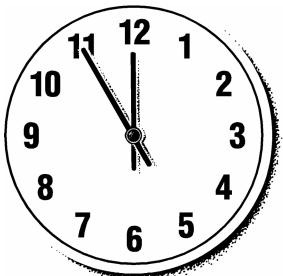
บท	bòt	1. chapter; lesson; 2. actor's lines; 3. character (in a play, movie); 4. footprint
เรียน	rian	1. to learn; 2. to report to a superior
บท เรียน	bòt rian	lesson
ที่	thîi	1. place, dwelling place; 2. space, site; 3. office, department; 4. spot, site, place; 5. space, place, room; 6. that, which (in clauses); 7. to, that (jindii thîi dâj rúucàk - ยืนตี ที่ได้ รู้จัก) - nice to meet (get to know) you
ที่ หนึ่ง	thîi nùeng	first
หนึ่ง	nùeng	one
บ้าน	bâan	house
ครอบครัว	khrôopkhrua	family
จักรเพชร	càkráphét, càkphét	Thai family name ( <i>lit.</i> : wheel of diamonds)
การ	kaan	1. activity, task, work; 2. substavat- ing particle for dynamic verbs
การ สนทนा	kaan sõnþánaa	conversation



สนทนा	sõnthonaa	to converse
จ๊อຍ	côj	1. small, unimportant, negligible; 2. volubly, glibly, effusively (of speech); 3. nickname for girls
นอน	noon	to sleep
อยู่	jùu	1. to live, to reside; 2. to be present; 3. to be busy doing something (continuous tense particle)
แต่	tèe	but
เขา	khăw	he, she (3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular)
ต้อง	tōng	to must
ไป	paj	to go
มหาวิทยาลัย	máhăawítthájaalaj	university
แล้ว	léew	already
จึง	cueng	therefore, consequently; so
มา	maa	to come
ปลุก	plùk	1. to awake (s.o.), to wake s.o. up; 2. to arouse
ตื่น	tùen	1. to wake up; to get up; 2. to be awake
ได้	dâj	to can, to may
แม่	mêe	mother
อะ, อี๊ะ	há; hâ	informal polite particle; variant of ครับ/ค่ะ/ค่ะ
นะ	ná?	mild incentive particle (modifying sentence particle)
แปด	pèet	eight
โมง	møong	o' clock (in 'it is 7 o' clock')
เช้า	cháaw *	morning
โอ!	ঃঃ	expression of mild shock, surprise, annoyance: 'oh!'
ถ้า	thâa	if; in case
อย่าง	jàang	1. as, like; 2. sort
อย่าง นั้น	jàang nán	1. like that, as such; 2. a sort like that; 3. like it is
นั้น	nán	that; relative pronoun, and shortened demonstrative pronoun



แม่



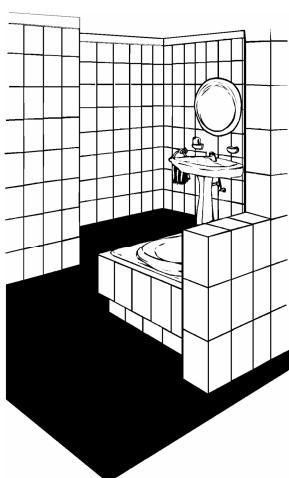
ເວລາ



ຂໍ້ມູນ



ໜໍາ



ห้องน้ำ



หนังสือ



กระเป้า

และ	lé?	and (such as in a sequence of time, or a logical order of cause and effect)
เข้า	khâw	1.to enter, to go in, to get in; 2. to join;
ใน	naj	in, inside
ห้อง	hông	room
น้ำ	náam	water
ห้องน้ำ	hông náam	bathing room; toilet
อยู่	jìu	1. to stay, to remain; 2. to be (at, in, on); 3. to live, to dwell, to reside; 4. to exist; 5. to be living; 6. particle to indicate a continuous action; 7. to be busy doing ...
ใหญ่	jàj	large
ติด	tít	to be connected to; to stick; to glue
ด้วย	dûaj	1. also; 2. with
เช็ด	chét	to wipe, to wipe of, to wipe dry
เช็ดตัว	chét tua	to wipe oneself of, to towel
ทา	thaâ	1. to rub to smear on, to anoint; 2. to paint (ทา สี - thaâ sîi)
ครีม	khriim	cream (cosmetic)
หวี	wíi	1. to comb; 2. comb
ผม	phóm	1. hair (on the head); 2. I (man speaking)
ใส่	sàj	1. to load, to pack, to hold; 2. to wear, put on, have on (clothes); 3. to put in; 4. to fill; 5. to add; 6. to fix, to set, drive in (a nail); 7. to apply (make-up etc.)
ชุด	chút	suit, uniform, set of clothes
ชุดนักศึกษา	chút náksùeksää	student's uniform
จุฬาฯ	cùlaa	abbreviation for Chulalongkorn University (spoken language)
กระโปรง	kràprøong	skirt
สีดำ	sîi dam	black
เสื้อ	süea	shirt, blouse
สีขาว	sîi khăaw	white



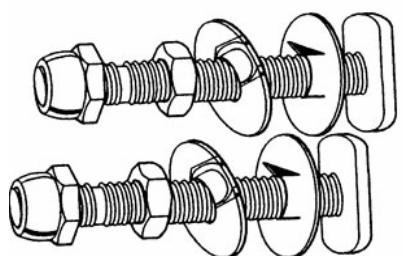
สมุด

หนังสือ	năngsue	book
ปากกา	pàakkaa	pen
สมุด	sàmùt	notebook
ไว้	wáj	1. to keep, to preserve; 2. to uphold; 3. to place, to put; to set, to lay; 4. to Grow (beard, hair); to keep (hair- style); 5. to keep, to maintain; 6. auxiliary verb used after verbs of action (i.e. เก็บ (kèp - ‘to keep’),



อาหาร

ใส่ไว้	sàj wáj	put something into something with the intention to safely put it away
กระเป๋า	kràpaw	bag
ลง	long	to descent, to go down (stairs)
ชั้น	chán	1. floor; 2. class; 3. level; layer
ล่าง	lâang	lower; down, downstairs
ชั้นล่าง	chán lâang	first floor
คุณ	khun	1. You; 2. Mr., Sir; 3. Mrs., Madam
คุณแม่	khun m��e	mother (respectful)
ของ	kh��oong	1. of; belonging to; 2. thing
พี่	ph��u	older sibling
ชาย	chaaj	man, boy
พี่ชาย	ph��u chaaj	older brother
ทาน	thaan	to eat (polite, written language)
อาหาร	aah��aan	food
พ่อ	ph��o	father
คุณพ่อ	khun ph��o	father (respectful)
ท่าน	th��an*	1. You (very polite); he, she (very polite)
ออก	��ok	1. out; 2. to go out; 3. to issue, to offer; 4. to put forth; 5. come of the press, publish; 6. to set off; 7. to start of, to get going
ไป	paj	to go

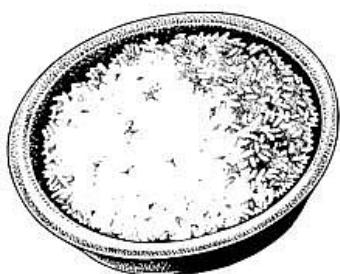


ของ

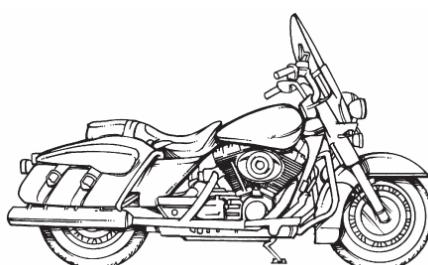
ไป



คุณ พ่อ



ข้าว



มอเตอร์ไซค์

ทำ	tham	to do
งาน	ngaan	1. work; 2. party
ทำงาน	tham-ngaan	to work
แล้ว	léew	already
สวัสดี	sàwàtdii	good morning, good day, good afternoon, good night, hello, good bye
สวัสดี ค่ะ	sàwàtdii khâ	good morning; good day etc. (woman speaking)
หรือ	rüe	1. or; 2. question particle for a yes/no question
โอ้ย	óoj	expression of surprise, excitement
ตาย	taaj	to die
ตาย แล้ว	taaj léew	1. Uh oh!; O, jeez!; 2. dammit!
เก่ง	kèng	1. smart, capable, competent; 2. versatile; 3. be good at, be adept at
มาก	mâak	1. much, many; 2. very (adverb; as in ดีมาก dii mâak 'very good')
จริง	cing*	really, actually, indeed, truly, in fact
จัง	cang	really, truly, indeed
เลย	leuj	1. really, indeed; 4. utterly, completely, entirely; 5. excessive, over; 2. to surpass, to exceed; 2. after; 3. to outstrip, to overtake
จัง เลย	cang leuj	really indeed
เคย	kheuj	1. ever; 2. once; 3. to be accustomed to
สาย	sääj	late, too late
ข้าว	khâaw	rice
กิน ข้าว	kin khâaw	to eat rice; to eat
ก่อน	kòon	first
สิ	sì?, sì	incentive particle
มี	mii	1. to have; 2. there is, there are; 3. to consist of; 4. to happen
ต้อง	tōng	must, shall, necessary, should, ought to



ขี่	khìi	ride (horse, motorcycle, bicycle)
มอเตอร์ไซค์	mooteusaj	motorcycle; motor-taxi
อีก	ík	1. once more; again; 2 another; 3. more, still more; 4. besides, in addition
อย่า	jàa	don't! (warning or mild reproof)
อันตราย	antàraaj	dangerous
ไม่ เป็น ไร	mâj pen raj	it doesn't matter, it's no problem, it's all right; glad to be of service, with pleasure, you're welcome
สาย	ເຫັນ	1.to see; 2. to think, to be of the opinion
ไม่ เทืน	mâj hěn	(I) don't think, (I) am not of (that) opinion

### Translation of dialogue 7.2.

#### Joy, wake up!

Joy is still asleep. But she has to go to the university already. So her mother has come to wake her up.

- Mother: Hey, Joy! Joy, sweetie, you have to wake up, you hear. It's eight o' clock already.  
 Joy: Oh! Then I really have to get up fast. I've got an exam at ten o' clock.  
 Mother: Oh dear, child! Why didn't you go to sleep early yesterday? Take a shower, quick.  
 Joy: Oh please! I'll be on time for sure.

Joy gets up and hurriedly enters the bathroom. Joy takes a shower; she towels herself dry, applies cosmetic cream and combs her hair quickly. Joy dresses herself. She puts on her Chulalongkorn University student's uniform; a black skirt and a white blouse. Joy puts her books, pens and notebooks in her bag and goes downstairs. Joy's mother and Joy's older brother Sua are having breakfast already. Joy's father isn't there. He has gone to work already.

- Joy: Good morning, mother. Hello brother. Has father gone to work already?  
 Sua: Wow! What have we here!? Could you get out of bed this early? Very well done!  
 Joy: Please come on, Sua! Don't you ever oversleep?  
 Mother: Joy, come an have something to eat first, darling.  
 Joy: I'm out of time. I've got to hurry already.  
 Mother: Are you going to take a motor taxi? Don't do that. It's dangerous, you hear!  
 Joy: That doesn't matter. I don't think it's dangerous at all.

## 7.3 Idioms

### 1. The polite final particle

Polite final particles are an inextricable part of Thai language and Thai manners. Polite particles can be used to make a statement polite, or instead of the word ‘yes’. They appear at the end of many sentences pronounced by the average Thai. Only the speech of the most exalted persons, such as the King, or the members of the Sangha (the Buddhist clergy) is devoid of polite final particles.

You have already encountered the two most common polite final particles; the male polite particle “ครับ”, and the female polite particles “คะ” (for affirmative sentences) and “คะ” (for interrogative sentences). In the course of your study, you will discover some variants on these standard polite particles. In simple dictionaries, these variants are not mentioned. You’ll hear them spoken between your Thai friends, in movies, and you’ll find them written in modern Thai literature.

คร้าบ (khráap) -	Very polite; Male. Used by subordinates towards very high superiors. Is known to be used tongue-in-cheek between close friends and lovers.
ขา (khää) -	Polite; Female. Used after someone’s name to attract the attention of a person in question. Also used as an answer to a call; “Yes?” Used towards a lover, it indicated affection.
จี๊ (cá?, cá) -	Informal; Male and Female. Used by superiors to inferiors, and by parents to children. Used by lovers, it indicates affection.
จ๊า (cää) -	Informal. Used after names of children, inferiors, friend and lovers. Used as an answer to a call by men and women (compare ขา (khää)).
หะ; หঁ (há?; hâ) -	Short variant of both ครับ (khráp), คะ (khá), and ขา (khâ). Used in informal speech towards inferiors and among equals. The first variant, (há, há?) is usually used by men (a glottal stop is often audible). The second variant (hâ- without stop) is mostly used by women.
ขอร้าบ (khöoráp) -	Elegant version of ‘ครับ’, used by men towards superiors.
คร้าบพม (khrápphöm) -	Politer version of ‘ครับ’. Used by men to superiors. Nowadays used more often than a few years ago.

There are other variants on the polite particle, which you will be introduced to in due time. Some of them are regional, like the Northern เจ้าขา (cåwkhää) and เจ้าคะ (cåwkhâ), used in respectively interrogative and affirmative sentences by women.

### 2. Names, relation terms and functions used as personal pronouns

You already know that in Thai, nicknames are used as personal pronouns for the first, second and third person. If Joy talks about Nikki, she uses Nikki’s nickname. But also when Joy speaks to Nikki, she can use that nickname. To indicate herself, she uses her own nickname, Joy:

### นิกกี้ อย่าก ไป ดู หนัง กับ จ้อย ไหม

níkkúi jàak paj duu năng káp cój măj

Nikki (you) to-want to-go to-watch movie with Joy (I) [question particle]  
Do you want to go watch a movie with me?

Between good friends, family members and lovers, the nickname is often used as a personal pronoun for the 1<sup>st</sup> and the 2<sup>nd</sup> person singular.

Kinship terms as พี่ (phii) - older brother or sister, น้อง (nóong) - younger brother or sister, พ่อ (phoo) - father, แม่ (mêe) - mother, ป้า (pâa) - older sister of father or mother, ลุง (lung) - older brother of father or mother, อา (aa) - younger brother or sister of father, น้า (náa) - younger brother or sister of mother, พู่ (pùu) - father's father, ย่า (jâa) - father's mother, ตา (taa) - mother's father and ยาย (jaaj) - mother's mother can also be used as personal pronouns (1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person) either or not preceded by the honorific คุณ (khun - Mr./Mrs.).

Formerly there were also other terms used for the honorific คุณ (khun). These included: นาง (naang) - Mrs., นาย (naaj) - Mr., and นางสาว (naangsâaw) - Miss, which is shortened น.ส..

Nowadays, these are only used in written form in official documents. นาย (naaj) is also a term for 'you', used among young men, although the use of this word is wearing away a bit.

Persons who hold a profession with a certain status, like a teacher or a university professor, are often addressed to by the name of their profession, with or without the additional honorific คุณ (khun) or 先生 (thân):

(คุณ) ครู	(khun) khruu	teacher; schoolmaster
(ท่าน) อาจารย์	(thân) aacaan	professor, lecturer, master

Military personnel is addressed by rank in formal situations, with or without the additional คุณ (khun) or 先生 (thân):

(ท่าน) ผู้กอง	(thân) phûukoong	Commander
ผู้หมวด	phûu mùat	Captain
จ่า	càa	Sergeant

### 3. ไม่ เป็น ไร (mâj pen raj) and บ่ เป็น แข็ง (bò pen jang).

In Thailand you will often hear the phrase: 'ไม่ เป็น ไร' (mâj pen raj)...

'ไม่ เป็น ไร' (mâj pen raj) is, as many foreigners love to say, the Thai philosophy of life. The phrase means 'it doesn't matter', 'everything is fine', 'don't mention it', 'pleased to be of service'. The phrase has survived the junta government of the nineties, which used it a lot along with the expression ไม่มี ปัญหา - mâj mii panhâa - there are no problems), while at that time there were a lot of problems. 'ไม่ เป็น ไร' (mâj pen raj) is used in situations in which one, by making another remark or by getting angry, could loose face. Do you bump into someone by accident and you excuse yourself, you will be answered with: 'ไม่ เป็น ไร' (mâj pen raj). Has someone forgotten something, and does he offer his apologies? 'ไม่ เป็น ไร' (mâj pen raj). In the

dialogue, Joy's mother advises Joy against taking a motorcycle taxi to the university. But for Joy, this is 'ມ່າງ ເປັນ ຮາ' (mâj pen raj). She has no problems with motorcycle taxis. She'll take one anyway.

The same expression in Isan (Northeastern Thai) is ບ່ອ ເປັນ ຂັງ (bò pen jang), and is sometimes used by Bangkokians and other non-Isan people, too, because it sounds so friendly.

## 7.4 Writing I: The consonants ນ - ອ

According to legend, the Thai alphabet has been designed in the 13<sup>th</sup> century by King Ramkhamhaeng the Great. He developed the letters from the italic Khmer script, which, in turn, was derived from the Indian Pali script. The alphabet has 44 consonants and 32 vowels and diphthongs. With the help of the 'Writing'-paragraphs you will gradually learn how to write and read. The faster you'll be alphabetized in Thai, the faster the language will become completely accessible to you, and the faster you will learn to speak Thai well.

You should initially concentrate on the shape and the pronunciation of the consonant. Forget for the moment that all dialogues have been written in Thai script from the beginning of the course. This has been done to offer you a reference to everything you have learned until you master the script completely.

The Thai script is a little more intricate than for instance the Latin and Cyrillic scripts, but it is quite possible to master it completely in a couple of weeks. After lesson 12, you'll be able to read the dialogues in the first lessons from the Thai script effortlessly.

Every consonant in the Thai script has a name. The letter 'ນ', for instance, is called 'ກູ້ກ່າຍ' (koo kàj), after 'ກູ້' ('kàj'); 'chicken'; the letter 'ຂ' is called 'ຂູ້ຂ່າຍ' (khoo khàj), after 'ຂູ້' (khàj); 'egg)', and so on<sup>9</sup>. Because of the fact that many consonants, when pronounced out of context, sound identical or almost identical to each other, names of streets and persons, difficult words, etc., are spelled by mentioning their respective letters and the word after which the letter is named.

Thai consonants are divided in three classes: Low Class, Middle Class, and High Class. The class of the first consonant of a syllable is one of the factors which determines the tone in which that syllable is pronounced.

Many consonants are pronounced differently from their original pronunciation when they are pronounced in a final position. Plosives (p, ph, t, th, k, kh, c, ch) become unreleased stops (p', t', k'), as do all alveolar fricatives (all 's'-es; - ພ, ຜ, ສ, ຕ - are pronounced t' in final position). Palatal and lateral approximants, as well as trills (j (ງ), l, r) become nasals (n). Other consonants simply don't occur or are never pronounced at the end of a syllable (ມ, ນ, ດ).

Over the next few chapters, you'll gradually get more acquainted with the Thai writing system. Again: It is very important to learn it. You'll never be able to speak Thai fluently if you are unable to read the language. And by learning the script, you'll be able to deduct the correct

---

<sup>9</sup> Note for total clarity: If you write 'ນ', you haven't written the word 'chicken', but just the letter which is named after the word 'chicken'. 'Chicken' (kàj) is written: 'ກູ້'.

pronunciation of 99,9 % of all new Thai words you encounter in any text (yes, there are a few exceptions).

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ก	ก กោ (koo-kàj)	k (unaspirated)	k' (unreleased)
ຂ	ຂ ຂោខ (khoo-khàj)	kh (aspirated)	k' (unreleased)
ຂ	ຂ ຂວາດ (khoo-khùat)	No longer in use	No longer in use
គ	គ ຂວາຍ (khoo-khwaaj)	kh (aspirated)	k' (unreleased)
គ	គ ຄន (khoo-khon)	No longer in use	No longer in use
ຂ	ຂ ຮະໜັງ (khoo-rákhăng)	kh (aspirated)	k' (unreleased)
ງ	ງ ນູ້ (ngoo-nguu)	ng	ng
ຈ	ຈ ຈານ (coo-caan)	c (unaspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ຈ	ຈ ດື່ງ (chöo-chìng)	ch (aspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ຈ	ຈ ທ້າງ (choo-cháang)	ch (aspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ສ	ສ ໂໝ່ (soo-sôø)	s	Only with <i>kaaran</i> (້) in loan words
ຜ	ຜ ເຜູ້ (choo-cheu)	ch (aspirated)	Does not occur

### The meaning of the names of the consonants:

ក

‘chicken’

ຂ

‘egg’

<b>ขวด</b> (now written as: ‘ขวด’)	‘bottle’
<b>ควาย</b>	‘water buffalo’
<b>คน</b> (now written as ‘คน’)	‘man’; ‘person’
<b>ระฆัง</b>	‘temple bell’
<b>งู</b>	‘snake’
<b>จาน</b>	‘plate’
<b>ฉิ่ง</b>	‘cymbals’
<b>ช้าง</b>	‘elephant’
<b>โซ่</b>	‘chain’
<b>เถา</b>	‘tree’

## 7.5 Exercises

### Exercise 1

After reading dialogue 7.2, answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script:

1. Does Joy wake up on time?
2. Who wakes her up?
3. What must Joy do quickly?
4. At what time does Joy have an exam?
5. What does Joy take with her in her bag?
6. Is Sua awake already?
7. Does Joy have time for breakfast?
8. Why doesn't Joy's mother want her daughter to take a motorcycle taxi to the university?
9. What does Joy think about that?
10. Does Joy have a father?

### Exercise 2

After reading dialogue 7.2 carefully again, answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script:

1. Why does Joy have to hurry?
2. To which school does she go?
3. Is Joy's brother older or younger than Joy? How do you know?
4. What does Joy do in the bathroom?
5. Why does Joy have to dress in a university uniform? Explain your answer.
6. How does Sua tease his sister?

7. What does the Chakraphet family eat for breakfast in the morning?
8. Where is Joy's father?
9. Do you think that Joy's mother is protective of Joy? How do you know?
10. Has Joy taken a motorcycle taxi to the university before? How do you know?

### Exercise 3

Write down the letters you have learned in this lesson a couple of times. Pronounce the sound of the letter and its name every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its form. Don't forget to pronounce the difference between the aspirated and the non-aspirated sounds. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times:

ก ຂ ໝ ຄ ຕ ແ

ງ ຈ ນ ຂ ທ ມ

## 7.6 Answers to exercise 1

(At this stage, you don't have to be able yet to read the Thai script. The answers are also given in Thai script for later reference.)

1. No, Joy doesn't wake up on time. She wakes up late.  
๑. ไม่ใช่ จ้อຍ ตีน ไม่ ทัน เวลา เธอ ตีน สาย  
1. māj châj . cōj māj tūen than weelaa . theu tūen sāaj .
2. Joy's mother wakes Joy.  
๒. แม่ ของ จ้อຍ ปลุก จ้อຍ  
2. mēe khōong cōj plùk cōj .

3. Joy has to get up quickly and take a bath.  
๓. จ้อຍ ต้อง ตีน เร็ว แล้ว อาบ น้ำ  
3. cōj tōng tùen rew lēew àap náam .
4. Joy has a test (an exam or test paper) at ten o' clock in the morning.  
๔. จ้อຍ มี สอບ ตอน สิบ โมງ เช้า  
4. cōj mii thés (thét) toon sìp mōong cháaw .
5. Joy puts her books, notebooks and pens into her bag.  
๕. จ้อຍ เก็บ หนังสือ สมุด และ ปากกา ไว้ ใน กระเป๋า<sup>1</sup>  
5. cōj kēp nāngsüe sàmùt lē? pàakkaa wáj naj kràpăw .
6. Yes, Sua is awake already.  
๖. ใช่ เลือ ตีน แล้ว  
6. châj . súea tùen lēw .
7. No, Joy has no time to eat breakfast.  
๗. ไม่ ใช่ จ้อຍ ไม่ มี เวลา กิน อาหาร เช้า  
7. māj châj . cōj māj mii weelaa kin aahaan cháaw .
8. Joy's mother thinks it is dangerous.  
๘. แม่ ของ จ้อຍ เห็น ว่า มัน อันตราย  
8. mēe khōong cōj hěn wāa man antàraaj .
9. Joy doesn't think it's dangerous at all.  
๙. จ้อຍ เห็น ว่า มัน ไม่ อันตราย เลย  
9. cōj hěn wāa man māj antàraaj leuj .
10. Yes, Joy's dad has already gone to work.  
๑๐. ใช่ คุณ พ่อ ของ จ้อຍ ไป ทำงาน แล้ว  
10. châj . khun phôo khōong cōj paj thamngaan lēew .



# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 8

### Welcome

#### ยินดี ต้อน รับ

- 8.1 Introduction
- 8.2 Dialogue
- 8.3 Grammar
- 8.4 Writing II: The consonants ณ - ດ
- 8.5 Exercises
- 8.6 Answers to exercise 1





## 8.1 Introduction

In this lesson, some attention is given to spoken Thai, but the lion's share of the subject matter will be about some phenomena that occur within Thai grammar, which foreign students might find alien. Although basically a Subject-Verb-Object Language, you have seen that in many cases the word order within a Thai sentence derives from the word order in English and other European languages. Apart from that, there exist a large number of idiomatic expressions, which must be learned by heart. In this lesson you'll get closer acquainted with some of the most striking and most often used expressions in the Thai language. During the rest of the course, many more will follow. Later, when you know more idioms, sayings and locutions, you'll be able to play with them subtly, changing them according to location and context, and use them to make language jokes, as the Thai like to do themselves.

In the dialogue, a young traveler arrives at Suwannabhumi, Bangkok's International Airport.

cd 1b      **8.2 Dialogue**  
track 03      Welcome

๔.๒. บท สันทนา  
ยินดี ต้อนรับ



[ยินดี ต้อนรับ]

ที่ทำ อากาศยาน สุวรรณภูมิ วินแซนท์ วอล์ฟ ให้ หนังสือ เดินทาง กับ เจ้า หน้าที่  
ตรวจ คน เข้า เมือง

เจ้า หน้าที่:      สวัสดี ครับ

วินแซนท์ วอล์ฟ:      สวัสดี ครับ ท่าน

เจ้า หน้าที่:	คุณ เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์ ใช่ ไหม ครับ
วินเซนท์ วอล์ฟ:	ครับ ผู้
เจ้า หน้าที่:	คุณ มา ที่ เมือง ไทย กี่ วัน ครับ
วินเซนท์ วอล์ฟ:	มา สาม อาทิตย์ ครับ ผู้ มา เยี่ยม ญาติ ด้วย
เจ้า หน้าที่:	คุณ พูด ภาษา ไทย เก่ง นะ ครับ มา บ่อย ไหม ครับ
วินเซนท์ วอล์ฟ:	ผู้ มา เที่ยว เมือง ไทย สอง ครั้ง แล้ว ครับ แต่ ผู้ พูด ภาษา ไทย ยัง ไม่ เก่ง เท่าไร ครับ ผู้ เพิ่ง เริ่ม เรียน ภาษา ไทย ครับ
เจ้า หน้าที่:	ยินดี ต้อน รับ ครับ เรียบ ร้อย แล้ว เชิญ เลย ครับ

**Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 8.2.**

jindii tōon-ráp .

*Happy to-welcome.*

ที่ๆ ท่า ภาคàตjàา สùวัณฑùม . วินเซ่น วูฟ หâj นângสüe ดœun ทาัง กàป คำว่า นâathû ตรุต ขอน ขาว เมือง .

*At/in airport Suvarnabhumi . Vincent Wolf to-give book to-walk way/raod with/to police(man) border.*

คำว่า นâathû: sàwàtdii khráp .

*Officer:* Good day/morning/afternoon etc. [polite particle m.]

winseen woof: sàwàtdii khráp ทân .

*Vincent Wolf:* Good day/morning/afternoon etc. [polite particle m.] You/Sir/Madam.

คำว่า นâathû: khun pen khon neetheuleen châj măj khráp .

*Officer:* You to-be person Netherlands yes [question particle][polite particle m.]

winseen woof: khráp phõm .

*Vincent Wolf:* [polite particle m.]<sup>1</sup> I (man speaking)<sup>2</sup> {<sup>1</sup> and <sup>2</sup>: formal polite 'yes' for men}.

คำว่า นâathû: khun maa thû mueang thaj kìi wan khráp .

*Officer:* You to-come to-travel in/at land Thai how-many day [polite particle m.]

winseen woof: phõm maa sääam aathít khráp . phõm maa jíam jáat dûaj.

*Vincent Wolf:* I (man speaking) to-come to-visit family three week [polite particle m.]. I to-come to-visit family also.

คำว่า นâathû: khun phûut phaasää thaj keng ná khráp . maa bòj >

*Officer:* You to-speak language Thai able [emphasis particle] [polite particle m.]. to-come to-travel often

măj khráp .

[question particle][ polite particle m.]

winseen woof:  
*Vincent Wolf:*

phǒm maa thiaw mueang thaj sǒong khráng lēew >  
*I (m.) to-come to-make-pleasure-tour country Thai two occasion already >*

khráp . tèe phǒm phûut phaasăa thaj jang mâj keng  
*[polite part. m.]. But I (m.) to-speak language Thai still no/not skilful >*

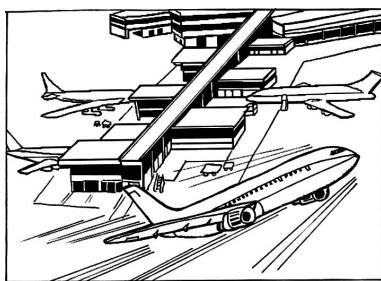
thâwraj khráp . phǒm phûeng rêm rian phaasăa >  
*so-much/how-much [polite part. m.]. I (m.) just to-start to-learn language >*

thaj khráp.  
*Thai [polite particle m.].*

câw nâathûi:  
*Officer:*

jindii tôon ráp khráp . riap róoj lêew . cheun leuj khráp >  
*Happy to-welcome [polite particle m.]. To-be-ready already. Please/to-invite to-pass-through [polite particle m.]*

### cd 1b Vocabulary track 04



ท่า อากาศยาน



ชาย แดน

สันทนา	sõnþánaa	to converse, to talk to, to talk with
การ สันทนา	kaan sõnþánaa	dialogue, conversation
ที่	thîi	1. at, in, on; 2. particle for the formation of ordinal numbers; 3. place, site; 4. land, soil; 5. that (relative pronoun); 6. that, which (conjunction); 7. office, department
ท่า	thâa	harbor, pier
อากาศยาน	aakàatsàjaan	airplane; aircraft
ท่า อากาศยาน	thâa aakàatsàjaan	airport
ชาย แดน	chaaj deen	border, frontier
สุวรรณภูมิ	sùwannáphuum	Suvarnabhumi, Bangkok's international airport
ให้	hâj	to give
หนังสือ เดินทาง	nângsüe deun thaang	passport
แก่	kèe (kè, kà)	1. to; 2. for; 3. old, aged; 4. overripe; 5. strong (tea)
เจ้า หน้าที่ ตรวจ	câw nâathûi truat.	Immigration Officer;
คน เข้า เมือง	khon khâw mueang	Customs official;
สวัสดี	sàwàtdii	good morning/afternoon/evening/night; hello; bye



พูด



ญาติ



พม

ครับ	khráp	polite particle (man speaking)
่าน	thân*	1. you (polite); 2. he, she; 3. Sir, Madam
คุณ	khun	you (polite-neutral)
เป็น	pen	1. to be; 2. to be able to; 3. to be alive; alive
คน	khon	person, man, woman, human being
เนเธอร์แลนด์	neethe <u>u</u> leen	The Netherlands
ใช่	châj	yes
ไหม	măj	question particle for general questions
ใช่ ไหม	châj măj	yes, isn't it?; that's right, isn't it?
ครับ ผม	khráp phóm	formal polite particle (m.)
มา	maa	1. to come; 2. to arrive; 3. direction indicator towards speaker or subject
เมือง	mueang	1. country; 2. city
เมือง ไทย	mueang thaj	Thailand
กี่	kìi	how many
วัน	wan	day
สาม	săam	three
อาทิตย์	aathít	week
เยี่ยม	jîam	1. to visit, to call on, to see (persons); 2. excellent, brilliant, supreme, outstanding
ญาติ	jâat*	family
พูด	phûut	1. to talk, to speak; 2. to say
ภาษา	phaasää	language
ภาษา ไทย	phaasää thaj	Thai (the Thai language)
เก่ง	kèng	1. be good at, be adept at; 2. be expert in skilled; 3. to be able, capable, competent; 4. to be clever
เที่ยว	thîaw	1. to go out; 2. to go on a trip; to go on a holiday
บ่อย	bòj	often, regularly



เมืองไทย

ผม	phǒm	I (man speaking)
มาเที่ยว	maa thâaw	to come and visit (a place)
สอง	sǒong	two
ครั้ง	khráng	time; occasion
ยัง	jang	1. still, yet; 2. more, still more; 3. besides, in addition to; 4. “ยัง” (as negation)- “not yet”
ไม่	mâj	no, not
เท่าไร	thâwraj	1. how many, how much; 2. that much
เพิ่ง	phêung	just, just now (short/spoken language for เพื่อ)
เริ่ม	rêum	to start, to begin
เรียน	rian	to learn
ยินดี ต้อนรับ	jindii tôon ráp	welcome (idiom)
เรียบ ร้อย	rîap róoj	1. to be ready; 2. to be in order; 3. to be neat, to be tidy; 4. to be well-mannered
เชิญ	cheun	1. to invite; 2. please, go ahead
ผ่าน	phàan	to pass, to cross; 2. undergo, experience, go through; 3. by, after, through, by means of

### Translation of dialogue 8.2.

#### Welcome

At Suvarnabhumi Airport, Vincent Wolf hands over his passport to the immigration officer.

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Officer:      | Good morning, Sir.  |
| Vincent Wolf: | Good morning, Sir.  |
| Officer:      | You are a Dutchman, aren't you?   |
| Vincent Wolf: | That's right, Sir.  |
| Officer:      | How many days will you stay in Thailand?  |
| Vincent Wolf: | I'll stay for three weeks, Sir. I've come to visit my family, too.  |
| Officer:      | You speak Thai well. Do you come often?   |
| Vincent Wolf: | I have visited Thailand twice already. But I don't speak Thai that well, yet.<br>I've just started learning Thai. |
| Officer:      | Welcome. Everything's in order. Please pass through.  |

**cd 1b      Basic conversation: Rehearsal and additional constructions.**  
**track 05**

I (man speaking)	ผม	phǒm
I (woman speaking)	ดิฉัน	dìchǎn
I (woman and man; informal)	ฉัน	chǎn
Hello	สวัสดี	sàwàtdii
Good day (man speaking)	สวัสดี ครับ	sàwàtdii khráp
Good day (woman speaking)	สวัสดี ค่ะ	sàwàtdii khâ
My name is... (man speaking)	ผมชื่อ	phǒm chûe
My name is... (woman speaking)	ดิฉันชื่อ	dìchǎn chûe
I come from...	ผม / ดิฉัน มา จาก ...	phǒm / dìchǎn maa càak ...
I'm going to...	ผม / ดิฉัน (จะ) ไป ...	phǒm / dìchǎn (cà) paj ...
I live in... / stay at...	ผม / ดิฉัน อยู่ ที่ ...	phǒm / dìchǎn jùu thû ...
I've come on holiday in... (man speaking)	ผม มา เที่ยว ที่ ...	phǒm maa thîaw thû ...
I've come on holiday in... (woman speaking)	ดิฉัน มา เที่ยว ที่ ...	dìchǎn maa thîaw thû ...

### 8.3 Grammar. Repetition and addition: The Thai sentence.

1. In principle, Thai has the same word order within a sentence as English: Subject-Verb-Object (direct or indirect):

I hit him: ผม ตี เขายา - phǒm tii khăw. I give him: ผม ให้ เขายา - phǒm hâj khăw.

2. Because Thai is a tonal language, there is less opportunity to indicate stress with intonation, or to add a rising intonation to an interrogative sentence, like in English. (Intonation *does* exist in spoken Thai, but at this stage you don't have to pay attention to it, yet.)

An interrogative sentence is indicated by means of a question particle. The question particle appears at the end of the actual sentence, in front of the polite particle. Two fundamental particles can be distinguished: ใหม (măj, which is a question particle for open questions) and หรือ (rûe, which is a particle for questions on which one expects either a 'yes' or a 'no' for an answer):

เข้า เป็น คน ดี ใหม  
khăw pen khon dii măj

He to-be person good [question p. (măj)]  
'Is he a good man?'

เข้า เป็น คน ดี หรือ  
khăw pen khon dii rûe

He to-be person good [question p. (rûe)]  
'Are you sure that he is a good man?'

3. A supposition, which will almost certainly be acknowledged, is expressed in a question with the question particle ใช ใหม - châj măj - 'yes [question particle].

**เข้าเป็น คนดี ใช่ไหม**

He to-be person good [question p. (châj măj)]

khăw pen khon dii châj măj

'He is a good man, isn't he?'

4. In a sentence in which there is a direct object as well as an indirect object (or recipient), the indirect object commonly follows directly behind the direct object:

**เขาให้หนังสือเดินทางเจ้าหน้าที่ตรวจคนเข้าเมือง**

khăw hâj năngsue deun thaang câw nâathîi trùat khon khâw mueang

He to-give passport official/officer to-check person to-enter country  
He gives his passport to the immigration officer.

To emphasize the act of giving, like in dialogue 7.2, the following construction can be used:  
Place the word **ให้** (hâj) - to give, in front of the direct object, and the word **กับ** (kâp, kà) - 'with', 'to', or **แก่** (kè, kà) - 'to' in front of the indirect object (recipient):

**เขาให้หนังสือเดินทางกับเจ้าหน้าที่ตรวจคนเข้าเมือง**

khăw hâj năngsue deun thaang kâp (kà) câw nâathîi trùat khon khâw mueang

He to-give passport *with/to* official/officer to-check person to-enter country  
He gives his passport to the immigration officer.

**เขาให้หนังสือเดินทางแก่เจ้าหน้าที่ตรวจคนเข้าเมือง**

khăw hâj năngsue deun thaang kèe (kà) câw nâathîi trùat khon khâw mueang

He to-give passport *to* official/officer to-check person to-enter country  
He gives his passport to the immigration officer.

Note: The words 'กับ' and 'แก่' are both often pronounced as 'กະ' (kà) in common spoken language.

5. The word **เท่าไร\*** (thâwrâj) means: 'how much' in, for example, the expression: **ราคาเท่าไร** (raakhaa thâwrâj) - price how much ('how much does it cost'). In a negation, **เท่าไร** (thâwrâj) means 'so much'. See for example the following sentences:

**ภาพนี้สวยไหม**

picture this beautiful [question particle]

phâap nîi súaj măj

Is this picture beautiful?

**ภาพนี้ไม่สวยเท่าไร**

picture this no/not beautiful so-much

phâap nîi mâj súaj thâwrâj

This picture is not so beautiful.

**คุณมีเงินไหม**

you to-have money [question particle]

khun mii ngeun măj

Do you have money?

**ไม่มากเท่าไร**

no/not much so-much

mâj mâak thâwrâj

Not so much.

### Idiomatic greetings

**ยินดีต้อนรับ** (jindii tōon ráp) means 'welcome'. One often sees it written on wooden signs at the entrance of shops, hotels, beach clubs and nightclubs. The spoken expression is encoun-

tered a bit more rarely, but when spoken out loud, it means of course more.

กิน ข้าว แล้ว หรือ ยัง (kin khâaw lêew rûé jang) means, literally, ‘have you eaten already, or not?’ In the countryside you will be regularly greeted with these words. Don’t take them too literally, because if you answer ‘no’, there is a big chance that you’ll be invited for lunch. In fact, the phrase is a greeting, a word of welcome, and mostly more sincerely meant than ยินดี ต้อนรับ (jindii tôon ráp), which sounds rather more formal even if pronounced to you personally.

**ສບາຍ ຕີ່ ລ້ຽວ** (*sàbaaj dii rüe*) means something like ‘Are you fine?’, ‘Everything all right?’ As an answer, a confirmative answer is expected: **ສບາຍ ຕີ່** (*sàbaaj dii*). ‘I am fine’, ‘all is well’.

## 8.4 Writing II. The consonants ໂ - ຕ

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ឃ	ឃ - ឃុំ joo - jǐng	j	n
ធម្ម	ធម្ម - ធម្មា doo - cháadaa	d	t' (unreleased)
ធម្មូរ	ធម្មូរ - ធម្មូរក too - pàtak	t (unaspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ធម្មីរ	ធម្មីរ - ធម្មីរាន thoo - thăan	th (aspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ធម្ម	ធម្ម - មនុធម្ម thoo - monthoo	th (aspirated) or d	t' (unreleased)
ធម្មូរ	ធម្មូរ - ធម្មូរម៉ា thoo - phûuthâw	th (aspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ធន	ធន - ធនីន noo - neen	n	n
ធត	ធត - ធតឹក doo - dèk	d	t' (unreleased)
ធតី	ធតី - ធតីពោ taw - taw	t (unaspirated)	t' (unreleased)
ធតី	ធតី - ធតីុង thoo - thûng	th (aspirated)	t' (unreleased)

### The meaning of the names of the consonants:

หญิง	girl, woman
ชฎา	Thai theatrical crown
ปฎิก	goad
ฐาน	pedestal
มณฑะ	name of the spouse of King Thosakan (Dasakanth or Rawana); the ten headed demon from the ‘Ramayana’ (or ‘Ramakian’, as the Thai version of the epic is called).
ผู้เฒ่า	old man
เณร	Buddhist novice; young monk
เด็ก	child
เต่า	turtle
ถุง	bag, sack

## 8.5 Exercises

### Exercise 1

After reading dialogue 8.2, answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers in the transcription script:

- What is the name of Bangkok International Airport? (กรุงเทพฯ - krungthêep - Bangkok)
- Is Vincent polite to the immigration officer? (สุภาพ - sùphâap - polite)
- How does the immigration officer know that Vincent is a Dutchman?
- How long will Vincent stay in Thailand? (นานเท่าไร - naan thâwraj - how long)
- What is Vincent going to do in Thailand?
- Is the policeman friendly to? (พูดอย่างกันเอง - phûut pen kan eeng - to speak friendly, informally)
- Does Vincent speak Thai well?
- How does the immigration officer welcome Vincent to Thailand?

Translate the following sentences. Write your answers down in the transcription script:

- Good afternoon, Sir/Madam. (use the polite particle)
- I am an Englishman.

3. I don't speak Thai well, yet.
4. Welcome Sir/Madam.
5. I come to Thailand often.
6. My name is Vincent.
7. I've come to visit my family.
8. You may pass through.

### Exercise 2

Put these sentences in the right order, and translate:

1. neetheuleen maa phǒm thîaw bòj bòj thîi
2. pen thaj khon phǒm
3. phaasăa thaj keng phǒm māj phûut jang
4. ráp jindii tōon thaj mueang thîi
5. khráp sàwàtdii thân
6. aakàatsàjaan thîi mueang pen thaj thâa sùwannáphuum
7. chaaj tamrùat dœen thaj khon pen
8. jîam maa winseen thîi thaj mueang jâat

Fill in (a word may be used more than once):

jindii	thaj	phûut	bòj bòj	mueang	sõong khráng
phûut	chaaj	maa	dœen	jâat	
jang	thîaw	thîi	phǒm	măj	

1. winseen maa thîi mueang thai ... léew
2. tamrùat ... pen ... thaj
3. ... tōon ráp ... mueang thaj
4. ... maa thîi mueang thaj ...
5. ... maa jîam ...
6. phǒm ... mueang thaj
7. phǒm ... phaasăa thaj ... māj dâj
8. khun ... thîaw mueang thaj ...

### Exercise 3

Write down the letters you have learned in this lesson a couple of times. Start at the highest or left-most little circle (ໜ - húa). Pronounce the sound of the letter and its name every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its form. Don't forget to pronounce the difference between the aspirated and the non-aspirated sounds. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times.

The letters ນ-ໜິງ (joo jing) and the ທ-ທ້ານ (thǒo thaan) exist of two parts. Start with the upper part, and put the lower part under it later. In writing each letter, relax your hand, and put your pen on the paper in the same way as you do when you write your name.

ບຸ ປູ ພູ ຈູ ທ

ໜ ໂ ດ ຕ ດ

## 8.6 Answers to exercise 1

1. The airport in Bangkok is called Suwannabhumi.  
๑. ท่าอากาศยาน ของ กรุงเทพฯ ชื่อ สุวรรณภูมิ  
1. thâa aakaàtsàjaan khöong krungthêep chûé sùwannáphuum
2. Yes, he talks politely.  
๒. ใช่ เข้า พูด 淑ภาพ  
2. châj khaw phûut sùphâap
3. He has seen Vincent's passport already.  
๓. ท่าน เห็น หนังสือ เดินทาง ของ วินเซนท์ แล้ว  
3. thân hĕn năngs  e deun thaang khöong winseen l  ew
4. Vincent stays for three weeks.  
๔. วินเซนท์ มา อพย   สาม อาทิตย    
4. winseen maa j  u s  am aathít
5. Vincent has come to visit his family.  
๕. วินเซนท์ มา เย  ยม ญาติ  
5. winseen maa ji  m jaat
6. Yes, the policeman speaks friendly.  
๖. ใช่ ตำรวจ พูด อวย่าง ก  น เอง  
6. châj . tamr  at phûut j  ang kan eeng

7. Vincent doesn't speak Thai very well, yet.  
วินเชนท์ พูด ภาษา ไทย ยัง ไม่ เก่ง  
7. winseen phûut phaasăa thaj jang mâj keng
8. He says: 'Welcome'.  
ท่าน บอก: "ยินดี ต้อน รับ"  
8. thân bòok: 'jindii tōon ráp'

### Translation of the sentences

1. sàwàtdii khráp/khâ  
สวัสดี ครับ / ค่ะ
2. dîchǎn/phǒm pen khon neetheulæn  
ดิฉัน / ผม เป็น คน เนเธอร์แลนด์
3. dîchǎn/phǒm phûut phaasăa thaj jang mâj keng  
ดิฉัน / ผม พูด ภาษา ไทย ยัง ไม่ เก่ง
4. jindii tōon ráp khâ/khráp .  
ยินดี ต้อน รับ ค่ะ / ครับ
5. dîchǎn/phǒm maa thîi muang thaj bòj bòj  
ดิฉัน / ผม มา เมือง ไทย บอย บอย (บอย ๆ)
6. phǒm chûe winseen woof  
ผม ชื่อ วินเชนท์ วอลฟ์
7. phǒm maa jiām jāat  
ผม มา เยี่ยม ญาติ
8. cheun leuj khâ/khráp  
เชิญ เลย ค่ะ / ครับ

# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 9

### Meeting family at the airport

### มา รับ ญาติ ที่ สนาม บิน

- 9.1 Introduction
- 9.2 Dialogue
- 9.3 Idioms
- 9.4 Grammar
- 9.5 Cultural notes
- 9.6 Writing III: The consonants ໜ - ໝ
- 9.7 Theoretical overview of the five tones in Thai
- 9.8 Exercises
- 9.9 Answers to exercises 1 and 2





## 9.1 Introduction

Bangkok's Suwannabhumi Airport (the name is pronounced 'sùwannáphuum') is one of the most important air traffic hubs in Asia. Every year, tens of millions of travelers touch down at Suwannabhumi; either arriving at their destination, or to board a connecting flight to an Asian, European or American city. Suwannabhumi is also a transshipment airport for millions of tons of goods per annum. For most travelers, Suwannabhumi Airport is the first impression they get of Thailand. It is an easily accessible airport with excellent road connections to the most important tourism- and business centers in Bangkok, and it has air connections to many provincial capitals. The arrival hall is large, modern and luxurious. After you have collected your luggage and passed through customs, you may rest for a while in one of the many bars and restaurants at the airport, before continuing your journey by bus or by taxi to one of the bustling centers of Bangkok.

In this lesson you'll learn some kinship terms. Moreover, you'll of course enlarge your active practical vocabulary. But especially your knowledge of Thai grammar will be refreshed and extended. You'll learn more about the art of negating, and you'll learn how to express yourself towards friends and family members in a practical, informal manner.

## **ed 1b      9.2      Dialogue**

៨. នគរបាល សាស្ត្រ  
មាន ឈាម ធម្មតា ពី សាន្តរាល់ ឬ ឯកសារ



## [มา รับ ญาติ ที่ สนาม บิน]

ที่ สนาม บิน สุวรรณภูมิ นาย เพเตอร์ วอล์ฟ กับ ลูกสาว นิกกี้ และ เพื่อน ๆ ของ นิกกี้ จ้อย และ เมว มา รับ วินชэнท์ ที่ อาคาร ผู้โดยสาร ขา เข้า

นิกกี้: พ่อ ค่ะ ฉัน เที๊ย ขาด มา แล้ว

เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ:	ใช่ เขายา มา แล้ว (โบก มือ) วินเชนท์ ! วินเชนท์ อะ !
จ้อย:	ไหน คะ คน ไหน
นิกกี้:	คน สูง ๆ หล่อ ๆ นั่น ไง นั่น พี่ ชาย ของ นิกกี้
จ้อย:	เขา หล่อ จริง ๆ
แมว:	จริง ๆ ด้วย เขายา เป็น ลูก ของ คุณ ลุง นิกกี้ ใช่ ไหม
นิกกี้:	ใช่ ดู สิ เขายา มา แล้ว
วินเชนท์:	สวัสดี ครับ อา เปเตอร์ สวัสดี นิกกี้ รอ นาน ไหม ครับ
เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ:	ไม่ นาน เลย
วินเชนท์:	คุณ อา ฐานิดา ไม่ มา หรือ
นิกกี้:	คุณ แม่ ไม่ มา ค่ะ เขายา ไม่ ว่าง
เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ:	มี ผู้หญิง อีก สอง คน มา รับ วินเชนท์ นะ นี่ คุณ จินตนา และ คุณ บีวน่า
จ้อย:	(ให้ วินเชนท์) สวัสดี ค่ะ ติดฉัน ชื่อ จ้อย ค่ะ
วินเชนท์:	(ให้ ตอบ) ผู้ วินเชนท์ ครับ ยินดี ที่ได้ รู้จัก ครับ
แมว:	(ให้ วินเชนท์ เมื่อ กัน) ติดฉัน ชื่อ แมว ค่ะ สวัสดี ค่ะ
วินเชนท์:	แหม ให้ ผู้ ด้วย หรือ ขอบ คุณ ครับ ที่ให้ เกียรติ ผู้
เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ:	ยี่ห่ ๆ สาม สาว พาก นี่ สุภาพ ไป หน่อย เมื่อกี้ นี่ ยัง ชุม วินเชนท์ ว่า หล่อ ด้วย
วินเชนท์:	ยี่ห่ ๆ ขอบ คุณ มาก ครับ คุณ ทั้ง สาม คน ก็ สวย มาก ครับ

#### Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 9.2.

maa ráp jāat thīi sàññaam bin .  
*To-come to-meet family at/in airport .*

thīi sàññaam bin sùwannáphuum naaj peeteeu woof kàp lúuk-sääaw níkkî lé? phüean phüean >  
*At/in field to-fly Suwarnabhumi Mr. Peter Wolf with child-girl (daughter) Nikki and friend friend of/belonging-to Nikki . Joy >*

khöong níkkî . cój lé? mæew . maa ráp winseen thīi aakhaan phüu-doojsääan khää-khåw .  
*And Maew . to-come to-meet Vincent at/in room to-receive passenger incoming/import .*

níkkî:	phôo khá . chän hĕn khăw maa léew .
Nikki:	Father [polite part. f.] . I to-see he/she to-come already .
peete <u>eu</u> woof:	châj . khăw maa léew (bòqk mue) . winseen ! winseen há !
Peter Wolf:	Yes . He/she to-come already (to-wave hand) . Vincent! Vincent! [emphatic part.] !
cój:	năj khá . khon năj .
Joy:	Which [polite particle f.] . Person which?

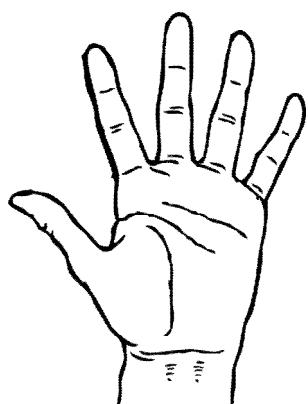
- níkkî: khon súung súung lòo lòo nân ngaj . nân phî chaaj khöong níkkî .  
*Nikki:* Person tall tall handsome handsome that why (you see) . That older-sibling man belonging-to Nikki .
- côj: khăw lòo cing cing .  
*Joy:* He/she handsome really really .
- m  ew: cing cing d  aj . khăw pen l  uk khöong khun lung níkkî ch  j m  j .  
*Maew:* Really really also . He/she to-be child belonging-to Mr./Mrs. uncle Nikki yes [question particle] .
- níkkî: ch  j . duu s   . khăw maa l  ew .  
*Nikki:* Yes. To-look [emphatic part.]. He to-come already .
- win  en: s  w  tdii khr  p aa peeteu . s  w  tdii níkkî . roo naan >  
*Vincent:* Good day [polite particle m.] uncle Peter. Hello Nikki. To-wait long(time) > m  j khr  p .  
[question part.] [polite part m.] .
- peeteu woof: m  j naan leuj  
*Peter Wolf:* No/not long(time) at all.
- win  en: khun aa th  an  daa m  j maa r  e .  
*Vincent:* Mrs. Aunt Thanida no/not to-come [question particle yes/no question]?.
- níkkî: khun m  e m  j maa kh   . khăw m  j w  ang .  
*Nikki:* Mrs./Mr. Mother no/not to-come [polite part. f.]. She/he not/no free .
- peeteu woof: mii ph  uj  ng i  k s  ong khon maa r  p win  en n   . >  
*Peter Wolf:* To-have/to-be-present girl more two person to-come to-meet Vincent [emphatic part.] >  
n  i khun cint  naa . l  ? khun p  wiinaa .  
This Miss Jintana . And miss Paweena.
- côj: (w  j win  en) s  w  tdii kh   . d  ich  n >  
*Joy:* (to-greet-with-a- ‘wai’ Vincent) Good day [polite particle f.] I [f.] >  
ch  e côj kh   .  
to-be-called Joy [polite particle f.]
- win  en: (w  j t  op) ph  m win  en khr  p . >  
*Vincent:* (to-greet-with-a- ‘wai’ to-answer) I Vincent [polite part. m.] . >  
jindii th  i d  j r  uchak khr  p .  
Happy that [part. for opportunity] to-know [polite particle m.] .
- m  ew: (w  j win  en m  ean kan) d  ich  n ch  e m  ew >  
*Maew:* (to-greet-with-a- ‘wai’ Vincent as well) I [f.] to-be-called Maew kh   . s  w  tdii kh   .  
[polite part. f.]. Good day [polite part. f.] .

winseen:	mě̄c . wâj phǒm dûaj rüe . >
Vincent:	(Expression of surprise) . To-greet-with-a-‘wai’ I (m.) also [question particle for yes/no questions] . >
	khòop khun khráp thû hâj kiat phǒm .
	Thank you [polite part. m.] that to-give honor I (m.).
peeteu woof:	hâ hâ . sääam sääaw phûak níi sùphâap paj nòoj . mûea-kîi-níi jang chom >
Peter Wolf:	Haha . Girl three group this polite too-much a-little. A-moment-ago still to-praise >
	winseen wâa lòo dûaj .
	Vincent to-say/that handsome also .
winseen:	hâhâ . khòop khun mâak khráp . khun tháng sääam kô >
Vincent:	Haha. Thank you much [polite particle m.]. You every three also >
	süaj mâak khráp .
	beautiful much [polite particle m.]

## Vocabulary



รับ	ráp	1. to receive; 2. to meet; to welcome
สนาม บิน	sànăam bin	airport
สุวรรณภูมิ	sùwannáphuum	‘Land of Gold’, name of Bangkok’s International Airport
นาย	naaj	1. lord, master; 2. Mr. ... 3. Personal pronoun 3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular, used between young men (familiar)
กับ	kàp	with; and
และ	lé?	and
เพื่อน	phûean	friend
อาคาร	aakhaan	building; hall
ผู้ โดยสาร	phûu døojsääan	traveler, passenger
ขา เข้า	khää khâw	1. entering; 2. imported
พ่อ	phôo	father
ฉัน	chän	I (normally used by women; a couple of decades ago also used by men; informal)
เห็น	hĕn	1. to see; 2. to be of the opinion



โนก มือ



แม่



อา

แล้ว

léew

1. already; 2. then, afterwards, later; and then...

โนก มือ

bòók mue

to wave (with the hand)

อะ

há?

variant of ครับ - *khráp* or นะ - *khá*

ที่ ไหน

thûi năj

where, which place

สูง

sǔung

1. high; 2. tall (in height)

หล่อ

lòo

handsome (only used for men)

นั่น

nân

that (demonstrative pronoun)

ไง

ngaj

short for อ่าย่างไร - *jàang raj* - how

พี่ ชาย

phîi chaaj

older brother

ของ

khöong

1. thing; 2. of, belonging to, owned by (possessive pronoun)

จริง ๆ (จริง จริง)

cing cing

really, truly

ลูก

lûuk

child; son or daughter

คุณ

khun

1. you (polite); 2. Mr., Mrs.

ลุง

lung

uncle (older brother of mother or father)

ดู

duu

1. to see; 2. to look

ลี

sì , sì?

modifying sentence particle for emphasis

รอ

roo

to wait (for)

นาน

naan

long (time)

เลย

leuj

1. to pass, to surpass, past; 2. consequently; 3. in the least, at all (after a negative); 4. under any circumstance; 5. utterly

อา

aa

younger brother or sister of father: uncle, aunt

หรือ

rue

1. or; 2. question particle for yes-no questions

แม่

mêe

mother

ค่ะ

khâ

polite particle for affirmative sentences (woman speaking)

he; she



ຜູ້ ພົມງ	ນີ້	nîi	this (demonstrative pronoun)
	นางສາວ	naangsăaw	1. young woman; 2. miss; 3. Miss (term of address)
	ໄທວ້	wâj	1. a greeting performed by



รู้จัก กัน ได้ dâj 1. to can, to be able; 2. to get,



ໃຫວ	ໄດ້ ເກිຍරຕີ	dâj kiat	to be honored, to receive honor
-----	-------------	----------	---------------------------------



นี่	ní	this (relative pronoun or shortened demonstrative pronoun)	
หัว? (หัว หัว)	hâ? hâ?	[sound of laughter]	
ลุก้าพ	sùphâap	polite	
ไป หน่อย	paj nòoj	a little too...	
เมื่อ กี่ นี่	mûea kîi níú	just now, a minute ago	
ยัง	jang	yet, still	
ชม	chom	1. to praise; 2. to admire; 3. to flatter	
ว่า	wâa	1. to say; 2. ‘that’ (introducer of a subordinate clause); 3. to criticize; 4. to scold, to abuse (verbally)	
สวาย	ขอบ คุณ มาก	khòop khun mâak	Thank you very much
สวาย	súaj	1. beautiful; 2. pretty, attractive, lovely (only said of girls); 3. smooth, successful; 4. fine, nice	
ทั้ง สาม คน	tháng sääam khon	all three of them	

### Translation of conversation 9.2

Meeting family at the airport

At Suvarnabhumi Airport, Mr. Peter Wolf, his daughter Nikki and Nikki's friends Joy and Maew have come to meet Vincent in the arrival hall.

- Nikki: Dad, I see him coming already.  
 Peter Wolf: Yes, he's coming already (waves), Vincent! Vincent! Hey!  
 Joy: Where? Which one is he?  
 Nikki: That tall, handsome man over there! That's my cousin.  
 Joy: He is really handsome.  
 Maew: As you say! He's a son of your father's brother, isn't he??  
 Nikki: Exactly! Look there. He's coming already.  
 Vincent: Hello Uncle Peter. Hello, Nikki. Have you been waiting long?  
 Peter Wolf: Not at all.  
 Vincent: Hasn't Aunt Thanida come with you?  
 Nikki: Mom hasn't come. She isn't free.  
 Peter Wolf: There are two other ladies who have come to pick you up, Vincent. These are Miss Jintana and Miss Paweena.  
 Joy: (greeting Vincent with a 'wai') Good afternoon, my name is Joy.  
 Vincent: (greeting back with a 'wai') I'm Vincent, pleased to meet you.  
 Maew: (greeting Vincent with a 'wai', as well) My name is Maew, pleased to meet

- Vincent: you.  
 Well! Are you wai'ing me as well? Thanks a lot for the honor you bestow upon me.
- Peter Wolf: Haha! These girls are a little too polite. A moment ago they said they thought you were so handsome.
- Vincent: Haha! Thanks a lot. You three are all very pretty, too.

### 9.3 Idioms

1. Also for young men and women the polite predicate ‘khun’ - คุณ is used. In English, we could translate it with ‘Miss’ in the case of young women; for young men, there is of course no equivalent but Mr.

คุณ สุรศักดิ์	khun sùrásàk	Mr. Surasak
คุณ ฐานิดา	khun thaanídaa	Mrs. Thanida
คุณ จินตนา	khun cintànaa	Miss Jintana

2. ว่า - *wâa* - means ‘to say’, ‘to speak’, ‘to remark’, and also ‘to criticize’, ‘to reproach’, ‘to reprove’, ‘to admonish’.

คุณ ว่า อะไร ครับ - *khun wâa àraj khráp* - ‘What are you saying?’

แม่ ว่า เขา - *mêe wâa khâw* - ‘Mother reproaches him.’

ว่า - *wâa* - also functions as a relative pronoun which introduces a dependent clause, as the English ‘that’. In some cases Thai uses ว่า (*wâa*) where in English a comma would be sufficient.

จินตนา บอก ว่า ฉัน ต้อง มา เร็ว - *cintànaa bòok wâa chän tōng maa rew* - Jintana said that I had to come quickly.

เข้า ตอบ ว่า เขายัง ไม่ แต่ง ตัว - *khâw tòop wâa khâw jang mât tèeng tua* - He answered that he wasn't dressed, yet.

ผม ไม่ รู้ ว่า เขายัง จะ มา หรือ เปล่า - *phòm mât rúu wâa khâw cà maa rüe plàaw* - I don't know whether he will come or not.

เธอ จะ รู้ ได้ อย่างไร ว่า เขายัง เป็น ใคร - *theu cà rúu dâj jiàangraj wâa khâw pen khraj* - How could she ever know who he was?

Verbs which can be followed by ว่า (*wâa*) are, for example:

กลัว (klua)	- to be afraid	เป็น ห่วง (pen hǔang)	- to be worried
เข้าใจ (khâw caj)	- to understand	พูด (phûut)	- to speak
คิด (khít)	- to think	เรียก (riák)	- to call

จำได้ (cam dâj)	- to remember	รู้ (rúu)	- to know
ชื่ม เชย (chom cheuj)	- to compliment	รู้สึก (rúusùek)	- to feel
เชื่อ (chüea)	- to believe	สงสัย (söngsäj)	- to suspect
ได้ยิน (dâjjin)	- to hear	หมายความ (määj khwaam)	- to mean
ทราบ (sâap)	- to know (formal)	หวัง (wâng)	- to hope
แนใจ (nêecaj)	- to be certain	เห็น (h��n)	- to see, to think
บอก (b��ok)	- to say		

### 3. Ways to say ‘too...’, ‘too much’, ‘a little too...’ in Thai:

adjective + ไป  
paj

อาหาร มัน เต็ม ไป

aah  an man khem paj

*food it salty ‘paj’*

‘The food is too salty.’

verb + มา ก ไป  
m  ak paj

เขา ใส่ น้ำมัน มาก ไป

kh  w s  aj n  amman m  ak paj

*he to-put-in oil ‘m  ak paj’*

‘He put in too much oil.’

adjective + มา ก ไป  
m  ak paj

เด็ก คน นี้ อ้วน มาก ไป

d  ek khon n  i u  an m  ak paj

*child [class.] this fat ‘m  ak paj’*

‘This child is much too fat.’

adjective + เกิน ไป ที่ จะ  
keun paj th  i cà

งาน ยุ่ง เกิน ไป ที่ จะ ไป เที่ยว ได้

ngaan j  ung keun paj th  i cà paj th  aw d  aj

*work busy ‘keun paj th  i cà’ to-go to-go-out to-can*

‘The work is too busy, so I can’t go out.’

มาก เกิน ไป  
m  ak keun paj

เขามี อายุ มาก เกิน ไป

kh  w mii aaj   m  ak keun paj

*he to-have age ‘m  ak keun paj’*

‘He is too old.’

มาก เกิน กว่า ที่ จะ  
m  ak keun kw  a th  i cà

มี ยุง มาก เกิน กว่า ที่ จะ นอน ได้

mii jung m  ak keun kw  a th  i cà noon d  aj

*to-be-present mosquito ‘m  ak keun kw  a th  i cà’*

*to-sleep to-can*

‘There are too many mosquitos to be able to sleep’

ไป หน่อย

paj nòoj

ปลา ตัว นี่ เล็ก ไป หน่อย

plaa tua nii lék paj nòoj

*fish [class.] this small ‘paj nòoj’*

‘This fish is a little too small.’

## 9.4 Grammar

### a. Leaving out the subject

In English, the presence of a subject in a sentence is almost always compulsory, but in Thai, a sentence can very well do without. When it has become clear whom or what is the subject of a sentence, it may be conveniently left out. Sometimes it is already clear from the beginning of the situation that a sentence doesn't need a subject. Especially personal pronouns are often seen as superfluous in spoken conversations.

ไป ไหน มา

paj năj maa

‘Where did (you) just come from?’

ไป ตลาด มา

paj tálàat maa

‘(I) just came from the market.’

ผม จะ ไป ตลาด จะ ไม่ ไป ร้าน ตัด ผม

phōm cà paj tálàat cà māj paj ráan tàt phōm

*I to-shall to-go market . shall not to-go to shop to-cut hair*

‘I'm going the market, (I) shall not go to the hairdresser.’

เธอ เป็น เด็ก สวယ แล้ว มี นิสัย ดี ด้วย

theu pen dèk súaj léeuw mii nísaј dii dùaj

*she to-be child beautiful .and/already to-have character good too*

She is a beautiful child, and (she) also has a good character.

ดู รถ คัน นั้น ลิ สวယ นั่

duu rót khan nân sì súaj nâ

*to-look/to-see car [class.] that [emphatic part.] . beautiful [emphatic part.]*

Look at that car! (That's) really a beautiful one!

### b. The negation; rehearsal and additional constructions

In lesson 2 you have seen how a simple sentence can be made into a negative statement, and in the dialogues you have already encountered many examples of affirmative and negative sentences. In this lesson, we'll pay some more attention to possible forms of the negation.

### 1. The negation of เป็น - pen and คือ - khue; ('to be'):

เป็น (pen) in its meaning of 'to be' is used as the determiner of a noun or a noun phrase:

นี่ เป็น หมา

*This 'pen' dog*

- nîi pen măa

- 'this is a dog'

การ เมือง เป็น เรื่อง 骯ປຽກ

*politics 'pen' affair filthy*

- kaan mueang pen rûeang sòkkâpròk

- 'politics is a dirty game.'

(literally: 'politics is a dirty affair')

เขา เป็น เพื่อน ผู้

*he 'pen' friend I*

- khăw pen phûean phom

- 'He is my friend'

In neutral situations the negative of 'pen' - in its meaning of 'to be' - is 'ไม่ใช่' ('mâj châj') - 'no', 'not' (literally: 'not yes', 'not to be'):

นี่ ไม่ ใช่ หมา

*This 'mâj châj' dog*

- nîi mâj châj măa

- 'this is not a dog'

การ เมือง ไม่ ใช่ เรื่อง 骯ປຽກ

*Politics 'mâj châj' affair filthy*

- kaan mueang mâj châj rûeang sòkkâpròk

- 'politics is not a dirty game'

เขา ไม่ ใช่ เพื่อน ผู้

*He 'mâj châj' friend I*

- khăw mâj châj phûean phom

- 'He is not my friend'

In contradictions of assumptions or presuppositions, the negation 'ไม่ได้เป็น' ('mâj dâj pen') is often used:

เขา ไม่ ได้ เป็น ลุง ผู้

*He 'mâj dâj pen' uncle I*

- khăw 'mâj dâj pen' lung phom

- 'He is not my uncle' (other than you might have supposed)

An exception to this rule is the famous Thai phrase 'ไม่เป็นไร' ('mâj pen raj'); an idiom meaning 'never mind'.

เป็น in its meaning 'to suffer from an illness' is negated as ไม่เป็น:

เขา ไม่ เป็น หวัด

*He 'mâj pen' cold*

- khăw mâj pen wàt

- 'He doesn't have a cold'

คือ (*khue*) means 'to be equal to', 'namely' and can be seen as almost analogous with เป็น (*pen*). It is used when giving explanations and definitions. The negative of คือ (*khue*) is always ไม่ใช่ (*mâj châj*) – 'not yes', 'no'. The word คือ (*khue*) itself cannot be negated:

นี่ คือ หมา	- nî <u>khue</u> măa
this 'khue' dog	- 'this is a dog'
นี่ ไม่ ใช่ หมา	- nî măj châj măa
This not/no dog	- 'this is not a dog'

## 2. The negation of a single verb

A sentence with only one verb in it is negated by placing **ไม่** (*mâj*) in front of the verb:

ผม มา	- phۆm maa	- I come
ผม ไม่ มา	- phۆm mâj maa	- I don't come

Compound verbs are also negated in this manner:

เธอ เห็น ด้วย	- the <u>u</u> hĕn dûaj	- She agrees
เธอ ไม่ เห็น ด้วย	- the <u>u</u> mâj hĕn dûaj	- She doesn't agree
(เห็น ด้วย - hĕn dûaj - literally: 'to see also' - 'to agree')		

## 3. The negation of the resultative verb

In Thai there exist a number of compound verbs that exists of a first verb indicating an action, and a second indicating the result of that action. The second verb in such a combination is called a 'resultative verb'.

These combinations are negated by placing **ไม่** (*mâj*) in front of the second element of the compound verb:

เข้า นอน หลับ	- khăw noon lăp	- he sleeps (he to-lay to-sleep)
เข้า นอน ไม่ หลับ	- khăw noon mâj lăp	- he can't sleep (he to-lay not to-sleep)
เธอ พัง ออกร	- the <u>u</u> fang òok	- she hears (understands) it (she to hear to-go-out)
เธอ พัง ไม่ ออกร	- the <u>u</u> fang mâj òok	- she doesn't hear (understand) it (she hears not to-go-out <sup>10</sup> )
ผม กิน หมด	- phۆm kin mòt	- I eat (it) all (I eat finish; end)
ผม กิน ไม่ หมด	- phۆm kin mâj mòt	- I don't eat (it) all; 'I can't eat all of it'

## 4. The negation of the auxiliary verb and the predicate

The negation of auxiliary verbs, and with them, the predicate, can follow two patterns in Thai. A number of auxiliary verbs is negated following pattern A, but most are negated following pattern B:

<sup>10</sup> ออกร actually means 'out', 'to go out', but can be translated in this instance with 'successfully': 'She hears (it) successfully: She not only hears it, but understands it, too.'

Pattern A. ไม่ (mâj) + auxiliary verb + predicate:

The following auxiliary verbs are negated following negation pattern A. Some are frequently used in combination with: จะ (cà) - ‘will’, ‘shall’. The use of จะ (cà) is, however, not compulsory:

เคย	- khe <u>j</u>	- to be accustomed too; ever, once
ควร (จะ)	- khuan (cà)	- should, ought
น่า (จะ)	- nâa (cà)	- should, ought; worth doing
อยากร (จะ)	- jàak (cà)	- to want, to wish
ต้อง	- tōng	- to must

*Examples:*

ผอม เคย ไป กรุงเทพ ๆ แล้ว แต่ ยัง ไม่ เคย ไป เชียงใหม่  
phǒm khej paj krungthēep lēew . tèe jang mâj khej paj chiangmàj  
*I ever to-go Bangkok already, but yet no/not to-go Chiang Mai .*  
‘I’ve been to Bangkok once, but I’ve never been to Chiang Mai.’

คุณ ควร จะ ออกร กำลัง กาย สัก หน่อย ไม่ ควร จะ นั่ง เจย ๆ  
khun khuan-cà òok-kamlang-kaaj sàk-nòoj . mâj khuan cà nâng chéj chéj  
*You should to-exercise merely a little. No/not should to-sit to-do-nothing .*  
‘You should do some more exercises, not just sit around and do nothing.’

เธอ น่า จะ พูด ดี ๆ กับ น้อง ไม่ น่า จะ ด่า เข้า ทั้ง วัน  
theju nâa-cà phûut dii dii kà? nòong . mâj nâa-cà dàa khaw tháng wan  
*You ought to-speak good-good with younger-sister/brother. No/not ought scold she/he the-whole day.*  
‘You should talk nicely to your little sister, and not call her names all day long.’

คุณ อยากร จะ ไป งาน เลี้ยง หรือ ไม่ อยากร เห็น หน้า คุณ เปเตอร์ อีก  
khun jàak-cà paj ngaan-líang , rüe mâj jàak hěn nâa khun peeteu ùik  
*You to-want to-go party, or no/not to-want to-see face Mr. Peter again.*  
‘Do you want to go to the party, or don’t you want to see the face of Mr. Peter again?’

จินตนา ต้อง ทำ ตาม ที่ ผอม พูด ไม่ ต้อง นึก อะไร เอาจ เอง  
cintànaa tōng tham taam thû phǒm phûut . mâj tōng nûek àraj aw eeng  
*Jintana to-must to-do to-follow that I to-say .No/not to-must to-think something to-take self.*  
‘Jintana (you) must do (it) like I say. You mustn’t think for yourself.’

Pattern B. auxiliary verb + ไม่ (mâj) + predicate:

The following auxiliary verbs are negated following pattern B. Some may be used in combination with จะ (cà) - ‘will’, ‘shall’. In some cases, the use of จะ (cà) - ‘will’, ‘shall’ is compulsory:

<b>คง (ຈະ)</b>	- khong (cà)	- probably; certainly
<b>จะ</b>	- cà ; cà?	- will, shall (indicator of future tense)
<b>ดูเหมือน (จะ)</b>	- duu müean (cà)	- to look like
<b>ท่า (ทาง) จะ</b>	- thâa (thaang) cà	- seemingly; ‘it seems’
<b>แทบ (จะ)</b>	- thêep (cà)	- almost, nearly, practically
<b>มัก (จะ)</b>	- mák (cà)	- to have a tendency towards; often, frequently, always
<b>ย่อม (จะ)</b>	- jôm* (cà)	- inevitable; certainly, necessarily
<b>เห็น จะ</b>	- hĕn cà	- maybe, probably
<b>อาจ (จะ)</b>	- àat (cà)	- could be; maybe
<b>ต้อง</b>	- tông	- must

*Examples:*

**ไฟโรจน์ คง ไป แต่ อ农งค์ คง (จะ) ไม่ ไป**  
 phajrôot khong paj . tèe ànong khong (cà) mây paj .

*Phairote ‘khong’ to-go, but Anong ‘khong (cà)’ no/not to-go.*  
 ‘Phairote shall probably go, but Anong shall probably not go.’

**คุณ จะ อาบ น้ำ ใหม่ ครับ ผม จะ ไม่ อาบ**  
 khun cà àap náam mây khráp . phôm cà mây àap .

*You ‘cà’ to-bathe water [question part.] [polite part.]. I (m) ‘cà’ no/not to bathe.*  
 ‘Will you take a bath? I won’t take a bath.’

**มัน ดูเหมือน (จะ) ไม่ เวิร์ก**  
 man duu müean (cà) mây weuk .

*It to-look like (cà) no/not to-work.*  
 ‘It looks like it’s not going to work.’

**ฝน ท่า (ทาง) จะ ไม่ ตก คุณ ไป อาบ แಡด รี ได้**  
 fõn thâa (thaang) cà mây tòk . khun paj àap dêed kô dâj .

*Rain ‘thâa-cà’ no/not to-fall. You to-go to-bathe sunlight rather to-can.*  
 ‘It doesn’t seem it’s going to rain. Go can go sunbathing.’

**ผม แทบ (จะ) ไม่ กล้า เชื่อ หู ของ ตัว เอง**  
 phôm thêep (cà) mây klâa chüea hûu khöong tua eeng .

*I ‘thêep (cà)’ not to-dare to-believe ear belonging-to body self.*  
 ‘I almost didn’t (dare to) believe my ears.’

**นี่ เป็น เรื่อง ที่ มัก (จะ) ไม่ เกิด ขึ้น บ่อย ๆ**  
 nîi pen rûeang thûi mák (cà) mây keut-khüen bòj bòj .  
*This to-be affair which ‘mák (cà)’ not to-happen often.*  
 ‘This is something which normally doesn’t happen very often.’

**ท่าน ย่อม (จะ) ไม่ เคย รวย อย่าง แน่นอน**  
 thân jôm (cà) mây kheui ruaj jiâang nêenoon .  
*He/you ‘jôm (cà)’ not ever rich thing certain.*  
 ‘He shall certainly (inevitably) never become rich.’

**ผม เห็น จะ ไม่ ไป**  
 phöm hĕn (cà) mây paj .  
*I ‘hĕn (cà)’ not to-go.*  
 ‘I shall probably not go.’

**เข้า อาจ (จะ) ไม่ ชอบ กิน ข้าว เนื้อยา**  
 khăw àat (cà) mây chôop kin khâaw nîaw .  
*He ‘àat (cà)’ not to-like to-eat rice sticky.*  
 ‘Maybe he doesn’t like sticky rice.’

**คุณ ต้อง ไม่ เล่า ให้ เข้า พัง**  
 khun tông mây lâw hâj khăw fang .  
*You ‘tông’ not to-tell to-give he/she to-hear.*  
 ‘You must not tell it to him.’

(Compare this sentence with the last example for pattern A.)

#### Pattern C. predicate - ไม่ (mây) – auxiliary verb:

For verbs, which express ability or permission, a third pattern is used: เป็น (pen) is here: ‘to can’, ‘to be able’, ได้ (dâj) is ‘to can’ and ไหว (wâj) – ‘to be capable’ (auxiliary verb indicating potential or stamina):

<b>เข้า พูด ไทย ไม่ เป็น</b> khăw phûut thaj mây pen	<i>he/she to-speak Thai not to-be-able</i> He cannot speak Thai. The auxiliary verb ‘pen’ (here: to be able) is negated, and with it the whole predicate.
---	---

<b>ผม เล่า ให้ คุณ พัง ไม่ ได้</b> phöm lâw hâj khun fang mây dâj	<i>I to tell to/to-give you to-hear no-not to-be-able</i> I can’t tell (it) to you. The auxiliary verb ‘dâj’ (here: to can) is negated, and with it the whole predicate.
--	--

<b>เธอ เดิน ไป ไม่ ไหว</b> theu deun paj mây wâj	<i>she to-walk to-go/to not to-be-capable-of</i> She is not capable to walk (to it). The auxiliary verb ‘wâj’ (to be capable) is negated, and with it the whole predicate.
---	--

## 5. Negative sentences with ไม่ มี - māj mii ('not present', 'not available')

A statement can be made negative by placing ไม่ มี (māj mii) in front of the noun:

**ไม่ มี รถ ไฟ ไป ร้อย เอ็ด**  
māj mii rót-faj paj róoj èt

*not to-be-available train to-go/to Roi Et*

There is no train to Roi Et.

**ไม่ มี คน มา หา ผอม**  
māj mii khon maa hǎa phǒm

*not to-be-available person to-come to-visit I*

Nobody comes to visit me.

ไม่ มี (māj mii) is also used to negate the pronouns **ใคร** (khraj) - 'someone', **อะไร** (àraj) - 'something' and **ที่ไหน** (thūi năj) - 'somewhere':

**ไม่ มี ใคร รู้**  
māj mii khraj rúu

*not to-be-available someone to-know*

There is no one who knows. (Nobody knows.)

**ไม่ มี อะไร เกิด ขึ้น**  
māj mii àraj keut khüen

*not to-be-available something to-happen*

There is nothing that happens (Nothing happens; nothing has happened.)

**ไม่ มี ที่ ไหน ที่ จะ นอน ได้**  
māj mii thūi-năj thūi cà noon dâj

*not to-be-available somewhere that shall to-sleep to-can*

There is nowhere we can sleep.

Individually, without subordinate clause, ไม่ มี (māj mii), ไม่ มี ใคร (māj mii khraj), ไม่ มี อะไร (māj mii àraj) and ไม่ มี ที่ ไหน (māj mii thūi năj) have the following meaning:

**ไม่ มี**  
māj mii

*not to-be-available/ not to-be-present*

(It) is not (there). (We don't have it)

**ไม่ มี ใคร**  
māj mii khraj

*not to-be-available someone*

There is nobody.

**ไม่ มี อะไร**  
māj mii àraj

*not to-be-available something*

There is nothing

**ไม่ มี ที่ ไหน**  
māj mii thūi năj

*not to-be-available somewhere*

There is nowhere..., there is no place...

## 9.5 Cultural notes

### a. Being flattered; sincere compliments or licking boots?

In Thailand everybody is always complimented with his or her appearance. Women are called สาว (sǔaj) - ‘beautiful’, and men หล่อ (lòo) - ‘handsome’. Older people are flattered with remarks as ‘ยัง สาว อายุ’ (jang sǔaj jùu) - ‘still beautiful’ and ‘ยัง หล่อ อายุ’ (jang lòo jùu) - ‘still handsome’. People in Thailand are also called ‘beautiful’ and ‘handsome’ when they look healthy or when they dress well. If you’re not a leper and your face is not grossly misshapen, you will also receive these nice compliments. Members of your own sex as well as those of the opposite will make them, but compliments alone don’t intend to invite you to take any liberties towards the one who’s paying you the compliment. Nor is the compliment intended to try to get something out of you, or even to toady. One pays compliments out of politeness or respect.

Exceptions are of course found everywhere. You might be rightfully suspicious if a trinket salesman in a tourist trap copiously praises your appearance, your language skills and intellect. He might do this solely because he wants to sell you his trinkets. On the other hand, sincere compliments can be expected when you are building up a relationship with a Thai. Compliments become pet names. And sincerely spoken sweet words obviously imply an invitation to closer contact.

### b. The ไหว้ (wâj) - ‘wai’ (Thai salute)

The ‘wai’ is a gesture of polite salute. It consists of your two hands, palms pressed together, brought in front of your chest, chin, nose, forehead or even higher. The higher your hands are, the more respectful your ‘wai’. In a good ‘chest-wai’, your elbows are pressed against the sides of your body, the your fingertips reach about to your chin, and you bow your head a little, so lips or nose (almost) touch the tips of your stretched fingers. In higher ‘wai’s’, also try to keep your elbows as close together as possible without making it look like you’re forcing yourself. If you bow your head in one of the ‘higher wai’s’, bow it from the neck; don’t move your whole torso.

In the utmost of ‘wai’s’, people crawl towards a monk or a monarch on knees and hands, and alternately cover the floor in front of the dignitary’s feet with their palms, and bring them high ‘wai’s’ with the hands well above their heads. To laud monks, this is done three times, after which a normal posture is assumed. In the case of royalty, the ‘wai’ is made a single time, but is often held as long as the royal audience might last.

You cannot only ‘wai’ to low, and thus not accord the honor fit for a person’s status (be wary of politicians, senior policemen and army generals), but also too high. It brings bad luck to a young child if it is ‘wai-ed’ by an older person. A laborer would consider a ‘wai’ from his boss sarcastic and insulting, and a beggar would feel ridiculed when honored with a ‘wai’

### c. Respect for status and age

Thai society is hierarchical. This comes forth from the principle of ‘*bunkhun*’ to which has been referred in lesson two. Simply said, a person of lower social class is at the disposal of someone from a higher social class, while members of the higher classes should feel the compulsion to be honest and good towards their underlings. At the top of the Hierarchical pyramid stand the King, the Royal Family and the ‘Sangha’; the top of the Buddhist clergy. Under this exalted summit come the nobility, the abbots of important temples, the high military and the economically powerful (the rich). Under them follow politicians, civil servants

and administrators. Politicians regularly break through from one social stratum to another. This always causes a lot of heartache, and has even led to bloody repression.

A separate group is formed by scientists and scholars, professors, teachers and artists, who have no traditional, economic or political power, but enjoy a lot of prestige, as they are important for the maintenance of Thai culture, art and science.

Within a family, grandparents, parents, older uncles and older aunts have more to say than their younger children, cousins, brothers and sisters. A successful younger uncle can count on receiving more respect from his cousins than his older brother who's always drunk, but he himself as well as the younger generation will still salute his 'failed' older sibling with an appropriate 'wai'.

Within a company, the hierarchical organization is always very strict, but even young managers will be polite towards an older man who has been the bosses driver for twenty years.

Thai society is in principle patriarchal, but in the last twenty years, more and more women have gained top positions in management and administration. Especially in the academic world, women have made great progress. These women receive the respect they deserve, also from their younger male subordinates.

Traditionally, the house and the market are the domain of women. Thai men discuss domestic affairs with their wives, and in the countryside there are still men to be found who hand their salary over to their wives, who manage the financial side of the household. In the towns and cities, young couples often administer their finances together, especially when both partners earn an income.

As a foreigner, it is safest for you to speak politely to every Thai who's older than or at least as old as you, until it becomes clear what the actual status is of the person to whom you're speaking.

## 9.6 Writing III. The consonants ໜ - ປ

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ທ	ທ-ທ່ານ thoo tháhāan	th	t' (unreleased)
ສ	ສ-ສົງ thoo thong	th	t' (unreleased)
ນ	ນ-ນູ້ noo nǚu	n	n
ບ	ບ-ບ່າມ boo bajmáaj	b	p' (unreleased)
ປ	ປ-ປລາ poo plaa	p	p' (unreleased)

ຝ	ຝ-ຝຶ້ງ pho় phueng	ph	p' (unreleased)
ຝ	ຝ-ຝາ foo fää	f	does not occur
ພ	ພ-ພານ phoo phaan	ph	p' (unreleased)
ພ	ພ-ຟັນ foo fan	f	f ; p' (in loan words)
ກ	ກ-ສຳເກາ phoo sংmphaw	ph	p' (unreleased)

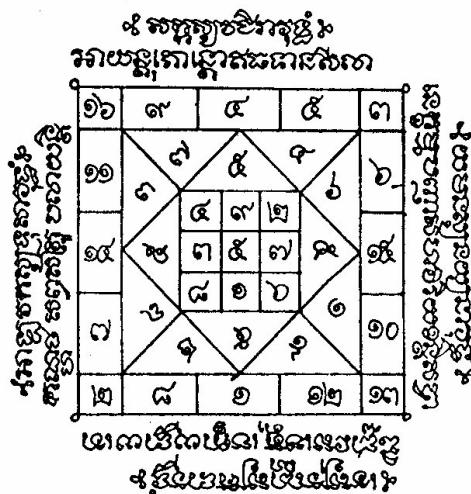
### The meaning of the names of the consonants:

ທຫາຣ	‘soldier’
ຮົງ	‘flag’
ໜູ້	‘mouse’
ໄບໄມ້	‘leaf’
ປລາ	‘fish’
ຝຶ້ງ	‘bee’
ຝາ	‘lid’, ‘cover’
ພານ	‘footed tray’
ຟັນ	‘tooth’
ສຳເກາ	‘Chinese junk’ (kind of ship)

## 9.7 Theoretical overview of the five tones

To exercise the correct pronunciation of the tones, you should listen to the CD's that go with this course, or listen carefully to a patient native speaker who is willing to teach you tonality in Thai. The diagram below is therefore only meant as a mnemonic device:

English description	Thai name	Sounds like:
Flat tone or middle tone	ເສີ່ງ ສາມັນ (siang sāaman)	This tone sounds almost level, and sounds like a somewhat resigned utterance in English. Like the word ‘leave’ in the sentence: ‘I’ll just <u>leave</u> then...’
Low tone	ເສີ່ງ ເອກ (siang èek)	This tone lays a little beneath the normal timbre of the voice, like in ‘ <u>Ah</u> ... What a pity...’
Falling tone	ເສີ່ງ ໂທ (siang thoø)	This tone goes from a little above the normal timbre of the voice to relatively low, like in: ‘Look, I already <u>told</u> you that...’
High tone	ເສີ່ງ ຕັງ (siang trii)	This tone starts from a little higher than the normal timbre of the voice to a relatively high pitch. Like in ‘Oh, can I have a cookie, <u>please!</u> ’
Rising tone	ເສີ່ງ ຈັຕວາ (siang cattawaa)	This tone rises from relatively low to relatively high, and sounds like the intonation of a question in English: ‘Is this a <u>horse</u> ?’



In predicting fate and fortune, you'll see that ‘khoom’ (ຂອມ), or Khmer script is often used...

## 9.8 Exercises

### Exercise 1

Answer the following questions. Try to formulate your answers in correct Thai and write them down according to the transcription method used in the course:

1. Where is Mr. Wolf waiting for his nephew Vincent? (Vincent is the nephew (หลาน - lăan) of uncle (อา - aa) Peter.)
2. Who is the first to see Vincent coming? (the first person: คนแรก - khon rēek)
3. What do Nikki and her friends think of Vincent?
4. Did Peter Wolf and the girls have to wait a long time?
5. Why hasn't aunt Thanida come as well?
6. How do Joy and Maew greet Vincent?
7. What is Peter Wolf's reaction on their greeting?
8. How does Vincent compliment his cousin and her friends?

### Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into Thai. Write them down according to the transcription method used in the course:

1. Uncle Peter is waiting for Vincent.
2. Vincent is from the Netherlands.
3. Uncle Peter lives in Bangkok.
4. He arrives at the airport. (มาถึง - maa thŭeng - to arrive)
5. Nikki calls Vincent her older brother. (เรียก - riāk - to call)
6. Miss Paweena greets Vincent with a 'wai'.
7. She looks at the people.
8. He sees the airport.

### Exercise 3

a. Put these sentences into the right order, and translate:

1. duu khăw thîi bin khon sànaam
2. winseen naan roo khăw
3. thîi ráp dōjsăan røong khon khăa mâak khâw mii phûu
4. khon pen súung neetheuleen khon
5. thaj khăw këng phûut
6. mâj thăanídaa maa aa dâj
7. cang lòo khăw mâak
8. côj sàwàtdii khun khráp

b. Fill in the right word, and translate:

sູາຈ ມາ ພູຸ່ຕ ພູຸ່ວ ດ້າກ ວ້າງ ພັ ມູັງ

1. ດອງ ... ຂອນ ທາງ .
2. ຂ້າວ ... ທຸ່ຽງ ທີ່ ສຳນັ້ມ ບິນ .
3. ກຽນທີ່ເປັນ ພັ ... ຈັກ .
4. ທີ່ ຮອງ ຮັບ ... ດອງສ້ານ ຂ້າ ຂ້າວ ມີ ຂອນ ມາກ .
5. ຂ້າວ ມາ ... ປະທີ່ເຕ ເນື່ອເຫຼັກ .
6. ພ້ວຍໃນ້ ... ມາກ .
7. ຂ້າວ ... ພ້າສ້າ ທາງ ກົງ .
8. ຂຸນ ພົ້ວ ມາກ ... .

#### Exercise 4

Write down the letters you have learned in this lesson a couple of times. Start at the highest or left-most little circle (ໜູ - hູາ). Pronounce the sound of the letter and its name every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its form. Don't forget to pronounce the difference between the aspirated and the non-aspirated sounds. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times.

Relax your hand, and put your pen on the paper in the same way as you do when you write your name.

ກ ຕ ນ ບ ພ

ຝ ພ ພ ພ ພ

## **9.9      Answers to exercises 1 and 2**

## **1. Answers to the questions:**



## **2. Solution of the translation exercise**

1. aa peeteeu roo winseen .
  ๒. ອາ ເປເຕອຮ້ ຮອ ວິນແຊນທ໌
  2. winsseen maa càak neetheueen .
  ๓. ວິນແຊນທ໌ ມາ ຈາກ ໙ເຮອຮ້ແລນດໍ
  3. aa peeteeu jùu thîi krungthêep .
  ๔. ອາ ເປເຕອຮ້ ອູ້ ທີ່ ກຽງເທເພ ພ
  4. khăw maa thüeng thîi sànaam bin .
  ๕. ເຂາ ມາ ຄຶ້ງ ທີ່ ສນາມ ບິນ
  5. níkkûi riak winsseen wâa phîi chaaj .
  ๖. ນີກກີ້ ເຮືຍກ ວິນແຊນທ໌ ວ່າ ພື້ ຂາຍ
  6. khun pâwiinaa wâj winsseen .
  ๗. ອຸນ ປວິນາ ໄທວ້ ວິນແຊນທ໌
  7. khăw duu khon . or: khăw moong khon
  ๘. ເຂາ ດູ ດນ or: ເຂາ ມອງ ດນ
  8. khăw hĕn sànaam bin .
  ๙. ເຂາ ເຫັນ ສນາມ ບິນ



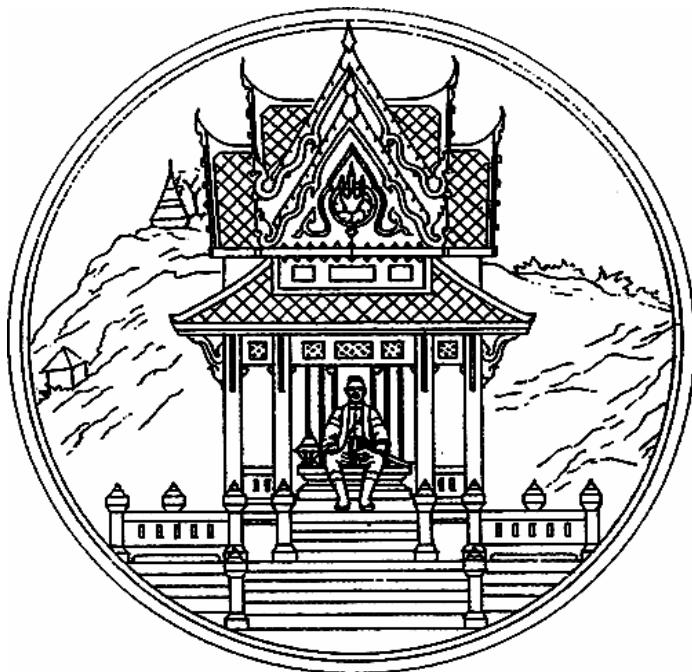
# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 10

### At the restaurant

#### ที่ กัดตาการ

- 10.1 Introduction
- 10.2 Dialogue
- 10.3 Idioms
- 10.4 Grammar
- 10.5 Cultural note
- 10.6 Writing IV: The consonants ນ - ອ
- 10.7 Exercises
- 10.8 Answers to exercises 1 and 2





## 10.1 Introduction

Thailand is famous for its delightful cuisine. Large parts of the country are very fertile, and Thai rice (**ข้าวหอมมะลิ** - khâaw hoom málí - jasmine scented rice) is known all over the world for its delicate taste and scent. Traditionally, in each Thai dish the five main flavors (sweet, salty, sour, spicy and bitter) should be represented in their ideal proportions. The cuisines of the four main regions (Central, North, Northeast and South) differ clearly from each other. Dishes from the South and the Northeast, for instance, are often very spicy. Southern cuisine uses a lot of fish and other sea products. In the North, more vegetables are used, and also some spices which do not occur in other regions. The Northeast, the region called 'Isan', is famous for its grilled chicken, pork and meat dishes, preserved vegetables, fermented fish and spicy sauces. In Isan, people also have a taste for edible insects like giant water bugs, grasshoppers and larvae, which are nowadays also sold at the markets in Bangkok and other cities. In the Southern and Central regions, the basis for every meal is dry, steamed rice. Whereas in the North and Northeast, sticky rice is preferred. The Thai have cold water with their food or one of the many available fruit juices. Also, excellent Thai beer is available everywhere. Thailand produces several brands of soda water and many kinds of soft drinks. Products from the Coca Cola Company and Pepsi can be bought at all general stores and restaurants. Coffee is grown in Southern Thailand and tea in the mountains of the North.

## cd 1b 10.2 Dialogue

track 8 At the restaurant

๑๐.๒. บทสนทนา

ที่ ก๊ตตาการ



[ที่ ก๊ตตาการ]

นาย เปเตอร์ วอล์ฟ พา ลูกสาว นิกกี้ กับ หวาน วินแซนท์ และ เพื่อน ๆ ของ นิกกี้ จ้อย กับ แมว ไป กิน ข้าว ที่ ร้าน อาหาร

นิกกี้: พี่ วินแซนท์ คิด ถึง อาหาร ไทย ไหม คะ

จ้อย: พ่อ จ้อย บอก ว่า สมัย นี่ มี ร้าน อาหาร ไทย เยอะ มาก แล้ว ที่ ญี่ปุ่น

วินเซนท์: คุณ พ่อ ของ จ้อย เคย ไป เที่ยว ที่ ยูโรป แล้ว หรือ  
แมว: พ่อ ของ จ้อย ทำงาน เป็น นักบิน ของ การบิน ไทย ท่าน ไป มา  
ทุก หน ทุก แห่ง แล้ว จ้อย เคย ไป เที่ยว ยูโรป มา ด้วย  
จ้อย: แทน จ้อย เคย ไป ลอนדון ครั้ง หนึ่ง เมื่อ จ้อย อายุ ลิบ ห้า ปี จ้อย  
พัก อยู่ แค่ ส่อง วัน แล้ว ก็ กลับ  
นาย เพเตอร์: (เรียก เด็ก เลิร์ฟ) น้อง ขอ เมนู หน่อย นะ  
เด็ก เลิร์ฟ เดิน มา และ ส่ง รายการ อาหาร ให้ คน ละ เล่ม  
วินเซนท์: จ้อย จะ กิน อะไร จัง จ้อย ชอบ กิน อาหาร เผ็ด ใหม  
นิกกี้: ใช่ ๆ จ้อย ชอบ กิน เผ็ด มาก จน น้ำ ทู น้ำ ตา ไหล รู้ มั้ย เพราะ คุณ  
ตา ของ จ้อย เป็น คน บังคลาเทศ  
จ้อย: ไม่ ใช่ ท่าน มา จาก ศรี ลังกา ค่ะ แต่ นั่น ไม่ เกี่ยว กัน เลย สัก  
หน่อย  
นาย เพเตอร์: นิกกี้ อย่า เอา ญาติ ผู้ ใหญ่ ของ เพื่อน มา ล้อ เล่น สิ สิ่ง อาหาร  
กัน ดี กว่า

นาย เพเตอร์ เรียก เด็ก เลิร์ฟ มา อีก ครั้ง และ เริ่ม สิ่ง อาหาร...

นาย เพเตอร์: เอา กุ้ง แซ่บ น้ำ ปลา เสือ ร้อง ให้ ลาง หมู เนื้อ น้ำ ตก...  
แล้ว เอา อะไร อีก จ้อย แมว วินเซนท์  
จ้อย: เอา ส้ม ตำ และ ไก่ ย่าง ด้วย ได้ ใหม ค่ะ  
นิกกี้: ขอ ข้าว เนนี่ยา และ ข้าว สวย ก็ แล้ว กัน แกง เหลือง มี ใหม  
น้อง  
เด็ก เลิร์ฟ: มี ค่ะ  
วินเซนท์: จัน เอา ด้วย แมว เอา อะไร อีก ครับ  
แมว: ที่ สิ่ง มา แมว ชอบ ทั้ง นั้น ค่ะ ทุก อย่าง มัน อร่อย  
เด็ก เลิร์ฟ: คุณ จะ รับ เครื่อง ดีม อะไร ใหม ค่ะ  
นาย เพเตอร์: ขอ เปียร์ สิงห์ ขาด หนึ่ง นะ น้อง และ วินเซนท์ กับ พาก สาว ๆ  
และ ครับ  
วินเซนท์: ผม จะ เอา เปียร์ สิงห์ เทเมือน กัน ขอ ขาด ใหญ่ นะ ครับ จ้อย  
จะ ดีม อะไร ครับ  
จ้อย: จ้อย เอา โอลีเย แล้ว แมว กับ นิกกี้ ดีม อะไร ละ  
นิกกี้: เอา น้ำ มะพร้าว ค่ะ  
แมว: ขอ ชา เย็น แก้ว

## **Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 10.2.**

thīi phättaakhaan .

*In/at a restaurant.*

naaj peeteu woof phaa lûuksâaw níkkûi kàp läan winseen lê? phûean phûean khöong níkkûi cój >  
*Mr. Peter Wolf to-lead daughter Nikki with nephew Vincent and friend friend of Nikki Joy >*

kàp mεew paj kin khâaw thîi ráan aahăan .

*with Maew to/to-go to-eat rice in shop food .*

níkkii: phii winseen khít thueng aahaan thaj māj >

Nikki: Older sibling Vincent to-think towards {to long for} food Thai [question part.] >

khá.

[polite particle *f.*] .

côj: phôo côj bòok wâa sàmăj níi mii ráan aahăan thaj >

*Joy: Father Joy (I) to-say that era/time this to-be-present shop food Thai >*

jéu?-jé? léew thîi júròop .

*many/much already in Europe.*

winseen: khun phôo khöong cój kheuj paj thiaw thîi jüròop rüe .

*Vincent:* Mr./Sir father of Joy ever to-go to-make-a-trip in Europe [yes-no question part.].

meeuw: phôo khöong cój tham-ngaan pen nák-bin khöong kaan-bin thaj. thän >

*Maew: Father of Joy to-work to-be pilot of airline Thai . He (polite) >*

paj maa thúk hön thúk hèŋg léew . cōj khej paj thiaw júròp maa léew dūaj .  
*to-go/to-come every place every place already . Joy ever to-go to-make-a-trip Europe to-come already also .*

côj: mĕε . côj khej paj loondon khráng nùeng mûea côj aajú >

*Joy: [expression of relativity]. Joy ever go/to London occasion one when Joy age >*

sìp-hâa pii . côj phák jùu sǒong wan léew kôo klàp .

*fifteen year . Joy (I) to-stay two day and/already also to-return .*

naaj peeteu: ( riák dèk seup) nōong . khōo meenuu nōoj >

*Mr. Peter: (to-call child to-serve) Younger sibling. To-ask menu a-little >*

ná? .

[emphatic part.].

dèk seup deun maa lé? sòng raajkaan aahääan hâj khon lá lêm .

*Child to-serve to-walk to-come and to-send/to-hand-over list food to-give/to person per [classifier for books, notebooks etc.].*

Vincent: Joy to-shall to-eat what [informal question part.] Joy to-like food spicy >

- măj .  
*[question part.] .*
- níkküi:  
 châj châj . cój chôop kin aahăan phèt con náam hŭu náam taa >  
*Nikki:* Yes yes . Joy to-love to-eat food spicy until water ear water eye >
- lăj rúu măj . phró? khun taa khöong cój >  
*to-flow to-know [question part.]. Because grandfather (mother's father) of Joy >*
- pen khon bangkhálaathêt .  
*to-be person Bangladesh .*
- cój:  
 măj-châj . thân maa càak sîl langkaa khâ . tèc nân măj >
- Joy:  
*No (not yes) . He to-come from Sri Lanka [polite part. f.]. But that not >*
- kìaw-kan leuj sà? nòoj .  
*to-have-something-to-do-with at-all a-bit a-little .*
- naaj peeteu:  
 níkküi jàa aw jâat phûu jàj khöong phûean maa lóo-lên >
- Mr. Peter:* Nikki don't to-take family person big of friend to-come to-make-jokes >
- sì . sàng aahăan kan dii kwàa .  
*[mitigating part.]. Order food together good [part. comparative degree] .*
- naaj peeteu ríak dèk seup maa ùik khráng ,>  
*Mr. Peter to-call child to-serve (young waiter/waitress) to-come again/yet time/occasion , >*
- lé? rêum sàng aahăan .  
*and to-start to-order food .*
- naaj peeteu:  
 aw kûng chêe náam plaa . súea róong hâj . lâap műu . >
- Mr. Peter:* To-take shrimp to-soak water fish . Tiger to-cry . Minced-meat-salad pork/pig >
- nüea náam-tòk ... léew aw àraj ùik . cój mæew winseen .  
*meat waterfall ... Already (and) to-take what more Joy Maew Vincent .*
- cój:  
 aw sôm tam lé? kàj jâang dûaj dâj >
- Joy:  
*To-take orange to-pound and chicken to-roast also to-can >*
- măj khâ .  
*[question part.] [polite part. f.] .*
- níkküi:  
 khöo khâaw níaw lé? khâaw súaj kô-léew-kan . keeng lueang mii >
- Nikki:* To-ask rice sticky and rice beautiful good-as-well . Curry yellow to-be-present >
- măj nóong .  
*[question part.] younger sibling .*
- dèk seup:  
 mii khâ .
- waitress:* To-be-present/to-have [polite part. f.] .
- winseen:  
 ngán aw dûaj . mæew aw àraj ùik khráp .
- Vincent:* to-take to-come also indeed . Maew to-take what again/more [polite part. m.] .

mæew:	thūi sàng maa mæew chôop tháng nán khâ . >
<i>Maew:</i>	<i>which to-order to-come Maew (I) to-like every thing [polite part. f.]. &gt;</i>
	thúk jàang man àroj .
	<i>every thing it tasty.</i>
dèk seup:	khun cà ráp khrûeang-dùem àraj măj khá .
<i>waitress:</i>	<i>You to-shall to-receive drink (n.) which [question part.]/[polite part. f.]</i>
naaj peete <u>eu</u> :	khöö bia sîng khùat nùeng ná nöong . léew >
<i>Mr. Peter:</i>	<i>To-ask beer Singha bottle (class.) one [emphatic part.] younger-sibling . And &gt;</i>
	winseen kàp phûak săaw săaw lá khráp .
	<i>Vincent with group girl girl what-about [polite part. m.] .</i>
winseen:	phöm cà aw bia sîng mûean-kan . khöö khùat jàj ná >
<i>Vincent:</i>	<i>I to-shall to-take beer Singha also . To-ask bottle large [emphatic part.] &gt;</i>
	khráp . côj cà dùem àraj khráp .
	<i>[polite part. m.] . Joy to-shall to-drink what [polite part m.]</i>
côj:	côj aw qolíang . léew mæew kàp níkkîi dùem
<i>Joy:</i>	<i>Joy (I) to-take iced-black-coffee . And/already Maew with/and Nikki to-drink &gt;</i>
	àraj lá .
	<i>what [reciprocal part. ('what about...')].</i>
níkkîi	aw náam máphráaw khâ .
<i>Nikki:</i>	<i>To-take water/juice coconut [polite part. f.].</i>
mæew	khöö chaa jen kêew .
<i>Maew:</i>	<i>To-ask tea cold glass..</i>

## cd 1b Vocabulary track 9



ข้าว

ภัตตาкар

phatthaakhaan

(large) restaurant (elegant language)

พา

phaa

to take, to lead (persons)

กิน

kin

to eat

ข้าว

khâaw

rice

กิน ข้าว

kin khâaw

to eat (literally: 'to eat rice')

ร้าน

ráan

shop

ร้านอาหาร

ráan aah  an

restaurant (common language)

ทาน

thaan

to eat (elegant language)

อาหาร

aah  an

food



ยุโรป



นักบิน



ลอนดอน

สมัย นี้	sàmăj ní	in this time, contemporary
บอก	bòok	to say
ยุโรป	júròop*	Europe
เยอะ มาก	jéu? jé?	a lot; much; many
เคย	khe <u>uj</u>	ever
เที่ยว	thiaw	1. to go out; 2. to go on holiday
ไป เที่ยว	paj thiaw	1. to go out; 2. to go on holiday
ทำงาน	tham-ngaan	to work
ทำงาน เป็น	tham-ngaan pen	to work as ...
บิน	bin	to fly
นักบิน	nák bin	pilot
ของ	khöong	of, belonging to; <i>here</i> : for
การบิน	kaan bin	airline
ไป มา	paj maa	to and fro, again and again (also: ไปๆ มาๆ)
ทุก หน ทุก แห่ง	thúk hón thúk hèeng	everywhere (idiom)
ไป ... มา	paj ... maa	to (just) come from
แหม	m��e	exclamation expressing mild surprise or mild irritation
ลอนดอน	loondon	London
ครั้ง เดียว	khr��ang diaw	one time (also: ครั้ง หนึ่ง - khr��ang n��ueng)
เมื่อ	m��ea	1. when; 2. if
อายุ	aaj��	age
สิบ ห้า	s��ip h��aa	fifteen
ได้	d��aj	<i>here</i> : particle to form past tense
ได้ พัก อยู่	d��aj ph��ak j��u	(ever) stayed
กลับ (มา)	kl��ap (maa)	to come back
เด็ก	d��ek	child
เลิร์ฟ	s��up	to serve
เด็ก เลิร์ฟ	d��ek s��up	young waiter or waitress



น้อง	nóong	1.younger sibling; 2. informal form of address for a person younger than the speaker
ขอ ... หน่อย	khoo ... nòoj	(I) would like... (when ordering)
เมนู	meenuu	menu
นะ	ná?	particle for mollification or light emphasis
เดิน	deun	to walk
เดิน มา	deun maa	to walk in the direction of the speaker or the subject
เด็ก เลิร์ฟ	sòng ... hâj	1. to send (to); 2. to hand over (to)
รายการ	raajkaan	list

รายการ อาหาร	raajkaan aahăan	menu
คน ละ	khon lá	per person
เล่ม	lêm	classifier for books, notebooks, knives and oxcarts
จะ	cà?	to shall; particle for direct future tense
จะ	cá?	intimate variant of ครับ (khráp), นะ (khá)



คุณ ตา	ชอบ	chôop	to like
	เผ็ด	phèt	spicy, hot
	จน	con	so that; until
	น้ำ	náam*, nám	water
	ตา (1)	taa	eye
	น้ำ หู	náam hŭu	earwax ('ear water')
	น้ำ ตา	náam taa	tear, tears
	ไหล	läj	to flow, to stream
	จน น้ำ หู น้ำ ตา ไหล	con náam hŭu náam taa läj	until (it) drives you (her, him) to tears; until breaking out in tears
	เพราะ	phró?	because
ชอบ	ตา (2)	taa	grandfather (mother's father)



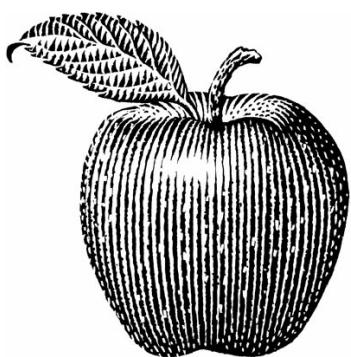


ตา (1)

คุณ ตา	khun taa	grandfather (respectful)
บังคลาเทศ	bangkhálaathéet	Bangladesh
รู้	rúu	to know
ท่าน	thân*	You (honorific; very polite)
ศรี ลังกา	síi langkaa	Sri Lanka
ไม่ เกี่ยว	mâj kiaw	not to be concerned with, not to be involved with
ไม่ เกี่ยว กับ ...	mâj kiaw kàp ...	to have nothing to do with
ไม่ เกี่ยว กัน	mâj kiaw kan	to have nothing to do with each other
เลย	<u>leuj</u>	1. to pass, to surpass ; 2. as a consequence; 3. in the least, at all (in negative sentences); 4. cannot but; 5. (might) as well
อย่า	jàa	don't (in an order or a suggestion)
อย่า เอ้า ... มา	jàa ... aw maa	don't come up with; don't use ... (something for doing/saying something)
ญาติ	jâat	family
ญาติ ผู้ใหญ่	jâat phûu jàj	older family members
ล้อ เล่น	lóo lén	to make jokes; to make fun; to joke
สั่ง	sàng	to order
กัน	kan	1. together, each other; 2. all together
ดี กว่า	dii kwàa	better
เรียก ... มา	rîak ... maa	to call (someone) to come over
เรียก	rîak	1. to call
ครั้ง	khráng	time, occasion
เริ่ม	rêum	to begin
ข้าว เนียน	khâaw níaw	sticky rice
ข้าว สวาย	khâaw súaj	steamed white rice
ก็	kô; kôo	1. subsequently; afterwards; 2. then; 3. indicator for an idea or a consequence;



ญาติ



อร่อย

กี แล้ว กัน

kô lêew kan

4. quite, rather; 5. yet, nevertheless; 6. whatever; 7. whether

แกง

kêeng

1. also, too; 2. (also) 'all right, let's take (do; fix) ... too<sup>11</sup>

แกง เหลือง

kêeng lüeang

Southern Thai fish curry

อีก

ìik

1. more; 2. again; 3. other, another; 4. else; 5. as well; 6. yet

ทุก

thûk

all, every

ทุก อาย่าง

thûk jàang

everything

ลั่ง มา

sàng maa

to order (in the direction of the speaker or the subject)

ทั้งนั้น

thângnan

all, every; everything

อร่อย

àroj

tasty, delicious

มาก

mâak

1. much, many, a lot; 2. very

รับ

ráp

1. to take; to get; 2. to receive

เครื่อง ติ่ม

เครื่อง

khrûeang

1. machine; 2. tool; 3. article, thing; 4. instrument

เครื่อง ติ่ม

khrûeang dùem

drink, beverage

เบียร์

bia

beer

เบียร์ สิงห์

bia sîng

Singha beer; a popular beer brewed in Thailand

ขวด

khùat

bottle

แล้ว ... ละ

lêew ... lá

and what about...

พวກ หญิงสาว

phûak jîng sâaw

(group of) girls, young ladies

ใหญ่

jàj

big, large

โอลีฟ

oölíang

iced black coffee

น้ำมะพร้าว

nám máphráaw

coconut juice

ขวด

ชา เย็น

chaa jen

iced milk tea

<sup>11</sup> 'กี แล้ว กัน' is a particle used when suggesting a compromise or a solution, or that implies that a decision has been made.

**Translation of dialogue 10.2.**

**In the restaurant**

Mr. Peter Wolf takes his daughter Nikki, his nephew Vincent, and Nikki's friends: Joy and Maew out to dinner (lit. 'out to eat') in a restaurant.

- Nikki: Vincent, did you miss the Thai food?  
Joy: My father says that there are a whole lot of Thai restaurants in Europe nowadays.  
Vincent: Has your father ever been on a trip to Europe, then?  
Maew: Joy's father works as a pilot for Thai Airways. He has already been everywhere. Joy has also been on holiday in Europe, once.  
Joy: Oh, I've only been to London once. When I was fifteen years old, I've stayed there for two days and then came back.  
Mr. Peter: (calls the waitress) Miss, we would like to have a menu.

The waitress walks toward them and gives each of them a menu.

- Vincent: Joy, what are you going to have? Do you like spicy food?  
Nikki: Yes, yes! Joy likes food that's so hot that the sweat runs out of her ears and the tears run down her cheeks. Because Joy's grandfather is a Bangladeshi, did you know that?  
Joy: He's from Sri Lanka, but that has really nothing at all to do with it.  
Mr. Peter: Nikki, don't make jokes about your friends elder family members, will you? We'd better order something to eat.

Mr. Peter calls the waitress once more, and starts to order their food.

- Mr. Peter: We'll take 'kung chae nam plaa', 'suea rong hai', 'laap muu', 'nuea nam tok' and eh... What else are you going to order, Joy, Maew, Vincent?  
Joy: Can I take 'som tam' and 'kai jaang', too?  
Nikki: We would like sticky rice and some steamed rice would be O.K., too. Do you have 'kaeng lueang'?  
Waitress: Yes, we have.  
Vincent: Then, we'll take that, too. Maew, what'll you have?  
Maew: I like everything that you ordered already. Everything is delicious!  
Waitress: Would you like anything to drink?  
Mr. Peter: I would like to have a bottle of Singha beer, miss. And you, Vincent? And what about you, ladies?  
Vincent: A Singha beer, too, please. I would like a large bottle. What would you like to drink, Joy?  
Joy: I'll have an iced black coffee. Maew and Nikki, what about you?  
Nikki: I'll have coconut milk  
Maew: A glass of iced milk tea please.

**ອະເມນຸ ລາ**

ກຸງ ແຊ່ ນໍາ ປລາ (kûng chêe nám plaa)

raw, de-shelled shrimps, smothered in lime juice and fish sauce, served with chilies, mint and lemongrass.

ເລືອ ຮອງ ໄທ (suea róong hâj)

'crying tiger'; very spicy dish of grilled strips

**ອະເມນຸ ລາ**

ลาบ หมู	(lâap mûu)	of meat, marinated in ginger, chilies and lime juice.
เนื้อ น้ำ ตก	(núea nám tòk)	very spicy salad of minced, lightly fried pork, with chilies, lime juice, fish sauce mint and spring onions.
ส้ม ตำ	(sôm tam)	‘waterfall meat’; grilled strips of meat marinated in lime juice and ground black pepper, fried and sprinkled with pounded, dry-fried rice.
ไก่ ย่าง	(kàj jâang)	spicy, fresh salad of grated green papaya with chilies, pickled field crab and fermented fish paste.
ข้าว เน็นyaw	(khâaw níaw)	also ไก่ ปิ้ง (kàj pîng) or ปิ้ง ไก่ (pîng kàj); chicken marinated in garlic, coriander root, black pepper and fish sauce, grilled over a low charcoal fire.
ข้าว สวย	(khâaw súaj)	sticky rice. A special type of rice, steamed in plaited bamboo steamers over an earthen pot with boiling water. Popular in Northern and North-eastern Thailand.
แกง เหลือง	(keèng lüéang)	steamed white rice (often ข้าว หอม มะลิ (khâaw hoom málí), jasmine rice)
เบียร์ สิงห์	(bia sîng)	a Southern Thai curry of fish, squash, pineapple, green beans and green papaya. Very spicy.
		Singha beer; strong Thai beer with a hoppy taste.

### 10.3 Idioms

เข้าไปทุก หน ทุก แห่ง แล้ว (khăw paj thûk hón thûk hèeng lêew) ‘He has been everywhere and to every place’: หน (hón) and แห่ง (hèeng) both mean ‘place’. By the use of both words, rhythm and alliteration enliven the expression. Compare the English expression ‘busy as a bee’.

แก (keè) means ‘you’, ‘he’ or ‘she’. As a personal pronoun in the second person, it is an informal pronoun used between equals. As a personal pronoun in the third person, it is used to refer to friends. It can also be used to refer to older persons one is familiar with.

ขอ (khoo) ‘to ask’. The word is also used in placing orders in a restaurant, and is equivalent to ‘I would like a...’, ‘A ... please’ Polite.

(ຈະ) เอ& [(cà) aw] ‘to take’. This word is also used during ordering in restaurants, but is more informal. ‘I’ll have...’.

ແລະ (lé?) and ກົບ (kàp, kà?) both mean ‘and’. ແລະ (lé?) means ‘and’, ‘added to’ and is mostly used to combine two things or persons which are not automatically associated with one another. ກົບ (kàp, kà?) means ‘and’; ‘with’, and is used to connect things and persons which are felt as being more or less automatically connected to one another.

ເສື່ອ (sá; sía), sometimes also written as ສະ (sá), always follows the predicate. There is no exact translation into English. It often indicates a sense of being rid of or a sense of loss, and it influences the mood of the whole expression in which it is used. Sometimes the word can be translated with ‘completely’ or ‘at all’, but in most cases it is untranslatable. ເສື່ອ (sía)/ສະ (sá) is one of those words, or rather expressions (to be more exact) which makes us realize that the idea behind the Thai language is in essence different from the idea behind English. There are more than several of these untranslatable words and phrases which only indicate a mood or a certain situation. You will encounter many more of them during your study.

Don’t confuse this word with the homographic but heterophonic ‘ເສື່ອ’ (always pronounced ‘sía’), which has a whole range of meanings: ‘to deteriorate’, ‘to spoil’, ‘to rot’, ‘to die (polite)’, ‘to lose’, ‘to suffer’, ‘to be damaged’, ‘to waste’, ‘to use up’, ‘to spend’, and ‘to pay’

ເຂົາ ຈະ ໄມ່ ມາ ເສື່ອ ແລ້ວ  
khăw cà māj maa sá lēw

*he to-shall no/not to-come sá already*  
‘He will probably not come at all anymore.’

ເຮືອ ມີ ແພນ ຊະ ດ້ວຍ  
theu mii feen sá dùaj

*She to-have boyfriend/girlfriend sá also*  
‘She has (alas) a boyfriend already.’

ໝ່າ ມັນ ເສື່ອ ດີ ກວ່າ  
khâa man sá dii kwàa

*To-kill it/him sá good [particle for comparative degree]*  
‘It is better to kill him off.’

The word is also used in combination with ເມື່ອໄຣ (mûearaj) - ‘when’ and ທີ່ (thii) - ‘time (classifier)’, ‘turn’ to indicate impatience or offence:

ເມື່ອໄຣ ຈະ ໃປ ເສື່ອ ທີ່  
mûearaj cà paj sá thii

*when to-shall to-go sá time*  
‘When shall we go at last?’

## 10.4 Grammar

### a. Meanings of the word ໄດ້ (dâj)

In the course of your study, you have encountered some meanings of the word ໄດ້ (dâj) along with its position within a sentence. The following list sums them up:

1. **ได้** (dâj): ‘to can’, ‘to be able to’. Auxiliary verb, placed at the end of a sentence, but in front of the question particle and the polite particle:

**ติวัน พูด ภาษาไทย ได้ ค่ะ**  
 dîchân phûut phaaśāa thaj dâj khâ .  
*I [f.] to-speak language Thai dâj [polite particle f.].*  
 ‘I can speak Thai.’

2. **ได้** (dâj): ‘to obtain’. Placed in front of the object:

**เขา ทำงาน จน ได้ เลื่อน ตำแหน่ง สูง ขึ้น**  
 khâw thamngaan con dâj lüean tamneeng sǔung khûen .  
*He/she to-work until dâj to-change position/rank high to-go-up.*  
 ‘He worked until he got a better position.’

3. **ได้** (dâj): Indicates an action in the past. Placed in front of the verb phrase:

**เมื่อ กี้ นี้ เขา ได้ ส่ง จดหมาย ไป แล้ว**  
 mûea-kîi-níi khâw dâj sòng còdmääaj paj lêew .  
*A-moment-ago he dâj to-send letter go/to already.*  
 ‘He has just sent the letter out.’

4. **ได้** (dâj): Means: ‘Yes, it’s possible’.

**ทำได้**  
 tham dâj .  
*to-do dâj.*  
 ‘Yes, it can be done’ (‘I/you/he/she can do it’)

## b. The negation (continued)

1. **ไม่ได้** (mâj dâj) + verb; **ไม่ใช่** (mâj châj) + noun

The construction **ไม่ได้** (mâj dâj) + verb is used to:

- a. Form the negative of the past tense with verbs of action and statement:

<b>ผม ไม่ได้ ไป ทำงาน</b>	<i>I <u>mâj dâj</u> to-go/to work</i>
phôm mâj dâj paj tham-ngaan	‘I didn’t go to work.’
<b>เขา ไม่ได้ พูด อย่าง นั้น</b>	<i>He <u>mâj dâj</u> to-speak/to-say thing/as that</i>
khâw mâj dâj phûut jiāang nán	‘He hasn’t said that’; ‘He didn’t say that’

- b. To contradict a supposition (in combination with **เปล่า** (plàaw) - ‘no’):

<b>เขา ออยู่ บ้าน หรือ</b>	<i>He to-stay house [question part. yes/no question]</i>
khâw jìu bâan rüe	‘Is he home? (Is he in the house?)’

เปล่า ไม่ ได้ อญ្យ  
plàaw . mâj dâj jùu

No . mâj dâj to-stay  
'No, he is not there.'

- c. To negate the verbs ชื่อ (chûe) - 'to be named' and เป็น (pen) - 'to be':

เข้า ไม่ ได้ ชื่อ จินตนา  
khâw mâj dâj chûe cintànaa

*She* mâj dâj to-be-named Jintana  
'Her name is not Jintana.'

เข้า ไม่ ได้ เป็น ฝรั่ง  
khâw mâj dâj pen fâràng

*He* mâj dâj to-be white-foreigner  
'He is not a (white) foreigner.'

The construction ไม่ ใช่ (mâj châj) + noun is used to negate affirmative sentences in which the verbs คือ (khue) - 'to be', 'to be equal to' and เป็น (pen) - 'to be' are used:

ตัว นี่ ไม่ ใช่ หมา  
tua nîi mâj châj măa

[classifier for animals] this mâj châj  
dog  
'This is not a dog.'

ผม เป็น คน อังกฤษ ไม่ ใช่ เยอรมัน  
phöm pen khon angkritic mâj châj jeuráman

*I* to-be person England mâj châj  
Germany  
'I am an Englishman; not a German.'

## 2. Intensifying or mitigating negations:

A negation is intensified or mitigated (softened) by putting ไม่ in front of the clause which is negated and the modifier (intensifying or mitigating adverb) behind it:

Intensifying modifiers are:

ไม่ ... แน่  
mâj ... nêe

*No/not ... certainly*  
'certainly not'

ผม ไม่ ไป แน่  
phöm mâj paj nêe

*I no/not to-go certainly*  
'I'm certainly not going.'

ไม่ ... (โดย) เดี๊ดขาด  
mâj (dôoj) dètkhàat

*no/not ... absolutely*  
'absolutely not'

ฉัน ไม่ ขอ ให้ (โดย) เดี๊ดขาด  
chân mâj paj (dôoj) dètkhàat

*I no/not to-ask to-give/for absolutely*  
'I certainly won't ask that (for you).'

ไม่ ... เลย  
mâj ... leuj

*No/not utterly*  
'utterly not' ('not at all')

คน นี่ ไม่ ฉลาด เลย  
khon níi māj chàlāat leūj

*Person this no/not intelligent utterly*  
'This man/woman is not intelligent at all.'

ไม่ ... แม้ แต่ (classifier) เดียว  
māj ... mée tèe (classifier) diaw

*No/not even (classifier) single*  
'Not even a single...'

ไม่ มี ใคร มา แม้ แต่ คน เดียว  
māj mii khraj maa mée tèe khon diaw

*No/not to-have/to-be-present someone to-come even [classifier for people] single*  
'Nobody came, not even a single person'

ไม่ ... แม้ แต่ (adjective) เดียว  
māj ... mée tèe (adjective) diaw

*No/not even (adjective) a little*  
'Not even a little...'

เขา ไม่ อาย แม้ แต่ นิด เดียว  
khaw māj aaj mée tèe nít diaw

*He no/not bashful even a-little single*  
'He's not even a little shy.'

#### Mitigating modifiers are:

ไม่ (ค่ออย) ... เท่าไร  
māj (khōj) ... thâwraj

*No/not (comparatively) ... so-much/how-much*  
'Not very'

ผอม ไม่ (ค่ออย) รัก เธอ เท่าไร  
phōm māj (khōj) rák theu thâwraj

*I no/not (comparatively) to-love she so-much/how-much*  
'I don't love her so much.'

ไม่ (ค่ออย) ... นัก  
māj (khōj) ... nák

*No/not (comparatively) ... so-much/how-much*  
'not very'

เที่ยว ไม่ (ค่ออย) สนุก นัก  
thîaw māj khōj sàñùk nák

*Trip/outing no/not merry/cheerful much*  
'The trip hasn't been much fun.'

ไม่ สู้ ... นัก  
māj súu ... nák

*No/not (quite) ... so much*  
'not quite so much'; 'not very much'

เข้า ไม่ (สู้) ฉลาด นัก  
khaw māj súu chàlāat nák

*He/she no/not quite clever so-much*  
'He is not very smart.'

Notice that ไม่ ค่ออย (māj khōj) is also used without modifiers:

เข้า ไม่ ค่ออย ฉลาด  
khaw māj khōj chàlāat

*He/she no/not quite intelligent*  
'He is not quite so intelligent'; 'He's not very smart.'

### 3. The causative and its negation

A causative can be compared to an English construction with ‘to let’, ‘to make’. In Thai, causatives are formed with the verbs ทำ (tham - ‘to make’), ให้ (hâj - ‘to give’, ‘to let’) or ทำให้ (tham hâj - ‘to let’). They are negated in a specific manner [Take notice: The words ให้ (hâj) and ทำ (tham) also have other meanings and functions]:

a. Subject (human or non-human) + ทำ (tham) + (inanimate) Object + Verb:

เข้า ทำ กระจก แตก	<i>He to-make mirror to-break</i>
khăw tham krâcòk tèek	‘He makes the mirror break’ (‘He broke the mirror’)
เด็กๆ ทำ บ้าน เปื้อน	<i>Children to-make house dirty</i>
dèk dèk tham bâan pûean	‘The children made the house dirty.’

Other verbs that can be formed according to this pattern are for instance:

ทำ ... ตก	tham ... tòk	to drop (to let fall)
ทำ ... เสีย	tham ... sia	to damage, to break (to make damaged)
ทำ ... หล่น	tham ... lòn	to drop (to let fall (from somewhere))
ทำ ... หลุด	tham ... lùt	to let slip
ทำ ... หก	tham ... hòk	to spill (to let spill)
ทำ ... หัก	tham ... hàk	to break (to make broken (in pieces))
ทำ ... หาย	tham ... hâaj	to lose (to make lost)

The negation of these verbs will usually indicate a past tense. Therefore, their negative is formed by putting ไม่ได้ (mâj dâj) in front of ทำ (tham). The word combination ไม่ได้ (mâj dâj) here conveys both *emphasis* and a *negative past tense*:

เข้า ไม่ ได้ ทำ กระจก แตก	<i>He no/not to-make mirror to-break</i>
khăw mâj dâj tham krâcòk tèek	‘He didn’t break the mirror.’
เออ ไม่ ได้ ทำ นม หก	<i>She no/not to-make milk spill</i>
theu mâj dâj tham nom hòk	‘She hasn’t spilled the milk.’

b. Subject (human) + ให้ (hâj) + (animate) Object + Verb:

In the following constructions, ให้ (hâj) can mean: ‘To make someone do something’ or ‘To force or engage someone to do something’:

ผู้ จะ ให้ เออ ไป ด้วย	<i>I to-shall ให้ you to-go also</i>
phöm cà hâj theu paj dùaj	‘I shall let you go, too.’; ‘I’ll take you (there) also.’

ผอม ให้ เธอ ไป ซื้อ ของ  
phǒm hâj theu paj súe khōong

*I ให้ you to-go to-buy thing*  
'I let you do the shopping'; (also in the sense of:  
'I let you decide what you need...')

The negative in this construction is formed by putting **ไม่** (mâj) in front of **ให้** (hâj):

ผอม ไม่ ให้ เธอ ไป ซื้อ ของ  
phǒm mâj hâj theu paj súe khōong

*I no/not ให้ you to-buy things*  
'I won't let you do the shopping' (also in the  
sense of: 'I don't want you to...')

**ให้** (hâj) also occurs as a fixed part of certain verbs that indicate a sense of cause and effect:

ให้ ... เกิด	hâj keut	to cause
ให้ ... ยืม	hâj juem	to lend
ให้ ... เช่า	hâj châw	to rent out

### c. The causative in combination with a specifying verb:

A specifying verb is a verb which links itself to a clause of specification, like in English 'to say that...' (clause of definition). In combination with a clause of definition, the word **ให้** (hâj) is put behind the verb:

บอก ให้	bòok hâj	to say that
ขอ ให้	khōo hâj	to ask to
สั่ง ให้	sàng hâj	to order to
ยอม ให้	joom hâj	to consent to, to allow to
เตือน ให้	tuean hâj	to warn
อนุญาต ให้	ànújâat hâj	to permit to

Note that negative specifying verbs use a double negative. The word **ไม่** is used to emphasize the negative:

ปฏิเสธ ไม่ ให้	pàtisèet mâj hâj	to refuse to
ห้าม ไม่ ให้	hâam mâj hâj	to forbid to

The negation of a specifying verb can be formed in three ways:

#### c.1. Subject (human) + Specifying Verb + **ไม่ ให้** (mâj hâj) + (Animate) Object + Verb Clause:

เข้า บอก ผอม ไม่ ให้ ไป กรุงเทพฯ  
khâw bòok phǒm mâj hâj phǒm paj krungthêep

*He to-say I ไม่ ให้ to-go/to Bangkok*  
'He says (that) he won't let me go to  
Bangkok.'

ผอม ปฏิเสธ ไม่ ให้ เธอ ดื่ม เหล้า  
phǒm pàtisèt mâj hâj theu duem lâw

*I to-refuse ไม่ให้ you to-drink liquor*  
'I refuse to let you drink liquor.'

c.2. Subject (human) + Specifying Verb + (Animate) Object + ไม่ให้ (mâj hâj) + Verb Clause:

เข้า บอก ผอม ไม่ ให้ ไป กรุงเทพฯ  
khăw bòok phǒm mâj hâj paj krungthêep

*He to-say I ไม่ให้ to-go Bangkok*  
'He says he won't let me go to Bangkok.'

ผอม ห้าม เธอ ไม่ ให้ ดื่ม เหล้า  
phǒm hâam theu mâj hâj duem lâw

*I to-forbid you ไม่ให้ to-drink liquor*  
'I forbid you to drink liquor.'

(Please notice the double negation in the last examples of c.1. and c.2. (to refuse + 'no/not'; 'to forbid + 'no/not')

c.3. Subject (human) + ไม่ (mâj) + Specifying Verb + ให้ (hâj) + (Animate) Object + Noun Phrase

ผอม ไม่ ยอม ให้ น้อง สava ไป ตลาด คนเดียว  
phǒm mâj joom hâj nóong sâaw paj tâlât khon diaw

*I ไม่ to-allow ให้ younger-sister to-go/to market person single*  
'I won't allow my sister to go to the market alone.'

d. Subject (human or non-human) + ทำให้ (tham hâj) + Object + Verb:

This pattern indicates a certain intention or compulsion to do or cause something as a result of the initial subject or phrase:

เจ้า โน่ นั้น ทำ ให้ ดิฉัน ปวด หัว  
câw ngôo nán tham hâj đichǎn pùat húa  
อากาศ ร้อน ทำ ให้ เธอ รู้สึก สบาย  
aakàat róon tham hâj theu rúusùek sàbaaj

In the negation of this structure, ไม่ (mâj) is put in front of ทำให้ (tham hâj):

อากาศ ร้อน ไม่ ทำ ให้ เธอ รู้สึก สบาย  
aakàat róon mâj tham hâj theu rúusùek sàbaaj

person/being stupid that ทำให้ I to-ache head  
'That idiot gives me a headache.'

weather warm ทำให้ she to-feel comfortable  
'Warm weather makes her feel good.'

weather warm no/not ทำให้ she to-feel comfortable  
'Warm weather doesn't make her feel good.'

#### 4. Saying ‘No’

Every question particle has its own negative answer. The most frequently used question particles and their correct negative answers follow below:

Ending of the question:		negative answer:
... ไหม (มั้ย)	... mǎj (máj)	ไม่ (mâj) + verb
... หรือ (เหรอ, เหลอ, รึ)	... rüe (rěu, lěu, rúe)	ไม่ (mâj)
		ไม่ (mâj) + verb
		เปล่า (plàaw)
... ใช่ ไหม	... châj mǎj	ไม่ใช่ (mâj châj)
		ไม่ เชิง (mâj cheung)
... แล้ว หรือ ยัง	... léew rüe jang	ยัง (jang)
		ยัง ไม่ (jang mâj) + verb
... หรือ เปล่า (รี เปล่า)	... rüe plàaw (rúe plàaw)	เปล่า (plàaw)
... นะ	... ná	ไม่ (mâj) + verb

#### 5. Negative conditional clauses

A conditional clause introduces an expression in which a condition is stipulated. The first word of such a clause is a conjunction such as ‘if’, a word for which there are several expressions in Thai: ถ้า หาก ว่า (thâa hàak wâa); หาก ว่า (hàak wâa); หาก แต่ ว่า (hàak tèe wâa). The words for ‘if’ are often omitted. Negative conditional clauses use the following pattern:

(ถ้า) ไม่ อาย่าง นั้น ... - (thâa) mâj jàang nán ... - ‘otherwise...’, ‘if not...’

(ถ้า) ไม่ อาย่าง นั้น ผม ไป ก่อน นะ  
mâj jàang nán phóm paj kòon ná

Otherwise I to-go before [emphatic particle]  
‘Otherwise, I’ll go first, all right?’

(ถ้า) ไม่ อายาก ... ก็ ไม่ ต้อง ...  
(thâa) mâj jàak ... kô mâj tóng - ‘if (you)  
don’t want to, (you) don’t have to’

ไม่ อายาก ไป เที่ยว ก็ ไม่ ต้อง มา รับ  
(thâa) mâj jàak paj thiaw kô mâj tóng  
maa ráp

No/not to-want to-go to-go-out then no/not  
to-must to-come to-pick-up  
‘If (you) don’t want to go out, then (you)  
don’t have to come to pick me up.’

(ถ้า) ไม่ ... ก็ ... - (*thâa)mâj... kôo... - if (you) not ... then ...*

ไม่ จ่าย ก็ ช่วย ไม่ ได้

mâj càaj kôo chûaj mâj dâj

No/not to-pay then to-help no/not to-can

'If you don't pay, I can't help you (I can't do anything for you)'

(ถ้า) ไม่ ใช่ ... ก็ ... - (*thâa)mâj châj... kôo... - if not ... then ...*

ไม่ ใช่ หนึ่ง ร้อย ก็ เอา ห้า สิบ

mâj châj nùeng róoj kô aw hâa sìp

No/not one hundred then to-take fifty

'If not a hundred, then I'll take fifty'

## 10.5 Cultural note

Especially in urban areas, the Thais take their meals at roadside stands and restaurants just as often as they eat at home. The food at the stands and the mobile restaurants at the markets, and the ones you'll find at fixed times of the day on their spots near universities, schools and office buildings - is priced so reasonably, that one often pays less for a healthy and delicious meal at a stall than for one at home, if one would buy the ingredients at the market and cook for oneself. The quality of the food in Thailand is always high: a stall-owner or hawker who sells bad food would be out of business in a day.

There are restaurants of all sorts in Thailand, and their nature is often obvious at first sight. A large building with a façade of real or fake timber, and adornments of buffalo skulls and wooden Indians is a restaurant where they play 'Songs for Life' (เพลง เพื่อ ชีวิต - phleeng phûea chiiwít). Every night, there will be a performance of a more or less famous Thai folk-rock group. If you were lucky you could chance upon a session by veteran Songs-for-Life band: Carabao of Caravan.

A long and narrow room with an open front, filled with formica tables and plastic chairs, where young waiters hurry to and fro serving bowls and plates of food is not seldom a lunch- or dinner spot where specialties are served by renowned cooks. Restaurants festooned with colored lamps are often a bit more luxurious establishments where gentlemen are treated to a selection of pretty female singers. In many cases, the singers can be 'bought out' for a private nocturnal adventure, but only if she approves of her temporary suitor. A visitor can lay claims to the charms of the singer he thinks cutest by buying garlands of plastic flowers and placing those around her neck.

European style cafes and pubs that are purely built for the convenience of imbibers of alcoholic beverages are rare in Thailand. The Thai do imbibe, for sure, but they always do this during a cozy outing with a group of good friends in an appropriate restaurant. Next to drinking, eating (a lot) is one of the main purposes of such an undertaking. It isn't strange to enter a restaurant for supper and be seated next go a small gathering of gentlemen who have obviously already been feasting in style since early afternoon. It will not only show by the behavior and the purple faces of the group, but also by a great quantity of empty bottles, kept in serried ranks under their table, as well as the puddles of melted ice, shrimp heads, crab shells, ashtrays full of small bones and cigarette butts, and the tools of the Thai drinker: Ice bucket, ice clamp, bottled water, soda, plenty of glasses and a large bottle of Maekhong.

A large restaurant (a กัดตากา - pháttaakhaan) is often a Chinese or a seafood restaurant. It often is much larger than a simple ร้านอาหาร - ráan aahăan, and it always has an extensive menu. A ‘pháttaakhaan’ is an ideal place to invite a large company of guests, colleagues, business relations, family, Party Members, etcetera. It was a very good idea of Mr. Wolf to invite his nephew and his daughter – plus her lady friends – to a restaurant like this.

## 10.6 Writing IV. The consonants ນ - ຂ

Consonant	Name of the Consonant	Pronunciation at initial position of a syllable	Pronunciation at final position of a syllable
ນ	ມ-ມ້າ moo máa	m	m
ຢ	ຍ-ຢັກຈີ່ joo ják	j	j
ຮ	ຮ-ເຮືອ roo ruea	r	n
ລ	ລ-ລົງ loo ling	l	n
ວ	ວ-ແຫວນ woo w��en	w	w
ສ	ສ-ສາລາ s��o s��alaa	s	t'
ຜ	ຜ-ຖາມີ s��o rues��i	s	t'
ສ	ສ-ເສືອ s��o s��uea	s	t'
ຫ	ຫ-ຫີບ h��o h��ip	h	Only with <i>kaaran</i>
ີ	ີ-ຈຸ່າ loo c��ulaa	l	n
ອ	ອ-ອ່າງ oo àang	1. vowel bearer 2. a-, o-, oo-	oo
ຂ	ຂ-ນກຫຼູກ hoo nókh��uk	h	Only with <i>kaaran</i> ; <i>in loan words</i>

### The meaning of the names of the consonants:

ນ້າ	‘horse’
ຢັກໜີ່	‘giant’, ‘ogre’
ເຮືອ	‘ship’
ລົງ	‘monkey’
ແຫວນ	‘ring’
ມາຈາ	‘pavilion’
ຖາມີ່	‘hermit’
ເລືອ	‘tiger’
ທີບ	‘chest’, ‘box’
ຈຸພາ	‘male kite’
ອ່າງ	‘large water vessel’, ‘basin’, ‘tub’
ນກຫຼູກ	‘owl’

## 10.7 Exercises

### Exercise 1

Answer the following questions. Formulate and write your answers down in Thai. Use the transcription method used in the course:

1. Who says that there are a lot of Thai restaurants in Europe?
2. Has Joy ever been to Europe?
3. Does Joy like spicy food?
4. Why is that, according to Nikki?
5. Which dishes does Mr. Wolf order?
6. Why doesn't Maew order any food??
7. What do Peter and Vincent drink with their meal?
8. And what is the order of the young ladies?

### Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into Thai. Use the transcription method used in the course:

1. Peter Wolf likes Thai food.
2. Joy walks towards Nikki.
3. In Bangkok the people love Thai food.
4. We are going to eat in a restaurant.

5. Mr. Wolf orders food for his nephew.
  6. Vincent really enjoys Singha beer.
  7. Mr. Wolf works in Thailand.
  8. Nikki likes good food.

### *Exercise 3*

*Put the words of the following sentences into the right order and translate:*



### *Exercise 4*

*Fill in the right word and translate:*

khöong dùem seuf pen dûaj nam jǐngsǎaw thaan phûut jâat jéu?jé?

1. phôo ... mœew mâj maa .
  2. khăw mâj chôop ... bia .
  3. dèk ... mâj kin khâaw nǐaw .
  4. côj ... phûean khöong níkkii .
  5. lâap müu pen aahăan phèt ... .
  6. naaj peeteu ... lăan lë? ... săam khon paj ... aahăan .
  7. khăw ... lĕn kìaw kàp ... phöm .
  8. khăw chôop kin aahăan ... .

### *Exercise 5*

Write the letters you have learned in this lesson down a couple of times. Start at the highest or left-most little circle (ᡥ - hǔa). Relax your writing hand, and assume the writing pose you are most comfortable in. Pronounce the sound of each letter - and its name - every time you write it down. Do this until you have the feeling that you know the letters by heart, and then write them down again, twenty to thirty times. After that, pronounce each letter again while looking at its shape. After the pronunciation exercise, write each letter down again a few dozen times. Relax your hand, and put your pen on the paper in the same way as you do when you write your name.

ມ ຍ ວ ລ

ວ ຕ ປ ສ

ກ ພ ອ ຜ

## 10.8 Answers to exercises 1 and 2

### *Exercise 1*

1. phôo khöong cōj bòok wâa thîi júrðøp mii ráan aahăan thaj mâak .  
๑. พ่อ ของ จ้อย บอก ว่า ที่ ยุโรป มี ร้าน อาหาร ไทย มาก
2. châj . cōj kheeuj paj thîaw júrðøp lëew .  
๒. ใช่ จ้อย เคย ไป เที่ยว ยุโรป แล้ว
3. châj . cōj chôop kin aahăan phèt .  
๓. ใช่ จ้อย ชอบ กิน อาหาร เผ็ด
4. níkkûi khít wâa cōj chôop kin aahăan phèt phró? taa khöong cōj pen khon bangkhálaathêet .  
๔. นิกกี้ คิด ว่า จ้อย ชอบ กิน อาหาร เผ็ด เพราะ ต้า ของ จ้อย เป็น คน บังคลาเทศ
5. peeteeu woof sàng kûng chêe nám plaa . s̄uea róong hâj . lâap müu . lé? núa nám tòk .  
๕. เปเตอร์ วอลฟ์ สั่ง กุ้ง แซ่ น้ำ ปลา เสือ ร้อง ให้ ลับ หมู และ เนื้อ น้ำ ตก

6. m̄ew chōop thúk jàang thîi sàng maa l̄ew .  
**ໝາວ ຂອບ ຖຸກ ອຍ່າງ ທີ່ ສັ່ງ ມາ ແລ້ວ**
7. peeteu woof kàp winseen dùem bia s̄ing kan .  
**ເປົເຕອຣ໌ ວອລິ່ພ ກັບ ວິນແຊນທີ່ ດື່ມ ເປີຢີ່ ສິງທີ່**
7. cōj aw qołíang , sùan níkkîi dùem náam máphráaw , lē? m̄ew sàng chaa jen k̄ew nùeng  
**ຈ້ອຍ ເອາ ໂອເລື້ຍ່ ສ່ວນ ນິກກີ້ ດື່ມ ນໍ້າ ມະພຽວ ແລະ ມາວ ສັ່ງ ຜ້າ ເຢັນ ແກ້ວ ມີ**

***Exercise 2***

1. peeteu woof chōop thaan aahăan thaj .  
**ເປົເຕອຣ໌ ວອລິ່ພ ຂອບ ທານ ອາຫາຣ ໄທຍ**
2. cōj deun paj hăa níkkîi .  
**ຈ້ອຍ ເດີນ ໄປ ທາ ນິກກີ້**
3. thîi krungthêep khon chōop kin aahăan thaj .  
**ທີ່ ກຽງເທັນ ຈາ ຂອບ ກິນ ອາຫາຣ ໄທຍ**
4. raw cà kin khâaw thîi ráan aahăan thaj .  
**ເຮົາ ຈະ ກິນ ຊ້າວ ທີ່ ຮ້ານ ອາຫາຣ ໄທຍ**
5. khun woof sàng aahăan hâj lăan khöong khăw .  
**ນາຍ ວອລິ່ພ ສັ່ງ ອາຫາຣ ໃຫ້ ລານ ຂອງ ເຂົາ**
6. winsseen chōop bia s̄ing māak .  
**ວິນແຊນທີ່ ຂອບ ເປີຢີ່ ສິງທີ່ ມາກ**
7. khun woof tham-ngaan thîi pràthêet thaj .  
**ຄຸນ ວອລິ່ພ ທຳກຳ ທີ່ ປະເທດ ໄທຍ**
8. níkkîi chōop kin aahăan aròj .  
**ນິກກີ້ ຂອບ ກິນ ອາຫາຣ ອົ່ວຍ**



# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 11

### Stuck in traffic again

#### รถ ติด อีก แล้ว

- 11.1 Introduction
- 11.2 Dialogue
- 11.3 Idioms
- 11.4 Grammar
- 11.5 Cultural notes
- 11.6
  - Writing V: The vowels and diphthongs
  - Writing VI: The triphthongs
  - Writing VII: Unwritten vowels
- 11.7 Diacritics and punctuation marks
- 11.8 Exercises
- 11.9 Answers to exercise 1





## 11.1 Introduction

The ‘Old Bangkok Hands’ among you probably remember: The traffic in Bangkok was legendarily chaotic, and commuters daily spent more time in a jam than actually moving, whether they traveled by bus, car, taxi or tuktuk. Students who had to follow early lectures, civil servants and business people had to leave home as early as four or five o’ clock in the morning. Breakfast was eaten in cars, and portable urinals were developed for use in the car when you were semi-permanently stuck in a jam as usual. From nearby offices, one can often spot sweating gentlemen with briefcases, jogging towards their desks because they had to leave their chauffeur-driven cars behind in the traffic, and would be unable to arrive on time at their meetings in any other way.

Many people say that the traffic problems started when, in the 50ies and 60ies, the khlongs (the canals which gave Bangkok the moniker ‘Venice of the East’) were gradually filled and transformed into roads. A boat is narrower than a car, and as the khlongs had been easily wide enough to let the long-tail boats pass through, the narrow streets that were built in their stead could simply not contain more than two lanes of motorized traffic. In those days, money from several countries which intended to keep Thailand as an ally during the many smaller and bigger wars fought in Asia, was streaming in, and Bangkokians bought cars avidly. The traffic situation quickly worsened.

The existing system of “soojs” and “trooks” developed from paths on land that connected separate villages – of which Bangkok still mainly consists. The names Bang Kapi (‘shrimp paste village’), Bang Na (‘village of fields’) and Ban Mai (‘new village’) still reminds us of that fact. These paths were later transformed into lanes, roads and driveways to let the growing number of vehicles pass. Shortcuts and connecting roads were built between the main thoroughfares. Some of these lanes, like Sukhumvit Soi 71 and Sukhumvit Soi 21 (Soi Asoke), are now wide roads themselves, and have sois of their own.

Other sois eventually went the same way. Often the inhabitants of a soi would sacrifice part of their land in exchange for a good infrastructure. Garden paths and driveways were asphalted, and people saw to it themselves that their sois were well connected to at least two main roads. Real Bangkokians knew all those alleys well. Shortcuts could be made that literally saved hours of time on a day of bad traffic. However, as soon as one exited the sois and entered a main artery like Sukhumvit, Ramkhamhaeng, Lat Phrao or Din Daeng Road again, one was back in traffic and back in trouble again. In the nineties, the city of Bangkok became so congested that an answer to the traffic problem simply had to be found within short term. Streets would have to be broadened, and new thoroughfares would have to be built, but it would cost billions of Baht to buy all the property that would have to be bulldozed down to fulfill that aspiration. A more outlandish solution to the traffic problem was proposed: Bangkok should have to be completely rebuilt in a different location. Meetings and conferences were held, but in the mean time, Bangkokian commuters were not inclined to leave their Mercedes and Isuzu Pickup trucks at home and take a bus or a taxi to work or shopping mall.

After many years of meeting, proposing and planning, a modern system of express ways (for which a toll was charged) was built over the city, and a sky train was constructed. At almost the same time, the Bangkok Metro (the subway) became operational. Bangkok had become a sci-fi city which few people who had known the Krung Thep of the fifties would be able to recognize.

There are still traffic jams in Bangkok, but they cannot be compared to those of the late eighties and the nineties. The traffic problem is past its peak.

cd 1b      11.2    Dialogue

track 10        Stuck in traffic again

๑๑.๒ บท สันหนา

รถ ติด อีก แล้ว

[รถ ติด อีก แล้ว]

จ้อย กับ นิกกี้ กำลัง จะ ไป หา แมว ที่ บ้าน ใน ช่วง เวลา ที่ รถ ติด ทั้ง สอง ขึ้น รถ เมล์ ปรับ อากาศ สี ส้ม เป็น ของ จาก เครื่อง ปรับ อากาศ เสีย ทำ ให้ อากาศ ใน รถ ร้อน มาก อีก ทั้ง คน ก็ แผ่น โโซค ดี ที่ สอง สาว ได้ ที่ นั่ง ใน ขณะ ที่ คน ส่วน ใหญ่ ต้อง ยืน โหน ราวด หรือ เกาะ พนัก เก้าอี้ เพื่อ ไม่ ให้ ล้ม เมื่อ รถ เบรค พ่อ รถ ลง จาก ทาง ด่วน และ แล่น เข้า ไป ถนน ติน แดง สาว ทั้ง สอง ก็ มอง เห็น รถ ติด เป็น ทาง ยาว แต่ ไกล เมื่อ รถ จอด ป้าย :



นิกกี้: โอ้ มี เด็ก ขึ้น มา ด้วย เรา คง ต้อง ลุก ให้ เด็ก นั่ง ดี กว่า

จ้อย: อะไร กัน ฉัน ยัง เมื่อย และ เหนื่อย ออย เลย ขี้เกียจ ลุก ให้ เข้า ยืน เถอะ

นิกกี้: จ้อย ว่า อะไร นะ มี น้ำใจ หน่อย ซิ ถ้า เด็ก ไม่ ได้ นั่ง เด็ก อาจ จะ ลุก ให้ เหงื่อง หก ล้ม และ ได้ รับ อุบัติเหตุ นะ

จ้อย: ฉัน ไม่ สน ... อุย ดู ซิ เด็ก คน นี้ น่า รัก จัง แหม น่า สงสาร เอ้า หนู มา นั่ง ใหม พาก พี ใจ ลง แล้ว ล่ะ นิกกี้ ลง กัน เถอะ

จ้อย กับ นิกกี้ ลง จาก รถ เมล์ แล้ว กี เดิน ไป ชื่อ ไอติม มา คน ละ แท่ง พาก เข้า ค่อย ๆ เดิน กิน ไอติม จน หมด ใน เวลา ส่อง สาม นาที

นิกกี้: นี่ จ้อย พูด เล่น อู๊ด ได้ เดียว คน อื่น จะ ไม่ เข้าใจ ว่า เธอ พูด เล่น หรือ พูด จริง รู้ นั้นย์ คน เข้า จะ คิด ว่า เธอ บ้า หรือ เป็น แม่ mad

จ้อย: ถึง จะ เป็น แม่ mad แต่ กี เป็น แม่ mad ที่ สวย เหมือน นาง ฟ้า

นิกกี้: เพ้อ เจ้อ บ้า แล้ว

นิกกี้ กำลัง จะ ข้าม ถนน โดย ไม่ มอง ข้าง ขวา

จ้อย: อย่า ข้าม ถนน ตรง นี้ นะ ไคร หละ ที่ บ้า กัน แน่ เออ ! เรา ต่อ แท็กซี่ ไป ดี กว่า นั่ง รถ เย็น ๆ อารมณ์ จะ ได้ ดี ขึ้น เอ้า ! แท็กซี่ มิเตอร์ มา แล้ว

จ้อย โบก มือ เรียก แท็กซี่ เมื่อ แท็กซี่ จอด จ้อย เปิด ประตู หน้า สถาน แท็กซี่:

จ้อย: ไป ลาด พร้าว สังคม สงเคราะห์ ซอย สาม ม้าย คะ คน ขับ รถ แท็กซี่ มอง จ้อย ด้วย แ渭 ตา ชื่น ชอบ เข้า คิด ว่า สาว ทึ้ง ส่อง สวาย มาก มี สาว สวาย ๆ นั่ง อู๊ด ใน รถ ถึง รถ จะ ติด กี ไม่ ทำ ให้ หงุด หงิด

แท็กซี่: เชิญ เชิญ ครับ

จ้อย เปิด ประตู หลัง ให้ นิกกี้ เข้า ไป นั่ง ก่อน แล้ว กี ขึ้น ตาม พร้อม กับ รีบ ปิด ประตู รถ

จ้อย: เร็ว หน่อย นะ พี่ เรา สาย มาก แล้ว ลาด พร้าว สังคม สงเคราะห์ ซอย สาม นะ พี่

คน ขับ รถ แท็กซี่ พยัก หน้า รับ ทราบ เข้า มอง จ้อย และ นิกกี้ ที่ กระจาก หลัง คน ขับ ยิ้ม และ คิด ใน ใจ: “ทึ้ง ส่อง สาว ช่าง น่า รัก น่า เอ็นดู จริงๆ”

ประมาณ ครึ่ง ชั่วโมง ต่อ มา แท็กซี่ กี มา ถึง บ้าน ของ แมว นิกกี้ ลง จาก รถ ใน ขณะ ที่ จ้อย จ่าย ค่า แท็กซี่ ให้ คน ขับ จ้อย ให้ ทิป เข้า หนึ่ง ร้อย บาท ด้วย

จ้อย: เอ้า ฉัน ให้ ทิป หนึ่ง ร้อย

แท็กซี่ รับ เงิน แล้ว ให้ว จ้อย จาก นั้น กี เหยียบ คัน เร่ง แล้ว ขับ ออก ไป จ้อย เห็น แมว เดิน มา เปิด ประตู รัว เธอ มี สี หน้า บึง ตึง

แมว: เอี้ย จ้อย ! นิกกี้ ! พาก เธอ ทำ ไม่ มา สาย ล่ะ

จ้อย: อย่า สถาน เลย น่า

นิกกี้: กี รถ มัน ติด น่า ซิ

**Transcription and word-for-word translation of dialogue 11.2.**

rót tít `nuk léew .

*Car to-be-stuck again already.*

côj kàp níkkîi kamlang cà paj hää mæew thîi bâan naj chûang weelaa thîi rót >

*Joy and/with Nikki [aux. verb continuous tense] shall to-go to-look-for Maew in/at house in part time that car >*

tít . tháng sõong khûen rótmee pràp-aakàat sǐ sôm . nûeang-càak khrûeang pràp-aakàat >  
*to-be-stuck. Entire two to-ascend bus air-conditioned color orange. Because machine air-conditioning >*

sǐa tham hâj aakàat naj rót róon mâak , `nìk thág khon kô nêñ . chôøk dii thîi >

*Broken to-make to-give {to make that} air in car hot much. More (moreover) all people quite crowded. Luck good that >*

sõong sääw dâj thîi nânñ naj-khâna-thîi khon suan jàj tông juen hõøn >  
*two girls to-get place to-sit while people part large to-must to-stand to-cling >*

raaw . rüe kò? phánák kâw?-îi phûea mây hâj lóm mûea rót brèek .

*rail. or to-hold-tight backrest chair in-order-to no/not to-allow to-fall when car to-break .*

phoo rót long càak thaang dùan lé? lén khâw paj thaang thànõn din dæng , >

*As-soon-as car to-descend from way express and to-move to-enter to-go direction road Din Daeng. >*

sääw thág sõong kô moong hën rót tít pen thaang jaaw tèe-klaj .

*girl all two also to-look to-see car to-be-stuck to-be direction long far-away.*

mûea rót còot pâaj :

*When car to-stop sign (bus stop):*

níkkîi: ôo . mii dèk khûen maa dûaj . raw khong tông >

*Nikki: Hey. To-be-present/to-have child to-ascend to-come also. We sure to-must >*

lúk hâj dèk nânñ dii kwàa .

*to-stand-up to-give child to-sit good [part. superlative degree] .*

côj: àraj kan . chän jang mûej lé? nûeaj jùu leuj . khûikiat lúk . hâj khâw juen thèu? .

*Joy: What? (what are you saying?) . I still/yet to-be-fatigued and to-be-tired to-stay (here: particle continuous tense) onward/utterly. Lazy to-stand-up. To-give he/she to-stand [instigating part.]. >*

níkkîi: côj wâa àraj ná . mii námcaj nòoj sí . >

*Nikki: Joy to-say what [emphatic part.]. to-have thoughtfulness a-little [emphatic part.] >*

thâa dèk mây dâj nânñ dèk àat-cà thùuk rót wìang >

*If child no/not to-have-opportunity to-sit child maybe [passive voice part.] to-fling >*

hòk lóm lé? dâj ráp ubàtihèet ná.

*to-fall-over to-fall and to-have-opportunity to-receive accident [emphatic part.] .*

- côj: chǎn māj sǒn . új . duu sí . dèk khon níi nāa-rák >  
*Joy: I (informal) not interested. [expression of surprise]. To-look [emphatic part.]. Child [classifier for people] this loveable >*
- cang . m  e . n  a-s  ngs  an .   w . n  u maa n  ng m  j . ph  ak ph  i >  
*extremely. [expression of surprise]. Pitiful. [exclamation of approval]. Mouse to-come to-sit [question part.]. Group older-sister >*
- c   long l  ew l   . n  kk   long kan th  u? .  
*to-shall to-descend already [emphatic part.] child. Nikki to-descend together [instigating part.].*
- c  j k  p n  kk   long c  ak r  t-m  e . l  ew-k   deun paj s  ue ajtim maa khon l   >  
*Joy and/with Nikki to-descend from bus. Then/afterwards to-walk to-go to-buy ice-cream to-come person per >*
- th  eng . ph  ak kh  w kh  j-kh  j deun kin ajtim con m  t naj weelaa s  ong s  am naathii .  
*[class.]. Group he/she slowly to-walk to-eat ice-cream finished in time two three minute.*
- n  kk  : n  i c  j ph  ut l  n j  u d  j . d  iaw khon   en c   m  j kh  wcaj w  a >  
*Nikki: This Joy to-speak to-play {to joke} to-stay to-can. Presently person other to-shall no/not to-understand that >*
- theu ph  ut l  n r  e ph  ut cing , r  u m  j . khon kh  w c   kh  t w  a >  
*You to-speak to-play or to-speak real. To-know [question part.]. Person he/she to-shall to-think that >*
- theu b  a r  e pen m  e-m  t .  
*you crazy or to-be witch.*
- c  j: th  eng c   pen m  e-m  t . t  e k   pen m  e-m  t th  i s  aj m  ean naang f  a .  
*Joy: Until to-shall to-be witch. But then to-be witch that beautiful the-same-as angel.*
- n  kk  : ph  eu c  eu . b  a l  ew .  
*Nikki: To-talk-nonsense. Crazy already.*
- n  kk   kamlang-c   kh  am th  n  n d  oj m  j moong s  aj khw  a .  
*Nikki about-to to-cross street by no/not to-look left right.*
- c  j: ji   kh  am th  n  n trong n  i n   . khraj l   th  i b  a kan n  e ! raw >  
*Joy: Don't to-cross street at-this-point [emphatic part.]. Who then that/which crazy [reciprocal part.] for-sure. Hey! We >*
- t  o th  ks  i paj dii kw  a . n  ng r  t jen-jen >  
*to-continue taxi from-now-on good [part. superlative degree]. To-sit car cool-cool >*
- aarom c   d  j dii kh  en .   w ! th  ks  i m  t  u maa l  ew .  
*mood to-shall to-have-opportunity good to-increase. [expression of approval]! Taxi meter to-come already.*
- c  j b  ok mue r  iak th  ks  i . m  ea th  ks  i c  ot c  j p  ut pr  tuu n  a th  am th  ks  i :  
*Joy to-wave hand to-call taxi. When taxi to-stop Joy to-open door front to-ask taxi:*

côj: paj lâatphráaw sângkhom söngkhró? sooj sâam mây khá .

Joy: *To-go Lad Phrao Sangkhom Songkhroh lane three [question part].> [polite part. f.]*

khon kháp rót théksû moong côj dûaj weew taa chûen-chôop . khâw khít wâa sâaw thâng >  
*Person to-drive car taxi to-look-at Joy with expression eye to-admire. He to-think that girl all >*

söong súaj mâak . mii sâaw súaj súaj nânng jùu naj rót . thueng rót cà tít kô >  
*two beautiful much. To-have/to-be-present girl beautiful to-sit to-stay in car. Although car to-shall to-be-stuck also >*

mây tham hâj ngút ngít .

*not to-make to-give irritated.*

théksû: cheun . cheun khráp .

Taxi: *Please/to-invite. Please/to-invite [polite part. m.]*

côj pèut pràtuu lâng hâj níkkû khâw paj nânng kòn . lêew-kô khûen >

*Joy to-open door rear to-give Nikki to-enter to-go to-sit first. Afterwards to-ascend >*

taam phróom kâp rîip pít pràtuu rót .

*To-follow in-unison with to-hurry to-close door car.*

côj: rew nòoj ná phûi . raw sâaj mâak lêew . lâat phráaw sângkhom >

Joy: *Fast a-little [incentive part.] older brother. We late much already. Ladphrao Sangkhom >*

söngkhró? sooj sâam ná phûi .

*Songkhroh lane three [incentive part.] older brother.*

khon kháp rót théksû phâják nâa ráp sâap . khâw moong côj lê? níkkû thûi krâcòk >

*Person to-drive car taxi to-nod face to-receive to-know. He to-look-at Joy and Nikki in mirror >*

lâng . khon kháp jím lê? khít naj caj : “thâng söng sâaw châng nâa râk nâa enduu cing cing” >  
*rear. Person to-drive to-smile and to-think in heart “All two girl specialist good-to to-love {lovely} good-to to-be-loving {charming} real [reduplication sign].*

prâmaan khrûeng chûamqóng tòo maa théksû kô maa thueng bâan khöong meew . níkkû long >  
*About half hour to-taxi towards to-come {onwards, later} Taxi also/rather to-come to-arrive house belonging-to Maew. Nikki to-descend from car >*

câak rót naj khànâ thûi côj câaj khâa théksû hâj khon kháp . côj hâj thíp khâw nûeng róoj bâat dûaj .

*in moment that Joy to-pay cost taxi to-give person to-drive. Joy to-give tip he/she one hundred Baht also.*

côj: âw ! chän hâj thíp nûeng róoj .

Joy: *Here. I to-give tip one hundred.*

théksû ráp nguén lê? wâj côj . câak nán kô jìap khan-rêng >

*Taxi to-receive money and [to thank with a ‘wai’] Joy. From that then to-step-on accelerator >*

léew khàp òok paj . côj hěn mæew dœun maa pèut pràtuu rúa . theu mii sǐl nâa >  
*Then to-drive off to-go (direction indicator). Joy to-see Maew to-walk to-come door fence. She to-have color face {facial expression} > bûeng tueng . sulky.*

mæew: héuj côj ! níkkûi ! phûak theu thammaj maa sääj lâ? . >  
*Hey Joy! Nikki! Group you (you plural) why to-come late [emphatic part.] >*

côj: jàa thăam leuj nâa .  
*Don't to-ask at-all [emphatic part].*

níkkûi: kôo rót man tít ná sí.!!  
*Well car it to-be-stuck. [emphatic part.]/[part. to emphasize the preceding statement].*

### cd 1b Vocabulary track 11



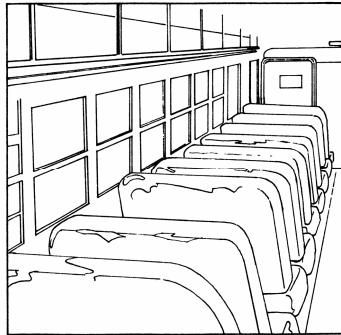
รถ	rót	car
ติด	tít	1. to stick, to be stuck; 2. to connect
รถ ติด	rót tít	1. traffic jam; 2. to be stuck in a traffic jam; to form a traffic jam



รถ	อีก แล้ว	ìik léew	once again, yet again
กับ	กับ	kàp	1. with; 2. and
กำลัง	กำลัง	kamlang	1. to be busy doing... (continuous tense); 2. power, force



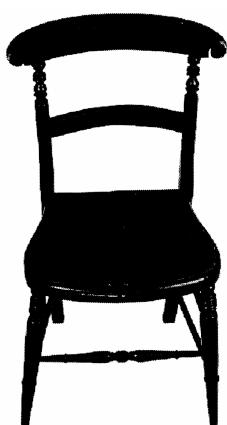
รถ เมล	กำลัง จะ	kamlang cà	just about to ...
หา	หา	hää	1. to seek, to look for; 2. to accuse
ใน	ใน	naj	in
ช่วง	ช่วง	chüang	period, part, phase, stage
เวลา	เวลา	weelaa	time
ใน ช่วง เวลา ที่	ใน ช่วง เวลา ที่	naj chüang weelaa thîi	while, on the moment that ...
ทั้ง สอง	ทั้ง สอง	tháng söong	both
ขึ้น	ขึ้น	khûen	1. (to go) up; 2. to enter, to mount
ทั้ง สอง	รถ เมล	rót mee	bus (for transport within the city)



ที่นอน



โน่น



เก้าอี้

ปรับ

pràp

1. to adjust, to tune; 2. to level, to smooth; 3. to fine

อากาศ

aakàat

1. air; 2. weather

ปรับอากาศ

pràp aakàat

air conditioning; air conditioned

ส้ม

sôm

orange, tangerine

สี ส้ม

sǐ sôm

orange (color)

เนื่อง จาก

nûeang càak

1. due to; 2. to be a result of; to arise from

เครื่อง

khrûeang

1. machine, apparatus, engine; 2. mechanism

เสีย

sǐa

1. broken; 2. spoiled

ทำให้

tham hâj

to make that, to cause to

อีก

ˋík

1. more; 2. again; 3. other, another; 4. else; 5. yet; 6. as well

ทั้ง

tháng

all, everything of, everybody, total

ทั้ง คน

tháng khon

all people

แน่น

nêñ

1. tight, compressed, dense; 2. crowded; 3. to jam lucky; to be lucky

โชคดี

chôqok dii

two

สอง

söong

girl, young woman

สอง สาว

söong sääw

the two young women

ได้

dâj

1. to can; 2. to obtain;

ที่

thîi

3. particle for past tense  
1. place; 2. in, at; 3. for, because; 5. that, the fact that, what; 6. that, which (relative pronoun)

นั่ง

nâng

to sit

ที่ นั่ง

thîi nâng

seat, place to sit

ใน ขณะ ที่

naj khànà thîi

while

ล้วน ใหญ่

sùan jàj

1. a large part; 2. most of (...)

ยืน

juen

to stand

โน่น

höøn

to hang, to swing, to cling



ลง

รา	raaw	rail; railing
หรือ	rue	1. or; 2. question particle for a yes-no question
เกาะ	kò?	1. to hold, to cling, to clamp; 2. island
พนัก	phánák	backrest, squab (of a seat)
เก้าอี้	kâw? ûi	chair
เพื่อ	phüea	1. in order to, so that <i>(conjunction); 2. on behalf of, for (preposition)</i>
ไม่ให้	mâj hâj	to not allow; <i>here: to not cause</i>
ล้ม	lóm	to fall, to topple, to fall down
เมื่อ	mûea	1. when, while, at the time; 2. if; 3. <i>first element in time-phrases</i> ( <b>เมื่อ ก่อน</b> (formerly); <b>เมื่อคืนนี้</b> (last night))
เบรค	brèek	break; to break (f. English)
พอ	phoo	1. just when, as soon as, just after
ลง	long	1. to descend; 2. to get off (a bus), to get out (of a car)
ป้าย	thaang	1. way, path; 2. way, means, chance; 3. direction; 4. channel (diplomatic, official); 5. quarters, side (official, military)
ทาง		1. urgent; 2. hasty; 3. express
ด่วน	dùan	express way (in Bangkok); highway
ทาง ด่วน	thaang dùan	highway
แล่น	lêñ*	1. to move, to run; 2. to glide, to sail; 3. to solder, to connect
ถนน	thànón	street
ติด แดง	din deëng	Din Daeng; street and district in Bangkok
มอง	moong	1. to look, to look at, to glance; 2. to consider; 3. to take care
อะไร กัน	h��n	1. to see, to behold; 2. to have vision; 3. to discern, to



อะไร กัน

เห็น



เหนื่อย



หลับ



อุบัติเหตุ

ยาว	jaaw	understand
แต่ไกล	tèe klaj	long, prolonged, stretched from far away
จอด	còot	1. to stop; 2. to park
ป้าย	pâaj	1. signboard, poster; <i>here:</i> bus stop (short for ป้ายรถเมล์)
哦	oo	oh!; ah!
เด็ก	dèk	child
ด้วย	dûaj	1. also; 2. with
คง	khong	1. probably, sure to, likely to (auxiliary verb)
ต้อง	tông	must
ลุก	lúk	to stand up
ดีกว่า	dii kwàa	better
อะไร กัน	àraj kan	what ?: exclamation of surprise
อยาก	jàak	to want
มัน	man	1. it; 2. 3 <sup>e</sup> pers. Singular and plural (derogative)
ชี้เกียจ	khîi kiat	lazy
เมื่อย	mûeaj	to be tired, fatigued (from exertion)
เหนื่อย	nùeaj	to be tired, to be exhausted
ว่า	wâa	1. to say; 2. to criticize, to scold; 3. ..., that (relative pr.)
นะ	ná	expletive particle ('please')
น้ำใจ:	námcaj	good will, thoughtfulness; heart, spirit, friendliness
หน่อย	nòoj	1. a little, a trifle; 2. little, few
ชิ	sí	1. incentive particle; 2. emphatic particle ('hey', 'come on')
ถ้า	thâa	if
อาจ จะ	àat cà	maybe, perhaps
ถูก	thùuk	1. particle to form the passive voice; 2. inexpensive,



ແກມ



၁၂



‘ไอติม’

ເຫົວ່າຍງ	wiang	1. to hurl, to throw, to cast; 2. to brandish
ທກ ລົມ	hòk lóm	to fall, to tumble over, to slip
ໄດ້ ຮັບ	dâj ráp	to get, to receive, to obtain
ອຸປັຕິເຫດ	ubàttihèet	accident
ຈັນ	chǎn	I (informal female; archaic Informal for men)
ສນ	sõn	short for: ສນໃຈ - sõncaj; to be interested in
ອູ້ຍ	új	oh, dear
ດູ ຂີ	duu sí	look at it! look there!
ນໍາ ຮັກ	nâa rák	sweet, cute, pretty, lovely, charming
ຈັງ	cang	really, truly, indeed
ແຮມ	mëe	interjection of surprise, blame
ນໍາ ສົງສາຣ	nâa sõngsääan	pitiful, forlorn, sad
ເຂົ້າ	âw	here! Look here; here you are
ໜຸ້ງ	nŭu	1. mouse; 2. Personal pronoun for the 1 <sup>st</sup> , 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular (for kids and teenage girls)
ພວກ	phûak	group
ພວກ ພື້	phûak phîi	we (as older sisters)
ລົງ	long	1. to descend, to go down; 2. to get out of; 3. to diminish
ເຄືອະ	thèu?	short for ເຄືດ - thèut; particle to mark a command or a request
ກັນ	kan	particle to indicate plural or reciprocity: ‘together’, ‘each other’
ເຕີນ	deun	to walk
ຂຶ້ວ	sué	to buy
ໄອຕິມ	ajtim	ice cream (also ໄອສັກຣິມ - ajsâkrim)
ຄນ ລະ	khon lá	1. each; 2. per person



แม่ แมด



นาง พี



ข้าม ถนน

<b>แท่ง</b>	thêeng	bar, chunk (classifier for ice cream cones)
<b>พวก เขา</b>	phuak khaw	they (3 <sup>rd</sup> person plural)
<b>ค่อย ๆ (ค่อย - ค่อย)</b>	khôj khôj	slowly, calm, easy
<b>หมด</b>	môt	finished (adverb)
<b>ใน</b>	naj	in
<b>สาม</b>	sâam	three
<b>นาที</b>	naathii	minute
<b>“นี่ จ้อย”</b>	nîi cój	“Joy, you...”
<b>พูด เล่น</b>	phûut lén	to make jokes
<b>...อยู่ ได้</b>	... jùu dâj	... constantly (idiom)
<b>เดียว</b>	díaw	1. moment, instant; 2. in a moment, momentarily
<b>อื่น</b>	ùen	other, different
<b>คน อื่น</b>	khon ùen	other people
<b>จะ</b>	cà	to shall, to will (indicator of intention; near future)
<b>เข้า ใจ</b>	khâwcaj	to understand
<b>พูด จริง</b>	phûut cing	to speak the truth; make no jokes
<b>รู้ มั้ย</b>	rúu máj	short for: รู้ไหม - rúu măj - 'you know?'
<b>คิด</b>	khít	to think
<b>คิด ว่า</b>	khít wâa	to think that
<b>บ้า</b>	bâa	crazy
<b>แม่ แมด</b>	mêe mó	witch
<b>ถึง จะ ... แต่ ก็</b>	thüeng cà ... tèe kô	maybe... but (still) ..., even as..., but still
<b>เหมือน</b>	müean	as, equal to, the same
<b>นาง พี</b>	naang fâa	angel, fairy
<b>เพ้อ เจ้อ</b>	phéu cêu	to talk foolishly, to talk nonsense
<b>ข้าม</b>	khâam	to cross
<b>ซ้าย</b>	sáaj	left
<b>ขวา</b>	khwää	right



แท็กซี่

อย่า

jää

don't (often followed by a verb)

ตรงนี้

trong níi

here, at this spot

น่า

nâa

stronger form of นะ - nâ (emphatic particle)

ใคร หละ

khraj là

who then; who actually

กัน

kan

particle to form plurality or reciprocity; 'together', 'each other'

แน่

nêe

certain

เออ !

éu

1. hey; 2. ah, whatever

แท็กซี่

théksîi

taxi

ต่อ

tòo

1. to connect, to join; 2. to go on; to continue; 2. towards

ต่อไป

tòo paj

1. to go on, to go further; 2. in the future

เย็น

jen

cool

อารมณ์

aarom

1. mood, feeling, temper; 2. humor

ดี ขึ้น

dii khûen

better

แท็กซี่ มีเตอร์

théksîi miitêu

metered taxi

เรียก

riak

to call

เปิด

pèut

to open

เรียก

ประตู

pràtuu

door

หน้า

nâa

1. front, in front; 2. face

ประตู หน้า

pràtuu nâa

front door

ถาม

thăam

to ask

ลาด พร้าว

lâat phráaw

street in Bangkok ('studded with coconut trees')

สังคม ส่งเคราะห์

sangkhom

street in Bangkok

ซอย

söngkhró?

('helpful community')

มัյ

máj

alley, street off a ถนน - thànön (through road) shortened form of ไหม - măj (general question particle)



คน ขับ รถ

คน ขับ รถ

khon khàp rót

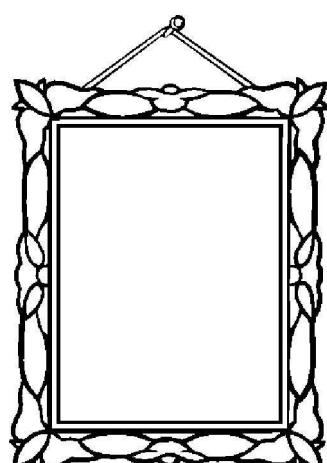
chauffeur, driver



แ渭 ตา



รีบ

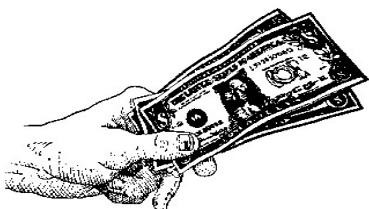


กระกะ

ด้วย	dûaj	1. also; 2. with
แ渭 ตา	wêew taa	expression in the eyes (way of looking)
ตา	taa	eye
ชื่น ชอบ	chûen chôop	to admire; to like
คิด	khít	to think
ว่า	wâa	1. to say; 2. to administer, to scold; 3. that (conjunction)
สวย	súaj	beautiful
ถึง	thûeng	until; to; up to, towards, as far as
ถึง ... ก็	thûeng ... ko	even if ... however still...; in spite of..., still
ทำให้	tham hâj	to make that, to cause that (causative)
หงุด หงิด	ngùt ngít	irritated
เชิญ	cheun	1. please, go ahead; 2. to invite
หลัง	lăng	behind
ประตู หลัง	pràtuu lăng	back door
ไป	paj	1. to go; 2. to
ก่อน	kòon	first
แล้ว ก็	léew kô	1. (and) then; 2. (and) next; 3. and also
ตาม	taam	1. to follow; 2. according to
พร้อม	phróom	1. at the same time, in unison; 2. ready, set
รีบ	rûip	to hurry
ปิด	pít	to close
เร็ว	rew	fast
หน่อย	nòoj	(a) little; (a) few
นะ	ná	expletive particle ('please')
เรา	raw	we
สาย	sâaj	late, too late
พี่	phîi	older brother or sister (also used as a personal pronoun/ term of address (3 <sup>rd</sup> person singular)



ยิ้ม



จ่าย



บึ้ง ตึง



รั้ว

พยัก หน้า	pháják nâa	to nod the head
รับ ทราบ	ráp sâap	to show that one understood or heard what is said
กระจก	kràcòk	mirror
กระจก หลัง	kràcòk lăng	rear-view mirror
ยิ้ม	jím	to smile
คิด ในใจ	khít naj caj	to think by oneself (to think in the heart)
ช่าง น่ารัก	châang nâarâk	lovely girl; cutie pie
น่า เอ็นดู	nâa enduu	lovely, charming, sweet
ครึ่ง	khrûeng	half, mid, midway
ชั่วโมง	chûamøong	hour (as a unit of time)
ของ	khöong	1. thing; 2. of (possessive pronoun), belonging to
ใน ขณะ ที่	naj khànà thîi	while
จ่าย	càaj	to pay
ค่า	khâa	costs, price, value, expense
ทิป	thíp	tip (from English)
(หนึ่ง) ร้อย	(nùeng) róoj	(one) hundred
บาท	bàat	Baht
ไหว้	wâj	to greet or thank someone with a ‘wâj’
จาก นั้น	càak nán	after that
เหยียบ	jiap	to put one’s foot upon, to step on, to tread on
คัน เร่ง	khan rêng	accelerator, gas pedal
ออก ไป	òok paj	away, to go away
รั้ว	rúa	fence
ด้วย	dûaj	1. also; 2. with
สี หน้า	síi nâa	expression (on s.o.’s face)
บึ้ง ตึง	büeng tueng	1. sullen, sulky, unsmiling, 2. stern
เอี่ย	hêuj	hey!; hullo!; ah...
พวก เธอ	phûak theu	you (plural)
เลย	leuj	emphatic particle: ‘at all’ (in

ล่า	lâ	negations); very, utmost (in statements)
น่า	nâa	emphatic particle (also ล่า - lá)
นาซี	ná sí	strong incentive particle
		emphatic/incentive particle

Translation of dialogue 11.2

Stuck in traffic again

Joy and Nikki are about to visit Maew at home while there are traffic jams. The two girls take an orange bus with air-conditioning. Because the engine of the air conditioner is broken, the bus gets very hot. And it is completely filled with people. Luckily the two girls have a seat while most people have to stand, hanging from hand-rails, or clinging to backrests of chairs, in order not to fall when the bus breaks. When the bus drives down from the express way and moves into Din Daeng Road, the girls can see a long traffic jam which reaches far into the distance. When the bus stops at a bus stop:

- Nikki: Oh! There are children getting on the bus. We'd better stand up to let the children sit down.
- Joy: What? I am still sore and tired. I don't want to get up. Let them stand.
- Nikki: What are you saying, Joy! Be a little nicer! If those children cannot sit down, maybe they'll be flung all over the place and they'll get an accident!
- Joy: I'm not interested. Oi! Look at that child! How cute. Ah, poor thing. Here, why don't you come and sit down. We are getting off already. Come on, Nikki, let's get off.

Joy and Nikki get off the bus. Then they walk on and buy an ice cream each. They walk without haste for a few minutes eating their ice cream.

- Nikki: Hey, Joy, you can go on making jokes all the time, but in a while people won't know whether you're joking or being serious, you know. People will think you're crazy, or a witch!
- Joy: I may be a witch, but then I'm a witch who's as pretty as an angel.
- Nikki: You're talking rot. You're crazy.

Nikki is about to cross the road, while neither looking left nor right.

- Joy: Don't cross the road here, girl! Who's the one who's crazy now? Eh! We'd better take a taxi from here. In a cool car our temper will get better. Ah! There comes a taxi-meter.

Joy waves her hand to call the taxi. When the taxi stops, Joy opens the front door and asks the driver:

- Joy: Can you bring us to Lad Phrao Sangkhom Songkhroh Soi three?

The taxi driver looks at Joy with an admiring expression in his eyes. He thinks: those are both very pretty girls. If there are pretty girls in my car, there might be a traffic jam, but at least I wouldn't become irritated.

- Taxi: Get in. Please get in.

Joy opens the back door to let Nikki get in first. Then she gets in herself, while quickly pulling the door of the car closed behind her.

- Joy: We'll have to hurry a bit, driver. We are much too late already. Lad Phrao Sangkhom Songkhroh Soi three, okay, driver?

The taxi driver nods that he has understood. He looks at Joy and Nikki in the rearview mirror, smiles, and thinks by himself: “These girls are both really very pretty and cute.”

In about half an hour, the taxi arrives at Maew’s house. Nikki gets out of the car while Joy pays the fare to the taxi driver. Joy also gives him a hundred Baht tip.

Joy: Here, I give you a hundred Baht tip.

The taxi driver takes the money and thanks Joy with a ‘wai’. Then he puts his foot upon the accelerator and drives off. Joy sees Maew walking towards them to open the fence door. She has an unsmiling expression on her face.

Maew: Hey Joy! Nikki! Why are you so late!?

Joy: Please don’t ask…

Nikki: Well, there were traffic jams! Why else!

### 11.3 Idioms

ວ່າ	wá	emphatic particle; rather rustic. Listen to how market vendors use it. Young urbanites might use it jocularly.
້າຍ	âaj	particle used in front of a name. Intimate for friends, but insulting when used in front of the name of a stranger.
ໜ	kuu	‘I’ – This personal pronoun is used a lot by Thai people, but as a foreigner you should use it with care. It shows intimacy when used among friends, but it is highly insulting when used to other persons. Towards strangers it is used in anger, and on occasions where one deliberately wishes to insult someone.
ມື່ງ	mueng	‘you’ - This is the equivalent in the second person singular of ໜ (kuu)
ມັນ	man	neutral ‘it’, or ‘he’ or ‘she’ when you’re talking about your dog, cat, buffalo or other domestic animal. Insulting when used in talking about people you don’t like. It is also the third person singular equivalent of ໜ (kuu) and ມື່ງ (mueng). There are Thais who don’t like these three words, and who therefore never use them.
ແຈ້ວ	c��w	1. clean; 2. clear of eyes and voice; and 3. ‘cool’, ‘terrific’, ‘way out’. This slang word can mean everything that’s cool and nice. This last meaning has been emphasized by a popular motion picture, called ‘ແຈ້ວ’, about a couple of cleaning ladies who are recruited to be spies, and get mixed up in all kinds of intrigues and situations.

ເຢີຍ	héuj	‘ah’, ‘whatever’, or ‘hey!’. A rather rustic expression. Also jocularly used by the Bangkokian youth.
ອໝໍາ ດາມ ນຳ	jàa thăam nâ	‘Don’t ask...’ Used when one has just gone through a ‘terrible’ experience, after which the whole story is usually told in full detail.
ັ້ນ ນຳ ຂື່ ເລົ່າ	ngán nâ sii lâw	‘That’s how it is’, ‘that’s how it went’, or: ‘That’s why’
ຂ້າງ ຂ້າຍ	khâang sáaj	left, the left side (also politically)
ຂ້າງ ຂວາ	khâang khwää	right, the right side (also politically)

## 11.4 Grammar

### a. The imperative mood (and its negative)

The imperative mood is a grammatical mood that expresses direct commands or requests. It is also used to signal a prohibition, permission or any other kind of exhortation. There are two particles which are used in spoken Thai to form an imperative:

- ສີ - sí (with as a longer, more emphatic variant ສິ - sîi):

ພຸດ ສີ	phûut sí	<i>to-say ‘sí’</i> ‘Say it’
ດາມ ເຂົາ ສີ ຄຮັບ	thăam khăw sí khráp	<i>to-ask he/she ‘sí’ [polite particle m.]</i> ‘Ask him’
ບອກ ເຂົາ ສູ່	bòok khăw sîu	<i>to-say he/she ‘sîu’</i> ‘Say it to him/her’

An imperative can also be formed by using the following pattern:  
Predicate + reduplicated adjective/adverb:

ທຳ ດີ ດີ (ດີ ດີ)	tham dii dii	<i>to-do good good</i> ‘Do it well’
------------------	--------------	--

Or the following pattern:  
Predicate + ໄທ້ - hâj + adjective/adverb:

ຈັກ ໄທ້ ເຮືຍບ ຮ້ອຍ	càt hâj ríap róoj	<i>to-arrange ‘hâj’ tidy</i> ‘Arrange (it, everything) tidily’
--------------------	-------------------	---

2. เกอะ - thèu? (short for the written language variant เกิด - thèut)

This particle can be translated with ‘let’s’, ‘shall we’. With the help of this particle an imperative can be formed, following the pattern: Predicate + ‘thèu?’

ไป ตลาด กัน เกอะ  
paj täläat kan thèu?

*to-go/to market together ‘thèu?’  
‘Let’s go to the market’*

A negative imperative is formed by using the following pattern:  
อย่า - jàa + Predicate or ห้าม - hâam + Predicate

(ห้าม - hâam indicates a prohibition; อย่า - jàa indicates either a prohibition or a strong suggestion)

อย่า ไป ตลาด  
jàa paj täläat

*don’t to-go/to market  
‘Don’t go to the market’*

ห้าม ไป ตลาด  
hâam paj täläat

*to-forbid to-go/to market  
‘You can’t go to the market’ (I forbid you)*

The negative imperative can be emphasized by adding adjuncts:

ห้าม ไป ตลาด เป็น อัน ขาด  
hâam paj täläat pen-an-khàat

*to-forbid to-go/to market under-no-circumstance  
(เป็น อัน ขาด - ‘under no circumstance’ (idiom))  
‘Under no circumstance you can go to the market’*

อย่า เข้า ไป (โดย) เต็ด ขาด  
jàa khâw paj (døyj) dët-khàat

*Don’t to-enter to-go/to absolutely-not  
(โดย) เต็ด ขาด - absolutely not (idiom))  
‘You may absolutely not enter!’*

### b. The passive voice

In Thai, the passive voice is – unlike in English – only used in phrases which bear a clear negative meaning, and in phrases which in themselves seem positive, but which one chooses to use in a negative connotation. The passive voice is formed by using the pattern:

Subject + ถูก - thùuk + agent (if any)<sup>12</sup> + predicate:

ถูก - thùuk also means ‘right’ and ‘inexpensive’, ‘cheap’, but in passive phrases it must be translated with ‘by’:

กระเป๋า สตางค์ ของ ผู้ ถูก ขโมย ไป  
krápaw sàtang\* khöong phöm thùuk  
khàmøy\* paj

*bag money belong-to I (m) ‘thùuk’ to-steal  
to-go/to  
‘My wallet has been stolen.’*

<sup>12</sup> agent: acting indirect object

หมู ถูก เลือก กิน  
mǔu thùuk súea kin

*pig ‘thùuk’ tiger to-eat*  
'The pig is eaten by the tiger.'

เข้า ถูก เลือก เป็น ส.ส.  
khǎw thùuk lüéak pen sōosōo

he ‘thùuk’ to-choose to-be M.P.  
'He was chosen as a Member of Parliament.'<sup>13</sup>

Another pattern to form the passive voice is:

Subject + ถูก - thùuk + Predicate + โดย - dōoj + agent:

โดย - dōoj can often be translated with 'by'

เข้า ถูก หลอก ลวง โดย เมีย น้อย  
khǎw thùuk lòòk luang dōoj mia nóoj

*he ‘thùuk’ deceive ‘dōoj’ minor-wife*  
'He has been deceived by his minor wife.'

Finally, the passive voice can be formed with the word 'โดน - dōon', which means 'to hit', and which is used in very negative passive sentences following the pattern:  
Subject + โดน - dōon + Predicate:

เข้า โดน ประหาร ชีวิต  
khǎw dōon pràhāan chiiwít

*he ‘dōon’ to-execute*  
'He is executed.'

The negative of the passive voice is formed by putting ไม่ - māj - 'no', 'not' in front of the passive voice particle, or in front of โดน - dōon:

หมู ไม่ ถูก เลือก กิน  
mǔu māj thùuk súea kin

*pig no/not ‘thùuk’ tiger to-eat*  
'The pig has not been eaten by the tiger.'

เข้า ไม่ ถูก หลอก ลวง โดย เมีย น้อย  
khǎw māj thùuk lòòk luang dōoj mia nóoj

*he no/not ‘thùuk’ to-deceive ‘dōoj’ minor wife*  
'He has not been deceived by his minor wife.'

เข้า ไม่ โดน ประหาร ชีวิต  
khǎw māj dōon pràhāan chiiwít

*he no/not ‘dōon’ to-execute*  
'He is not executed.'

## 11.5 Cultural notes

For the reason mentioned in the dialogue, Thai people yield their seat to children in the bus. With their short arms, children cannot reach the rails and straps which grown-ups can grab when the bus moves through Bangkok traffic by fits and starts, abruptly breaking and acceler-

<sup>13</sup> ส.ส.: สมาชิก สภา - sàmǎachík sàphaa\* - Member of Parliament

ating, swerving and twisting and wavering from lane to lane. It is a remarkable sight to see two chubby kids in school uniform wearily eating sweets in their comfortable seats, while a venerable looking grandmother is hardly able to keep her foothold in the jolting bus.

Despite the fact that they sometimes take hours to reach their end stations, Bangkok busses are very useful, as they're inexpensive and they'll take you anywhere, even to areas which lie far beyond the city limits. As every tourist knows, it is a true adventure everywhere on earth to mount an arbitrary city bus and remain seated until the terminal has been reached. In Bangkok, you can cross the city in half a day for the price of a few Baht, by getting on a bus and riding from north to south or from east to west. You'll be able to see the sights and smell the fragrance of the great city just by remaining seated and enjoying the pleasurable rhythm of the moving bus.

But remember; give up your seat for children. And nobody will blame you if you do the same for elderly and handicapped people...

The taxis in which one should agree upon a fare for the ride beforehand are nearly obsolete in Bangkok. Taxi's now all have a meter. But if you like bargaining, you can always take a 'tuk tuk' (ตุ๊กตุ๊ก). These three-wheeled motor taxis are ideal for short distances. They are not to be found everywhere in Bangkok, though, and they cannot use the expressways. In smaller towns you can still find trishaws or säämlóo (สามล้อ). Motor taxis (normal motorcycles, on which you take a seat behind the driver and cling on to the seat or the driver for dear life) operate everywhere in the city and can be found at the entrance areas of sois. They are principally meant to be used by the inhabitants of those sois, and cost only little. For a little more, they'll take you everywhere in the city. They can transport you from home to work and vice versa, for instance. If you're stuck in a traffic jam again, you can leave your driver and car behind, and jump on the back of a motor taxi. Via the sois and over the pavement their daredevil drivers bring you to exactly where you want to be in a fraction of the time it would take a taxi. They are by far the fastest and cheapest means of transport to any place in Bangkok; and also - especially out of their sois - the most exhilaratingly dangerous.

## 11.6 Writing V; The vowels and diphthongs

In Thai, vowels are subordinate to consonants. They cannot exist without them. As vowels are always written in connection with a consonant; they cannot be read or written alone. Although the sound of a vowel connected to a consonant is always pronounced after the sound of the consonant it is connected to, a vowel character can be written in front, above, behind or under a consonant. Some vowels, and all diphthongs and triphthongs, are written with a combination of several vowel characters, which are put 'around' the consonant – in front, above and behind it. If a syllable exists of a vowel only, an 'empty' consonant is used to write the vowel sound (again: in front, above, behind, under or around it). This empty consonant, or 'vowel bearer', is the 'ø'.

In its role as a vowel bearer, 'ø' has no sound of its own. 'ø' and the vowel connected to it are pronounced as the vowel and only as the vowel.

Remember that 'ø' has more functions than one, though: It can be used on its own as a character for the vowels 'oo' and 'o'; it is part of the vowel 'eu', and of the vowel 'ue', when written in an open syllable. It is also one of the three elements of the diphthong 'uea'.

Loose vowels are usually written with ‘อ’ as their bearer, and so are all vowels in the list below. When a vowel is used in combination with another consonant character, the vowel is pronounced after the relevant consonant.

vowel/ diphthong	example	pronunciation	vowel/ diphthong	example	pronunciation
อะ (อ-	จะ (มัน)	a?, a	อา	มา	aa
อิ	กิน	i?, i	ី	ី	ii
อี	ปีง	ue?, ue	ីូ (ី)	ីូ (បិន)	ue
อุ	គុណ	u?, u	ូ	ូុដ	uu
ເອະ (ເើ-	ເອະ	e?, e	ເេ	ເេ	ee
ແអោ	ແລោ	ɛ?, ε	ແ៥	ແᅂ	ɛɛ
ໂອ	ໂផោ	ø?	ូ	ូិច	øo
ເខាង	កេខាង	o?	ូុ	ូុ	oo
ເលោខោ (ເើ-	ເលោខោ, ເງិន	eu?, eu	ເេូ (ເើ-)	ເរូ, ເດិន	eu
ເើឃោ	តេើឃោ	ia?	ីូឃ	ីូឃ	iia
ເើូខោ	កេើូខោ	uea?	ីូូ	ីូូ	uea
ើវោ	ខាងវើវោ	ua?	ីូវ (-វ-)	ីូវ, តោវុន	ua
ເខា	ខោ	aw	ូវ	ូវ	aaw
ាា	ាា	am	ីូយ	ីូយ	euj, euj
ុ*	ុណុទិ	ri, reu, rue	ីូុ	ីូុ	reu, rue
ុ**	ុា	lue, lue	ីូុ**	ីូុា	lue
ី	ីោ	aj	ី	ីោ	aj, aaaj
ីូុយ***	ីូុយ	aj	ីូុយ	ីូុយ	aj
រវ	បររតា, កររម	am, a	ីូុយ	ីូុយ	oɔj

\* rare   \*\*very rare   \*\*\* only used in a few words; one of them is: ីូុយ ('Thai')

#### Writing VI: the triphthongs:

tripthong	example	pronunciation	tripthong	example	pronunciation
ເឡោ	ເឡោ	eeuw	ແឡោ	ແឡោ	ɛɛw
ເើឃោ	ເើឃោ	iaw	ីូុយ	ីូុយ	uaj
ເើូយ	ເើូយ	ueaj			

### Writing VII: unwritten vowel sounds (inherent vowels):

Inherent ‘o’ in a single, closed syllable: Example: นก - nòk - ‘bird’	Inherent ‘a’ in an open end-syllable: Example: ศิลป - s̄inlápà - ‘art’
Inherent ‘oo’ in a syllable ending with a nasal consonant: Example: นคร - nákhoon - ‘city’	Inherent ‘a’ in open begin-syllable existing only of ‘ং’(oo àang): Example: อร่อย - àroj - ‘tasty’
Inherent ‘o’ - ‘a’ in successive syllables written with only two consonants: Example: สาร - sòrà - 1. ‘brave’; 2. ‘celestial’	Inherent ‘a’ - ‘a’ in successive syllables: Example: ล้านา - lálánaa - attractive girl
Inherent ‘oo’ - ‘a’ in successive syllables written with only two consonants: Example: มรดก - moorádòk - ‘inheritance’	Semi-inherent ‘o’- ‘i’ in words starting with บริ- bri Example: บริการ - booríkaan - ‘service’, ‘to be of service’

## 11.7 Diacritics and punctuation marks

In Thai script, no full stops, commas and capital letters are used. Reading stops within and between sentences are indicated by a space between words – which are otherwise connected to each other without spaces. Question marks, exclamation marks, colons, semicolons and quotation marks are used in Thai texts, but are modern additions to the Thai set of punctuation marks, just like brackets, dashes and ellipses. In modern publications, commas are sometimes seen but are frowned upon by traditionalists. Generally accepted Thai punctuation marks include:

ฯ      ໄປຢາລ ນ້ອຍ (*pajjaan nóoj*)

This sign shortens a long word. For instance, Bangkok has one of the longest official city names in the world, but in daily speech the name is shortened to ‘krungthêep’, written in Thai as: กรุงเทพฯ The name on Bangkok vehicle license plates is กรุงเทพมหานคร (krungthêepmáhhaaná-khoon), without ฯ

᳚ -      ກາຣັນຕໍ (kaaran)

The ‘swirl’ over a consonant at the end of a word means that this particular consonant, or the consonant cluster at the end of this syllable is not pronounced.

ฯ ຢມກ (*jámók*)

De ‘*jámók*’, placed behind a word indicates that the word should be pronounced twice, in order to express plurality or variety.

ฯລງ ໄປຢາລ ໄຫຸ່ງ (*pajjaan jàj*)

Has the same function as the abbreviation ‘etc.’, or the sign ‘&c.’: ‘et cetera’

## 11.8 Exercises

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. เขา เป็น คน ไทย
2. กรุงเทพฯ เป็น เมือง ที่ สวาย มา ก
3. จ้อย มี หน้า ตา เหมือน dara
4. คน ส่วน ใหญ่ ชอบ กิน อาหาร ที่ ร้าน อาหาร
5. ที่ หัว ทิน มี ชาย หาด สวาย
6. เชิญ เข้า มา ใน บ้าน ของ เราก
7. ทำไม เธอ ไม่ สนใจ
8. ที่ มหาวิทยาลัย รามคำแหง มี นักศึกษา เยอะ
9. ข้าว ถูก หมา กิน
10. ใคร ขาย ไข่ ไก่

2. Write down all the letters of the Thai alphabet about ten or twelve times. Pronounce the letter and its name while you write it down. You should be able to write every letter without looking at examples too much.

3. Write down thirty words from the lessons you have learned so far. Explain with each word how it is written, and why it is pronounced as it is pronounced. Write down their English translations.

4. Translate the following sentences:

1. ผม อยากรู้ เรียน ภาษา ไทย
2. อาหาร ไทย อร่อย มาก
3. ที่ ประเทศไทย มี อาชญากรรม มาก ไหม
4. ติดัน จะ เรียก เพื่อน มาก
5. คุณ ชอบ ไป เที่ยว ทัว ทิ่น ใช่ ไหม
6. แมว อู๊ด ใน คลา “ร้อยเอ็ด”

7. ช่วย ซื้อ ดินสอ ให้ หน่อย ซิ
8. แ hem ฉัน ยัง ไม่ เคย มา สาย เลย
9. ไป ถนน ดิน แดง ซึ่ง มอเตอร์ไซค์ ดี กว่า
10. เด็ก คน นั่น ถูก รถ ชน

## 11.9 Answers to exercise 1

1. He/she is a Thai.
2. Bangkok is a city which is very beautiful.
3. Joy looks like a movie star.
4. Most people like to eat in a restaurant.
5. In Hua Hin is a nice beach.
6. Go ahead, please enter into our house.
7. Why are you not interested ?
8. At Ramkhamhaeng University are many students.
9. The rice has been eaten by the dog.
10. Who sells chicken eggs?

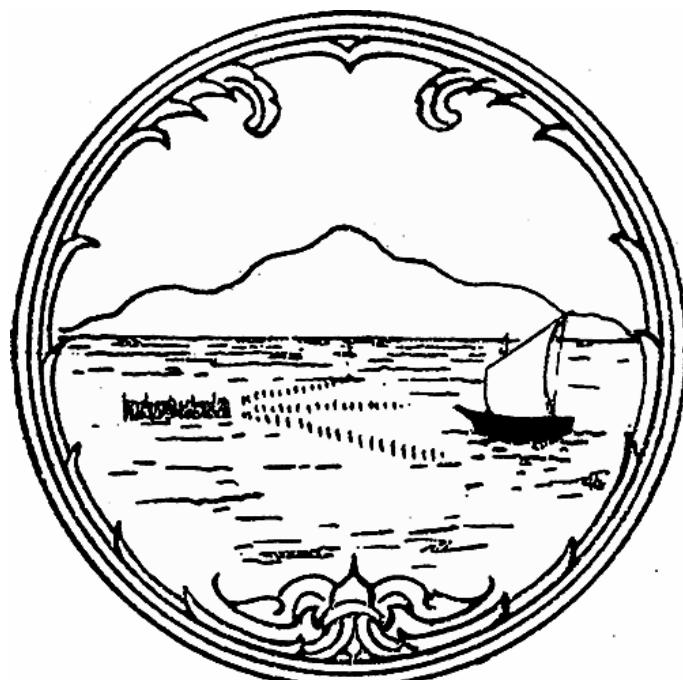


# THAI FOR BEGINNERS

## LESSON 12

### Out on the town in Bangkok ไปเที่ยวกรุงเทพฯ

- 12.1 Introduction
- 12.2. Dialogue
- 12.3 Idioms
- 12.4 Cultural notes
- 12.5 Irregularities in Thai spelling and class modifiers
- 12.6 Writing VIII: The script and the tones.  
Further instructions in reading and writing
- 12.7 Exercises
- 12.8 Answers to exercise 1





## 12.1 Introduction

Part of lesson 12 is again a repetition exercise. Some subjects that have been presented to you in the course of the preceding lessons will be repeated, and tested against examples from reality. In this key lesson you'll bring your ready knowledge of the Thai script to perfection, and you'll take another step ahead in reading proficiency. In this lesson, the transcription and word-for-word translation of the dialogue will follow the dialogue in Thai for the last time. In the next part of the course, the word-for-word translation will be attached as an appendix. These appendices are meant as reminders, and practical help devices; they are not there to learn your lesson from. You'll see you'll need them less as your reading of the Thai script will become more and more fluent. Eventually you'll only be using the texts written in Thai and the two translations provided within the lesson (the word-for-word and the free translation). New words will be transcribed in the vocabulary lists. Words with an irregular pronunciation are marked with an asterisk (\*).

In the dialogue, Joy, Maew, Nikki, and Nikki's *farang* cousin Vincent are discussing ideas, and preparing themselves for a night out on the town in Bangkok.

cd 1b	<b>12.2 Dialogue</b>	๑๒.๒. บทสนทนา
track 12	Out on the town in Bangkok	ไปเที่ยวกรุงเทพฯ

[ไปเที่ยวกรุงเทพฯ]

จ้อย แมว และ นิกกี้ อยาก พา วินแซนท์ ไป เที่ยว กรุงเทพฯ เข้า ห้อง สี คน พบ กัน ที่ บ้าน จ้อย ที่ เช็นต์ หลุยส์ ซอย ๓ ถนน สาธร ใต้ จ้อย เตรียม กับ แกล้ม และ เครื่อง ดีม ไว้ เลี้ยง เพื่อน ๆ

- |           |   |
|-----------|---|
| จ้อย:     | ตก ลง วินแซนท์ เคย มา เที่ยว กรุงเทพฯ แล้ว ใช่ ไหม  |
| วินแซนท์: | ใช่ แต่ ตอน นั้น ผอม เคย ไป เที่ยว แต่ วัด พระ แก้ว และ สวน สัตว์ ดูสิต เท่านั้น เพราะ ญาติ ๆ พา ผอม ไป เชียง ใหม่ ไป หัว หิน แล้ว ก็ ไป เกาะ เลเม็ด สถานที่ เหล่า นั้น สวย มาก แต่ ผอม ยัง ไม่ เคย มา เที่ยว กรุงเทพฯ จริง ๆ |
| นิกกี้:   | ใช่ ตอน นั้น วินแซนท์ ไม่ ค่อย ได้ ไป ไหน ใน กรุงเทพฯ นิกกี้ พา เข้า ไป ไหน ไม่ ได้ ตอน นั้น พ่อ บอก ว่า นิกกี้ ยัง เด็ก อายุ ตอน นั้น เรอะ ยัง อายุ น้อย จริง ๆ ยัง ไม่ โต เมื่อไหร่ ตอน นี้                                 |
| วินแซนท์: | แนม เธอ เห็น ด้วย กับ พ่อ ฉัน อีก แล้ว นะ   |
| นิกกี้:   | อย่า มัว แต่ พูด เล่น กัน เลย เรา จะ ไป เที่ยว ที่ ไหน กัน ดี   |
| จ้อย:     |   |

- แมว: เราย่าน่าจะพา วินเซนท์ไป พิพิธภัณฑ์สถานแห่งชาติ วัดโพธิ์ พระที่นั่ง วimanเมฆ พระบรมมหาราชวัง ...
- นิกกี้: แล้ว ก็ไปตลาดนัดจตุจักร สยาม เช็นเตอร์ หลังกระหวง เว็บนครเกษม แล้ว ก็ไปโซโก้ เช็นทรัลลาดพร้าว ... กรุงเทพฯ มีห้างสรรพสินค้า เยอะ ยะนะ



- จ้อย: แหม นิกกี้ อยากไปชื้อแต่ของเท่านั้น วินเซนท์เป็นผู้ชายรู้มั้ย ถ้าเราเพียงแต่พาเข้าไปชื้อของ เขากำจะเบื่อไม่ไปไหนกับเรา อิก เราควรจะพาเข้าไปชมพิพิธภัณฑ์ชี-อุย ที่โรงพยาบาลศิริราช ...
- วินเซนท์: อยากพาไปเที่ยวโรงพยาบาล หรือ
- จ้อย: ใช่ แล้ว โรงพยาบาลศิริราช ดังเรื่องพิพิธภัณฑ์ชี-อุย ชื่อจริงคือพิพิธภัณฑ์การแพทย์ศิริราช เป็นพิพิธภัณฑ์ด้านนิติเวชศาสตร์ แต่ คนไทยเรียกว่า พิพิธภัณฑ์ชี-อุย เพราะในพิพิธภัณฑ์แห่งนี้ เขายกซีฟแห้งของชี-อุย อาชญากรดังที่สุดของไทย อย่างไปใหม่ วินเซนท์คงชอบไปดูนะ
- แมว: ทำไมเราไม่พาเข้าไปที่อื่นๆ ก่อน กรุงเทพฯ มีสถานที่น่าสนใจอีกมาก เช่น ตลาดน้ำ หรือเราพาเข้าไปดูมายไทยที่สนาม

### Majority / ส่วนมาก

- จ้อย: สุดยอด จริงๆ หรือ อาจ วินצ์ชันท์ อยากไป เที่ยว พัฒนาพงศ์ ด้วย เป็นสถานที่ท่องเที่ยว ยาม ราตรี ที่มี ตลาดนัด ขายของ ตลอดคืน ด้วย
- วินซ์ชันท์: พัฒนาพงศ์ หรือ ผู้คน เดียวกัน แล้ว ไม่ใช่ สถานที่ท่องเที่ยว นิยม ของ สุภาพบุรุษ ต่างชาติ หรือ จ้อย อย่าง จะ พา ผ่านไป ทำไม่ ไม่ ต้อง พาไป เลย ที่ อิน กี มี เยอะ
- จ้อย: ตามใจ นะ วินซ์ชันท์ แล้ว แม้ว กับ นิกกี้ ยัง มี ข้อ เสนอ อื่น ใหม่ อย่าง พา เพื่อน ไป ที่ อิน อีก หรือ เปล่า
- นิกกี้: ใช่ จ้อย ลีม วัด อรุณ สาวย น่า เที่ยวมาก แล้ว เรา ควร พา วินซ์ชันท์ ไป เที่ยว ทัวร์ คลอง รัตนบุรี ด้วย เรา ลงเรือ ทาง ยาว ที่ คลอง บางกอก น้อย แล้ว ก็ ชม บ้าน เมือง จาก ริม น้ำ
- แมว: เป็น ไอเดีย ที่ ดี นะ แต่ อย่า ลืม ว่า หลัง จาก เที่ยว เสร็จ ใน ทุกวัน เรา น่าจะ พา พี่ วินซ์ชันท์ ไป กิน ข้าว ใน ร้าน พิเศษ ด้วย
- จ้อย: แน่นอน เลย ยังเงิน ตก ลง เรา จะ ไป เที่ยว ตลาดนัด จตุจักร พิพิธภัณฑ์ สถานแห่งชาติ พระ ที่ นั่ง วิมานเมฆ สยาม เชี๊นเตอร์ วัด โพธิ์ ... พิพิธภัณฑ์ ชี-อุย แล้ว ก็ ไป วัด อรุณ และ ไป ทัวร์ คลอง รัตนบุรี ด้วย... แล้ว วินซ์ชันท์ ขอบ พัง เพลง เพื่อ ชีวิต ใหม่

### Transcription and word for word translation of dialogue 12.2.

paj thiaaw krungthêep .

To-go/to to-make-a-pleasure-tour Bangkok .

côj meeew lê? nikkuu jaak phaa winseen paj thiaaw krungthêep . >

Joy Maew and Nikki to-want to-lead/to-take Vincent to-go/to to-make-pleasure-tour Bangkok .>

khaw thang siu khon phop kan thi baaan côj thi >

He/she/they all four [class. for people] to-meet each-other at/in house Joy at/in >

sen luj sooj saam thanon saathoon taj . côj triam kap-klêem lê? khrueang

Sainte Louise soi three street 'Sathorn' South . Joy to-prepare snack and food-ingredient >

dum waj liang phuean phuean .

to-drink to-look-after friend friend.

côj: tok long . winseen kheuj maa thiaaw krungthêep leew . chaj maj .

Joy: O.K. . Vincent ever to-come to-make-pleasure-tour Bangkok already. Yes [question particle]. Yes [question particle].

- winseen: châj . tèe toon-nán phǒm kheuj paj thâw tèe wát phrá kêew lé? >  
*Vincent:* Yes. But then I (m.) ever to-go/to to-make-pleasure-tour only/but Temple Holy Emerald and >
- sູນ ສັດ ດຸສີຕ ທ່າວນັນ . ພຣອ ຈ້າຕ-ຈ້າຕ ພ້າພ ພົມ ພັຈ ທ້າງ ມັຈ .  
*Garden animal Dusit only. Because family-family to-lead I (m.) to-go/to Chiang Mai,*  

ພັຈ ມູ້ ມິນ . ເລື່ອ ຂອ ພັຈ ຂອ ສຳມັກ . ສຳຫັບນີ້ ລ້ວ ນັນ ສູຈ >  
*to-go/to Hua Hin. And then to-go/to Ko Samet. Place [class. f. groups] beautiful >*  

ມາກ ຕີ່ ພົມ ຈັງ ມາຈ ກເວູຈ ມາ ທ່າວ ກຽນທີ່ເປັນ ຜິ່ນ-ຜິ່ນ .  
*much but I (m.) yet no/not eve to-come to-make-pleasure-tour Bangkok really.*

níkkî: châj . toon-nán winseen māj-khōj dâj paj năj naj mueang krunghēep . >  
*Nikki:* Yes. Then Vincent hardly [particle of opportunity] to-go where in city Bangkok . >

níkkî phaa khăw paj năj māj dâj . toon nán phôo bôok wâa níkkî jang dèk jùu .  
*Nikki to-lead he to-go/to where no/not can. Period that father to-say that Nikki yet/still child to-remain.*

winseen: toon-nán theu jang aajú nōoj cing-cing . jang māj tø̄o muean toon-níi .  
*Vincent:* Then you yet/still age little really. Yet/still no/not big/mature same now.

níkkî: m   . theu h  n d  aj k  p ph  o ch  n`uk l  ew n   .  
*Nikki:* [interjection of surprise, indignation]. You to-see likewise with father I (f.) again already [emphatic part.]

c  j: j  a mua t  e ph  ut l  n kan leuj . raw cà paj >  
*Joy:* Don't to-be-absorbed-in to-speak to-play together only/at-all. We shall to-go >

thâw thîu-năj kan dii .  
*to-make-pleasure-tour where together good.*

m  ew: raw n  a cà phaa winseen paj ph  pítthaphan s  th  an h  eng ch  at . w  t >  
*Maew:* We worth-doing shall to lead Vincent to Museum Place Nation. Temple >

ph  o . ph  râ th  u n  ng w  imaanm  ek . ph  râ b  rom >  
*Bodhi (tree). Honored Place To-Sit Heavenly-abode-Cloud. Honored Supreme*  

m  h  a r  atch  wang ...  
*Exalted Palace... >*

níkkî: l  ew-k   paj t  l  at n  t c  tuc  k . s  jaam senteu . l  ang >  
*Nikki:* And-then to-go/to market to-set-the-time Jatujak. Siam Center. Behind >

kr  s  ang . w  ung n  khoon k  s  em . l  ew-k   paj s  o  k  o . senthr  n l  at >  
*Ministry. Open-Space City Happy. And-then to-go/to Sogo. Central Lad >*  

ph  r  aw . krungth  ep mii h  ang s  apph  s  inkh  a j  u? j  e? n   .  
*Phrao. Bangkok to-have store various-kinds-of-merchandise many many [emphatic part.]*

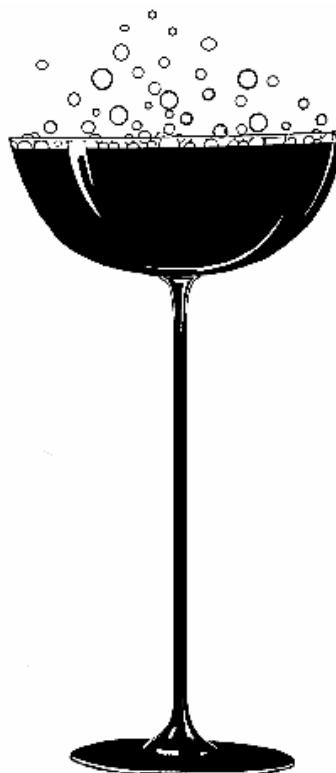
- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| côj:<br>Joy:  | měe . níkkú jàak paj súe tèe khöong thâwnán . ><br><i>[interjection of surprise, mild indignation]. Nikki to-want to-go to-buy thing only.</i> >  |
|               | winseen pen phuuchaaj rúu máj . thâa raw phiang tèe phaa khaw paj ><br><i>Vincent to-be man to-know[question part.]. If we only but/only to-lead he to-go &gt;</i>  |
|               | súe khöong . khaw àat-cà bùea māj paj naj kàp raw'uk . raw khuan cà ><br><i>To-buy thing. He maybe bored to-go/to where with us again. We ought-to shall &gt;</i>   |
|               | phaa khaw paj chom phiphíttháphan sii-uj thîi røøngphájaabaan siriråat . ><br><i>to-lead he to-go/to to-admire museum Si-Uy at/in hospital Sirirath ... &gt;</i>  |
| winseen:      | jàak phaa paj thiaw røøngphájaabaan rüe .   |
| Vincent:      | <i>To-want to-lead to-go/to to-make-pleasure-tour hospital [question particle].</i>   |
| côj:<br>Joy:  | châj léew . røøngphájaabaan siriråat dang rûeang phiphíttháphan sii-uj . chûe cing ><br><i>Yes already. Hospital Sirirath well-known story/matter museum Si-Uy. Name real &gt;</i>  |
|               | khue phiphíttháphan kaan phêet siriråat . pen phiphíttháphan dâan nítiwéetchásaat . ><br><i>To-be museum matter/affair medical Sirirath. To-be museum field/aspect forensic-science, &gt;</i>                                     |
|               | tèe khon thai râak wâa phiphíttháphan sii-uj phró? naj phiphíttháphan hèengní<br><i>but people Thai to-call that/to-say museum Si-Uy because inside museum</i><br><i>[classifier for places] this &gt;</i>                        |
|               | khaw kèp sòp hèeng khöong sii-uj . aatchajákoon dang thûi-sùt khöong thaj .<br><i>he/they to-keep corpse dry of/belonging-to Si-Uy, criminal well-known [particle superlative degree] of/belonging-to Thai(land).</i>             |
|               | jàak paj mäj . winseen khong chôop paj duu ná .   |
|               | <i>To-want to-go [question particle]. Vincent probably to-like to-go to-see [emphatic particle].</i>  |
| mæw:<br>Maew: | thammaj raw mäj phaa khaw paj thîi üen üen koon . krungthêep mii sàthaan thîi nâa ><br><i>Why we no/not to-take he to-go place other [reduplication sign]. Bangkok to-have place which worthy-to &gt;</i>                         |
|               | söñchaj ùuk mäak . chen tâlât náam . rüe raw phaa khaw paj duu muaj thaj thîi ><br><i>to-be-interested-in more many. Example market water. Or we to-take he to-go to-watch boxing Thai at &gt;</i>                                |
|               | sànâam muaj lumphínii kô dâj .  |
|               | <i>field/stadium Lumpini rather to-can.</i>   |
| côj:<br>Joy:  | sùt jôot cing cing . rüe àat winseen jàak paj thiaw phâtphong dûaj . pen sàthaan thîi ><br><i>Most top really [reduplication sign]. Or maybe Vincent to-want to-go to-go-out Phatphong also. To-be place which &gt;</i>           |
|               | thôong thiaw jaam raatrii thîi mii tâlât nát khâaj khöong tâlöt khuen dûaj .<br><i>to-roam-around to-go-on-a-trip period night which to-have/to-be-present market to-make-an-appointment to-sell thing throughout night also.</i> |

- winseen: phátphong r̄ue . phöm kheuj dâjjin léew . mâj châj sàthăan-thîu thông thiaw níjom >  
*Vincent: Phatphong [question particle]. I (m) once/ever to-hear already. No/not yes place to-roam-around to-go-on-a-trip to-be-popular >*
- khōong sùphâapbùrút tàang châat r̄ue . côj jiak cà phaa phöm paj thammaj . mâj >  
*Of/belonging-to gentleman different nation [question particle]. Joy to-want to-shall to-take/to-lead I (m) to-go/to why. No/not >*
- tông phaa paj leuj . thîu ùen kô mii jéu? .  
*To-must to-take/to-lead to-go/to at-all. Place other rather/also to-have/to-be-present many.*
- côj: taam caj ná winsseen . léew mæew kàp níkkîi jang mii khôo sàñeú ùen măj . jiak phaa >  
*Joy: To-follow heart [emphatic part.] Vincent. And/already Maew with/and Nikki still/yet to-have item to-propose other [question part.]. To-want to-take/to-lead >*
- phûean paj thîu ùen iik r̄ue plâaw .  
*friend to-go/to place other still/yet or not.*
- níkkîi: châj . côj luem wát àrun . súaj . nâa thiaw mâak . léew raw khuan phaa winsseen paj >  
*Nikki: Yes. Joy to-forget temple dawn. Beautiful. Worthy-to to-visit much/very. And/already we should to-take/to-lead Vincent to-go/to >*
- thiaw thua khloong thonbùrii dûaj . raw long ruea hăang jaaw thîu khloong baangkòok nóoj léew kôo >  
*Tour canal Thonburi also. We to-descend boat tail long at canal Bangkok Noi and/already rather/also >*
- chom bâan mueang càak rim náam .  
*To-admire house town/country from side/rim water.*
- mæew: pen ajdia thîi dii nâ . tèe jàa luem wâa . lăng càak thiaw sét naj thûk wan raw nâa cà >  
*Maew: To-be idea which good [emphatic part.]. But don't to-forget that. Behind from (af-terwards) to-go-on-a-trip ready in/at every day we should to-shall >*
- phaa phîi winsseen paj kin khâaw naj ráan phísèt dûaj .  
*To-take/to-lead Vincent to-go/to to-eat rice in/at shop/restaurant special also.*
- côj: nêe nêe leuj . jang-ngán tòk long raw cà paj thiaw tâlât nát càtùcàk . phiphíttháphan >  
*Joy: Certain [reduplication sign] at-all. Thus to-fall down {to-agree} we to-shall to-go to-go-on-a-trip market to-make-an-appointment Jatujak. Museum >*
- sàthăan hèeng câat . phrá thîu nâng wímaanmêek . sàjäm senteú . wát phoø ...  
*place of/place nation. Revered<sup>1</sup> place<sup>2</sup> to-sit<sup>3</sup> {<sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup> and <sup>3</sup>: palace} Vimanmek. Siam Center. Temple bodhi-tree...*
- phiphíttháphan sii-uj . léew kôo paj wát àrun . lë? paj thua khloong thonbùrii dûaj ...  
*Museum Si-Uy. And/already to-go/to temple dawn. And to-go tour canal Thonburi also ...*
- léew winsseen chôop fang phleeng phûea chiiwít măj .  
*And/already Vincent to-like to-listen song for life [question particle].*

**cd 1b      Vocabulary**  
**track 13**



ทั้ง สี่ คน



เครื่อง ดีม

เที่ยว

ไป เที่ยว

พา

พบ

กัน

พบ กัน

ทั้ง สี่ คน

เซ็นต์ หลุยส์ ซอย (...)

ซอย

ถนน

สาธร ใต้

ใต้

เตรียม

กับ แก้ม

เครื่อง ดีม

เลี้ยง

ตก ลง

thîaw

paj thîaw

phaa

phóp

kan

phóp kan

tháng sìu khon

sen lǔj sooj

sooj

thànǒn

săathoon tâj

tâj

triām

kàp klêem

khrûeang dûem

líang

tòk long

1. to make a pleasure tour, to go on holiday, to wander, to roam about, to go (some-where) for fun, to go out on the town; 2. trip, journey

to go out on the town; to go on holiday; to go (some-where) for fun

1. to lead, to take (along), to bring (someone) along; 2. to carry (diseases)

1. to meet, to encounter; 2. to find, to come across, to discover

1. reciprocal particle, ‘each other’; 2. collective personal pronoun ‘together’

to meet each other, to see each other

all four, the four of them

Sainte Louise Soi ...

‘soi’, lane; side street of a ถนน (*thànǒn*)

street, road, thorough-fare, avenue

South Sathorn; street in Bangkok

1. South, Southern;

2. beneath, under

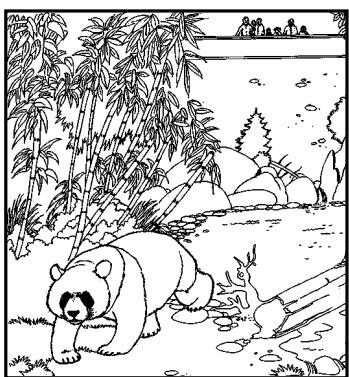
1. to prepare; to make ready;  
2. to get ready

snack(s)

drink(s)

1. to fête, to give a party 2. to feed, to look after, to provide food and shelter; 3. to rear, to breed; 4. to adopt

1. O.K., all right; 2. to agree;  
3. so...; 4. to fall down  
(literal meaning)



สวน สัตว์

เคย

kheuj

1. ever, once; 2. to be accustomed to, to be used to  
1. but; merely, only (adj., adv.); 2. since, from (prep.) then, before, at that time, in

แค่

tèe

ตอน นั้น

toon nán  
those times

ตอน นี้

toon níi

now, in this time

วัด พระ แก้ว

wát phrá kēew

The Temple of the Emerald Buddha in Bangkok



ญาติ

แล้ว ก็

léew kô

1. then, afterward, subsequently;  
2. and



เกาะ

เกาะ

kò?

island

เกาะ เลมีด

kò? sàmèt

Samet Island

เลมีด

sàmèt

sort of Eucalyptus tree

สถานที่

sàthaan thîi

place, site, location, locality

เหล่า

làw

group, class, species

(classifier for groups)

(classifier for groups)

ค่อย

khôj

slowly, softly, gently,

ไม่ ค่อย

mâj khôj

without hurry, gradually

ไป ไหน

paj náj

hardly, not much, not quite, scarcely

1. where to?; 2. to go somewhere



ແກ່ມ

ໄປໃຫນ ກີ່ໄມ່ ໄດ້

paj näj kô mâj dâj can't go anywhere

ໃນ

naj in

ຢັງ

jang 1. yet, still; 2 (in negative answers) not yet

ຢັງ ... ອຍໍ່

jang ... jùu to be still ... (young, fresh etc.)

ອາຍຸ ນ້ອຍ

aajú nóoj young of age (literally: 'little age')

ໂຕ

tøø 1. large, grown up;  
2. to grow up

ແກ່ມ

mëe expression of surprise or mild indignation

ເຮືອ

theu you (informal; mostly used to address young women, sometimes men)

ເຫັນ ດ້ວຍ ກັບ / ກັນ

h  n d  uaj k  p / kan to agree with/with each other

ຈັນ

ch  n I - informal; mostly f., also m. (old-fashioned)

ອີກ ແລ້ວ

`uk l  ew again; once more

ອຍ່າ

j  a don't

ມ້ວ

mua to be absorbed in, to be only busy with

ແຕ່

t  e 1. but; 2. only, just

ມ້ວ ແຕ່

mua t  e only (completely) be absorbed in...

ເລ່ນ

l  en to play

ພູດ ເລ່ນ

ph  uut l  en to make jokes

ເລຍ

leuj 1. at all (after a negative statement); 2. beyond, further; 3. to pass

ຜ່າ

n  a 1. worth doing; 2. ...-able, ...-ful; (ຜ່າ ກລ້າ (n  aklua)

dreadful, fearful (ກລ້າ - klua - to be afraid) (ຜ່າ ຮັກ (n  ar  k) - loveable (ຮັກ - r  k - to love)

3. should, ought to;

4. emphasized form of ຜ່າ (n  ?) should, ought to



ວັດ

ເລ່ນ

ພູດ ເລ່ນ

ເລຍ

ຜ່າ

ຜ່າ ຈະ

ພິພົດກັນທີ

to play

to make jokes

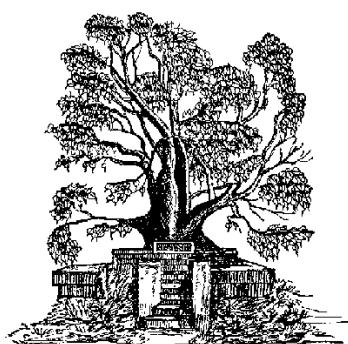
1. at all (after a negative statement); 2. beyond, further; 3. to pass

1. worth doing; 2. ...-able, ...-ful; (ຜ່າ ກລ້າ (n  aklua)

dreadful, fearful (ກລ້າ - klua - to be afraid) (ຜ່າ ຮັກ (n  ar  k) - loveable (ຮັກ - r  k - to love)

3. should, ought to;

4. emphasized form of ຜ່າ (n  ?) should, ought to



ຕັ້ນ ໂພຣີ

n  a cà

ph  p  itth  phan

should, ought to

museum



ตลาด

สถาน

sàth  an

1. place, site; 2. duty, honor, rank; 3. thing, sort, kind

แห  ง

h  eng

1. place, site; 2. of, belonging to

ชา  ติ

ch  aat

1. nation, country; 2. race, birth; 3. nationality; 4. rank, caste



ห  อง สรีพลินค  า

พิพิธภ  ณฑ  สถาน

ph  iph  itth  aphan

National Museum (The

แห  ง ชา  ต

s  ath  an h  eng ch  aat

Museum of the Nation)

ว  ด

w  at

temple

โพ  ธ   (ต  น โพ  ธ  )

ph  o   (t  n ph  o  )

Bodhi (Bodhi tree)

พระ ท  ี่ น  ง

ph  ra th  i n  ang

palace (literally: Honored Seat)

ว  มานเม  

w  imaanm  ek

Heavenly Abode in the Clouds

พระ บรม มหา ราช  วงศ  

ph  ra b  orom m  ah  a

The Royal Palace (Honored Supreme Exalted Royal Residence)

ตลาด

t  al  aat

market

น  ด

n  at

1. to make an appointment, to date; 2. to set the time; 3. date, appointment

ตลาด น  ด

t  al  aat n  at

market held on a fixed day of the week

จตุ  จ  ก

c  atuc  k

'Four Wheels'; weekend market in Bangkok

สยาม เซ  นเต  อร  

s  ajaam senteu

Siam Center

หล  ง กระทรวง\*

l  ang kr  as  uang

'Behind the Ministry', street in Bangkok

เว  ง นคร เก  นม

w  eung n  akhoon

'Open Space in the Happy City', antiques- and second hand goods market in Bangkok

โซ  โก  

k  as  em

Sogo; large Department Store

เซ  นทร  ล

sentr  an

Central; large Department Store

ลาด พ  ร  瓦

l  aat ph  raw

'Coconut Slope'; street in Bangkok

ช  อ ของ

ห  อง

h  ang

firm, shop, store



## ห้างสรรพสินค้า

hâang  
sàpphásînhkáa

department store

## ເຢົວ ແກ່ະ

jéu? jé?

very much, very many

## ຂຶ້ວ

súe

to buy

## ຂຶ້ວ ຂອງ

súe khöong

to buy things, to shop

## ເຖິງນັ້ນ

thâwnán

only

## ມັຍ

máj

question particle (shortened)

## ຄໍາ

thâa

if, in case

## ເພີ່ງ ແຕ່

phiang tèc

only

## ເບື່ອ

bùea

1. bored; 2. to be bored

## ຄວຣ

khuan

ought to, should

## ຄວຣ ຈະ

khuan cà

ought to, should

## ໜົມ

chom

1. to admire; 2. to praise

## ຊື່-ອູຍ

sii-uj

Si-Uy; an infamous killer

## ໂຮງພຍາບາລ

røongphájaabaan

hospital

## ຄືຣິຈາກ

sìrirâat

The oldest hospital in Bangkok

## ພິພິດກັນທີ ຊື່-ອູຍ

phíphíttháphan  
sii-uj

The “Si-Uy Museum”

## ເປົ້ອ

## ກາຣ ແພທຍ

kaan phêet

medical; the medical profession

## ນິຕີເວັບຄາສຕ່ຽ

nítìwêetchásàat

forensic medicine

## ສົພ ແກ້ງ

sòp hêeng

mummy

## ອາຊຸມກຣ

àatchájákoon

criminal

## ສຕານ ທີ່

sàth  an th  

place, site, location

## ນໍາ ສນໃຈ

n  a s  ncaj

interesting

## ຕລາດ ນໍາ

t  l  at n  am

floating market

## ມາຍ ໄທຍ

muaj thaj

Thai boxing

## ສນາມ ມາຍ

s  n  am muaj

boxing stadium

## ລຸມພິນີ

lumphínii

Lumpini (The Buddha’s birth place; name of a park and a boxing stadium in Bangkok)

## ອາຊຸມກຣ

## ພັດທິນພງຄ

phátphong

Phatphong; famous red light district in Bangkok

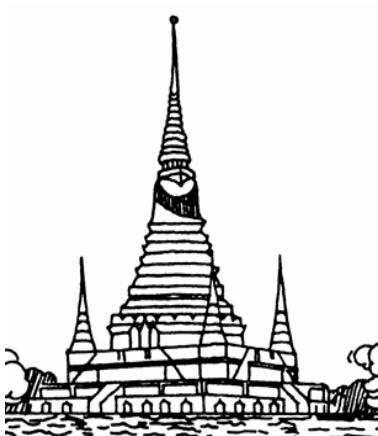




สุภาพบุรุษ



ริม น้ำ



แหล่ง ท่อง เที่ยว

### สถานที่ ท่องเที่ยว

ขาม	jaam	time, period
ราตรี	raatrii	evening, night
ตลอด คืน	tàlòot khuen	the whole evening
นิยม	níjom	1. to be popular; 2. to admire
สุภาพบุรุษ	sùphâapbùrút	gentleman
ต่าง ชาติ	tàang chàat	foreign
ข้อ เสนอ	khôo sàñéu	proposal, suggestion
อรุณ	àrun	dawn, sunrise
ควร	khuan	should, ought to
พา	phaa	to take, to lead, to bring
ทัวร์	thua	tour
ธนบุรี	thonbùrii	Thonburi, a town across the Chao Phraya river from Bangkok
ลง เรือ	long ruea	to board a ship, to get into a boat
เรือ หาง ยาว	ruea hăang jaaw	long tail boat
คลอง บางกอก น้อย	khloong baangkook nóoj	The Bangkok Noi Canal
ชม บ้าน เมือง	chom bâan muang	to site-see
ริม น้ำ	rim náam	waterfront
ไอเดีย	ajdia	idea (from English)
เสร็จ	sèt*	ready
พิเศษ	phísèet	special
แหล่ง	lèng*	place, location, spot
แหล่ง ท่อง เที่ยว	lèng thôong thiaw	touristic location
แปลก	plèek	strange
น่า สนใจ	nâa söncaj	interesting
ยัง จัน	jang-ngán	in that case (shortened form of อย่าง นั้น (jàang nán))
ฟัง	fang	to hear, to listen to

ฟัง เพลง	fang phleeng	to listen to songs
เพลง เพื่อ ชีวิต	phleeng phüea chiiwít	kind of Thai folk-rock

### Translation dialogue 12.2

#### Out on the town in Bangkok

Joy, Maew and Nikki want to take Vincent out on the town in Bangkok. The four of them meet at Joy's home on Sainte Louise Soi 3, Sathorn Road. Joy has prepared snacks and drinks for her friends.

- Joy: So, Vincent, you have been on holiday in Bangkok before, haven't you?
- Vincent: Yes, but then I only went to the Temple of the Emerald Buddha and the Dusit Zoo, because my family took me to Chiang Mai, to Hua Hin and after that to Ko Samet. Those are very beautiful places, but I've never been out on the town in Bangkok, really.
- Nikki: Yes, at that time Vincent hasn't been anywhere in Bangkok. I couldn't take him anywhere, either. Dad told me I was still a child, then.
- Vincent: In those days you were still really young. Not as grown up as you are now.
- Nikki: Well, you just agree with my father again, don't you!
- Joy: Don't just sit there talking away. Where shall we go together?
- Maew: We should take Vincent to the National Museum, the Wat Pho, the Vimanmek Palace, the Royal Palace...
- Nikki: And also to the Jatujak weekend market, Siam Center, Lang Krasuang, The Na-Khorn Kasem market. And also to Sogo, and Central Lad Phrao. In Bangkok there are so many shopping malls!
- Joy: Oh dear, Nikki only wants to go shopping. Vincent is a man, don't you know? If we only take him out to go shopping, he'll be bored and maybe doesn't want to go anywhere with us anymore. We should take him to see the Si Uy Museum in the Sirirath Hospital.
- Vincent: Do you want to take me out to a hospital?
- Joy: Yeah. The Sirirath hospital is famous for its Si-Uy Museum. Its real name is the Sirirath Medical Museum. It is a museum on forensic medicine, but Thai people call it the Si-Uy Museum, because in this museum, they keep the mummy of Si-Uy, Thailand's most famous criminal. Do you want to go there? You'd probably like it, Vincent.
- Maew: Why don't we take him somewhere else, first. Bangkok has a lot of other interesting places. For instance the floating market. Or we could take him to see a Thai boxing match at Lumpini Boxing Stadium.
- Joy: Perfect! Or maybe Vincent would like to go out to Patphong also. That's a nighttime tourist attraction which has a market where goods are for sale all night long.
- Vincent: Phatphong? I've heard about that. Isn't that a favourite tourist attraction for foreign gentlemen? Why do you want to take me there, Joy? You don't have to take me there. There are a lot of other places.
- Joy: It's up to you, Vincent. And Maew and Nikki, do you have some other suggestions? Do you want to take our friend to some other places or not?
- Nikki: Yes. Joy, you forgot the Temple of Dawn. It's beautiful. Very much worth visiting.

And we should take Vincent on a tour of the canals of Thonburi, as well. We'll get on a longtail boat at Khlong Bangkok Noi, and we'll go and see the city from the waterfront.

Maew: hat's a very good idea. But don't forget that after we've finished touring every day, we'll should take Vincent to dinner in a special restaurant, as well.

Joy: Of course we'll do that. So, everyone agrees that we'll go to the Jatujak-market, the National Museum, the Vimanmek Palace, Siam Center, the Wat Pho... the Si Uy Museum, and to the Temple of Dawn. And we'll take him on a tour through the canals of Thonburi, as well... And, Vincent, do you like to listen to Thai folk-rock?

## 12.3 Idioms

### **Spoken language; stopgaps, abbreviations and link words.**

In Thai, like in every language, there is a difference between spoken (or popular) language and written (or official) language. The Thai popular and written languages mainly differ from each other through their separate vocabularies and pronunciation. See, for instance, the 'short' variants of the question particles, relative pronouns and demonstrative pronouns, which you are already acquainted to. Another phenomenon of the spoken language is that stopgaps and link words are well represented in it. Stopgaps and link words are often short, rapidly pronounced words which are used when a speaker wishes to emphasize something, has lost the direction of his argument for a moment, or corrects a mistake. Because Thai exists mainly of such short, rapidly pronounced words, in the ear of a beginning student, stopgaps and link words often tend to disappear in the mush of the spoken language. In order to follow an argumentation, you must sift the stopgaps, link words and other less important information from the bulk of the message in order to stay focused. Therefore, you must be able to recognize them and to determine whether they are relevant for the information in a sentence or not. In the course of your study you will automatically learn a lot of these sometimes meaningless but often significant expressions. A few are mentioned below:

ก็	kô; kôo	1. also, likewise, as well, too; 2. exactly; 3. rather; 4. then; 5. even
ตกลง	tòk long	'O.K., all right'; 'it's a deal'
แล้ว ก็	léew kôo, léew kô	'and then', 'and afterwards', 'and also'
เลย, ก็ เลย	leuj, kô leuj	1. 'at all' (in negations), 'and then'
เชื่อ เดี๊ด (เชื่อ เดอะ)	chûea thèut (chûea thèu?)	'believe me'; 'you can take that for granted'
ตลอด เวลา	tàlòot weelaa	'always', 'again and again'
เยอะ มาก	jéu? jé?	'a whole lot'
รึ	rúe?, rúe	shortened question particle (abbreviation of หรือ - rúe)
หรือ; เหรอ	rúe; léu	extended question particle (extension of หรือ - rúe)

มั้ย	máj	shortened question particle (abbreviation of ไหม - mǎj)
อะไร กัน	àràj kan	‘What are you saying?’; ‘What do you mean?’
(เอ่า) อีก แล้ว	(aw) ïik léew	‘now this again’; ‘there you are again’
แหม	mëe	from ‘Jeez!’ (mild curse) to ‘Well well well’, (expression of mild annoyance, surprise or disbelief)
ช่าง มั้น เดอะ	châng man thèu?	‘Just leave it’, ‘Let it be’
เอ่า	âw	‘hey’, ‘look here’, ‘there!’ (to attract someone’s attention, to point something out, etc.)

### Structures with แล้ว (léew)

แล้ว (léew) means: ‘already’, ‘afterwards’, ‘then’, ‘later’. With the word แล้ว (léew) as a core, there exist a couple of expressions which you will hear often in spoken language:

แล้ว ก็	léew kô	‘and then...’, ‘and afterwards...’
ก็ แล้ว กัน	kô léew kan	1. ‘Go ahead’, ‘You can do...’, ‘...is also good’, ‘we can do...as well’; 2. ‘That’s all...’; 3. ‘That’s how it is...’
เป็น แล้ว กัน	pen léew kan	1. ‘That’s done’; 2. ‘That’s been it...’
แล้ว แต่	léew tèe	‘It’s up to...’; ‘The choice is yours (hers, his)’
แล้ว แต่ ซี	léew tèe sii	‘It’s up to you/him/her (it doesn’t matter to me)’

### The words เพียง (phiang) and เท่า นั้น (thâwnán)

เพียง (phiang) - ‘only’, ‘merely’, ‘just’. Within the sentence, the adverb เพียง (phiang) is placed in front of the clause it modifies:

เข้า เพียง เป็น เด็ก  
khâw phiang pen dèk

*he ‘phiang’ to-be child*

He is only a child.

เพียง คุณ คน เดียว  
phiang khun khon diaw

*‘phiang’ you [class. for people] only*

Only you.

เท่า นั้น - ‘only’, ‘as much as (not more than)’ – Within the sentence, the adverb เท่า นั้น (thâwnán) is placed at the end of the clause it modifies:

มัน ห้า สิบ บาท เท่า นั้น                          It fifty Baht ‘thâwnán’  
man hâa sìp bàat thâwnán                          It's only fifty Baht.

To intensify a statement, often both modifiers are used:

มัน เพียง ห้า สิบ บาท เท่า นั้น                          It ‘phiang’ fifty Baht ‘thâwnán’  
man phiang hâa sìp bàat thâwnán                          It's only fifty Baht.

### Variations on ไม่ เป็นไร - mâj pen raj

As you already know ไม่ เป็นไร means: ‘it doesn't matter’, ‘never mind’, ‘It's O.K.’, ‘you're welcome’. Variations on this theme are for instance the following phrases:

ไม่ เทืน เป็น อะไร	mâj hĕn pen àraj	(I/you/he/she) think(s) it's only a trifle
ไม่ เป็น อะไร	mâj pen àraj	1. It's nothing; 2. It's worthless; 3. I (you, she) don't have anything (don't suffer from any illness)

### The question particle นะ (ná); the confirmation particle นะ (nâ)/ นา (nâa)

The particle นะ (ná) can be used as an informal question particle:

ไป นะ	paj ná	‘Shall we go?’
กิน นะ	kin ná	‘Can I eat this?’; ‘Shall we eat this?’

The particle นะ (nâ)/ นา (nâa) is used to give an expression mild emphasis:

ไป นะ	paj nâ	‘Go now’
กิน นา	kin nâa	‘You can eat’

## 12.4 Cultural notes

A number of the interesting sites mentioned in this lesson are most visited by the Thai themselves and by foreign tourists in a lesser measure. The Thai love sight-seeing in their own country: the combination of watching, strolling, eating and buying. Most of the places mentioned in the dialogue to which the ladies want to take Vincent can be found in regular tourist guides. Below, is a list of places where you'll find at least as many Thai visitors as foreign tourists:

Chiang Mai	เชียง ใหม่: The capital of the North. A city with a pleasant climate, full of century-old temples.
Hua Hin	หัว หิน: Beach resort on the Southern peninsula. Favorite weekend resort for Bangkok people, so also many Thai tourists.

Ko Samet	<b>เกาะ เสม็ด:</b> Beautiful tropical island for weekend trips from Bangkok. Also nice for a longer holiday.
Wat Phra Kaew	<b>วัด พระ แก้ว:</b> The temple of the Emerald Buddha, situated in the compound of the old Royal Palace, opposite the Wat Pho, in Bangkok.
Dusit Zoo	<b>สวน สัตว์ ดุสิต:</b> One of the largest and most beautiful zoos in Southeast Asia.
National Museum	<b>พิพิธภัณฑ์ สถาน แห่ง ชาติ:</b> Large museum with historic artifacts and exhibitions about Thailand's history. Houses the famous Inscription of King Ramkhamhaeng, as well as a large selection of other ancient inscribed posts and lintels. Also statues from the Dvaravati, Sriwijaya and Lopburi periods.
Wat Pho	<b>วัด โพธิ:</b> Bangkok's oldest temple. Was built long before the city became the national capital.
Vimanmek Palace	<b>พระ ที่ นั่ง วิมานเมฆ:</b> Large teak palace. Once a residence of King Chulalongkorn on Ko Si Chang. In 1910, the structure was moved to Bangkok.
Royal Palace	<b>พระ บรม มหา ราชวัง:</b> The Chitralada Palace; the official abode of the Royal Family of Thailand.
Jatujak Weekend market	<b>ตลาด นัด จตุจักร:</b> An enormous market where almost everything is sold and bought. Only on Saturdays and Sundays.
Siam Center	<b>สยาม เซ็นเตอร์:</b> A large complex of shopping malls, department stores, shops, bars, restaurants and cinemas.
Lang Krasuang	<b>หลัง กระทรวง:</b> Old quarter in Bangkok with shops in Sino-Portuguese style.
Nakhorn Kasem Market	<b>เวียง นคร เกชม:</b> A neighborhood in Chinatown with a lot of antique shops.
Sogo Department Store	<b>โซโก:</b> Very large, modern shopping centre (Amarin Plaza)
Central Ladphrao	<b>เซ็นทรัล ลาดพร้าว:</b> A large department store of the Central Group.
Si-Uy Museum	<b>พิพิธภัณฑ์ ชี-อุย:</b> Forensic-medical museum. A museum full of medical samples, under which the conserved body of serial killer Si-Uy.
Phatphong	<b>พัฒนพงศ์:</b> The best known red light district in Bangkok. With nightclubs, erotic shows, bars and a large night market.

## 12.5 Irregularities in Thai spelling and class modifiers

### a. The consonant combinations ໜ, ຈ, ສ and ຮ

Remember that there are spelling anomalies in almost every language. Words are not always pronounced as they are written (English is famous for them), and different spellings can be used to convey the same sounds. In the vocabulary lists, these aberrantly spelled words are marked with an asterisk (\*). Listed below are a number of the most noteworthy spelling anomalies:

A number of words are spelled with the initial clusters ໜ (th + r), ຈ (c + r), ສ (s + r) or ສ (s + r). These combinations are in fact not real clusters, but combinations of consonants with an aberrant spelling. The consonant combination ຮ is in fact pronounced either as the vowel ‘a’, or as ‘an’:

ໜ - Is pronounced as: ‘s’

ທງ - song - ‘(hair) style’, ‘form’; ທາບ - sâap -

‘to know’; ທາຍ - saaj - ‘sand’; ທວດທງ - suatsong - ‘shape’, ‘(slim) figure’

ຈ - Is pronounced as: ‘c’,

ຈີນ - cing - ‘real’

ສ - Is pronounced as: ‘s’

ມືຣີ - sîr - ‘majesty’, ‘glory’, ‘honor’; ‘glorious’

ສຈ - Is pronounced as: ‘s’

ສັບອຸນ - sôoj - necklace; ສ້າງ - sâang - ‘to build’;

ສະ - sà? - 1. ‘pool’, ‘pond’; 2. ‘to shampoo’

ຮ - Is pronounced as: ‘a’ or ‘an’

ກຣມ - kam - ‘karma’; ດຣມ - tham - ‘dharma’;

ກຣໄກຣ - kankraj - ‘scissors’; ປຣຍາຍ - banjaaj - ‘lecture’

Attention! Not all of these consonant combinations are always read as stated above. Consider, for instance, the following words: ທ່ອរາມານ - thoorámaan - ‘to torture’; ຈະໝັ້ນ - càràñí ‘man’, ‘human being’; ຈະເຂົ້າ - coorákheé - ‘crocodile’; ສູນ - sàrup - ‘to summarize’; ສະ - sàrà - ‘vowel’; ສັນ - sôon - ‘arrow’; ເອກອັກຮາຊຫຼຸດ - èekàkkhárâatcháthûut - ‘ambassador’.

### b. The consonant class modifiers ‘ໝ’ and ‘ໝ’

By placing a hoo hìup (ໝ) - a HIGH CLASS consonant - in front of a LOW CLASS consonant, this LOW CLASS consonant is ‘upgraded’ to a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus endowed with all characteristics of a HIGH CLASS consonant. ໝ itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the LOW CLASS consonant. By placing an oo àang (ໝ) - a MIDDLE CLASS consonant - in front of a LOW CLASS consonant, this LOW CLASS consonant is ‘upgraded’ to a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus endowed with all characteristics of a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. ໝ itself is not pronounced in these cases, and has the sole function of modifying the LOW CLASS consonant. Look at the following examples:

ໜາຍ hoo hìup . loo ling . sàrà? aa . joo ják . lăaj - several

HIGH CLASS consonant ໝ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ຂ into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘ໜາຍ’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a rising tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**หนู** hǒo hìip . noo nūu . sàrà? uu . nūu - mouse

HIGH CLASS consonant ໜ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ູ into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘ໜູ’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a rising tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**หมาก** hǒo hìip . moo máa . sàrà? aa . koo kàj . màak - betelnut

HIGH CLASS consonant ໜ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ແ into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘ໝາກ’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**หน้า** hǒo hìip . noo nūu . máaj thøq . sàrà? aa . nâa - face

HIGH CLASS consonant ໜ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ແ into a HIGH CLASS consonant. The word ‘ໜຳ’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a HIGH CLASS consonant, and thus with a falling tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules). Observe that the tone marker (ໄມ້ ໂທ - máaj thøq) is placed over the ແ, not on the ໜ itself.

**ອຢາກ** oo àang . joo ják . sàrà? aa . koo kàj . jàak - to want

MIDDLE CLASS consonant ອ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ແ into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘ອຢາກ’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. (see the diagram for the tone rules).

**ອຢຸຈ** oo àang . joo ják . máj èek . sàrà? uu . jùu - to stay, to be busy to

MIDDLE CLASS consonant ອ modifies LOW CLASS consonant ແ into a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. The word ‘ອຢຸຈ’ is pronounced according to the tone rules valid for words which start with a MIDDLE CLASS consonant, and thus with a low tone. Observe that the tone marker (ໄມ້ ເອກ - máaj èek) is placed over the ແ, not on the ອ itself. (see the diagram for the tone rules).

Attention: In other cases, the ອ doesn't modify or ‘upgrade’ low class consonants, but functions independently as a short à of à?; this ‘a’ is not indicated by the vowel sign ະ, and can be called ‘inherent’.

**อภิสิทธิ์** àphísít privilege

**อนุมัติ** ànúmát to approve of, to consent

**อเมริกา** àmeeríkaa America

**อร่อย** àròoj; àròj tasty, delicious

## 12.6 Writing VIII. The script and the tones. Further instructions in reading and writing

In lesson 1 you have seen the reference diagram for the tone rules of the Thai language. The diagram indicates which elements can be of influence on the spoken tone of a written word. Below, the reference diagram is reproduced once more:

### Reference diagram for the tone rules:

end of syllable		class of initial consonant		
		high	middle	low
no tone marker	any ending, except k, p, t or ?	rising ถ้าม ขา หาย	mid กิน บัว ตา	mid งาน เวลา เรียน
	k, p or t after a long vowel	low สอบ ถูก หาด	low แจก ตาม โดด	falling ราด พูด เมฆ
	short vowel; k, p or t after a short vowel	low ฉะ หัก สิบ ชุด	low จะ แบลก บท อิฐ	high ชี ละ ยก พัด พบ
with máaj èek อ'		low ส្ត់ អំ ឱ្យ តើំន	low បា កំន ផែង	falling នោ មេ វីរ មោន
with máaj thøø อេ		falling ហោម តើេ ខាង	falling ប៉ាន តី កោង	high វុង រោន ពីង វើយ
with máaj trii อី			high ីក ពីច បើយប ចិច	
with máaj càttawaa อ៉			rising ແប់ ចា តូ បុំម	

In the consonant lists in chapter 1, you have seen that there are three classes (or registers) of consonants: HIGH, MIDDLE and LOW. You already know that these consonant classes have not been created without a reason. The consonant classes are there to enable us to write any possible Thai phoneme in any possible tone. Now that you have learned all Thai letters by heart, you also know to which class every individual consonant belongs: HIGH, MIDDLE or

LOW. As a reminder, below you'll find the HIGH, MIDDLE and LOW class consonants once more in their respective lists.

## The Three Consonant Classes

**The following eleven consonants are HIGH Class Consonants:**

ຂ - (kh&#oacute;o kh&#aacute;j)

ຂູ - (kh&#oacute;o kh&#uacute;at)†

ຈ - (ch&#oacute;o ch&#eacute;ng)

ທູ - (th&#oacute;o th&#aacute;aan)

ທົ່ງ - (th&#oacute;o th&#uacute;ng)

ພູ - (ph&#oacute;o ph&#uacute;eng)

ຝ - (f&#oacute;o f&#aa;)

ສູ້ - (s&#oacute;o s&#aa;alaa)

ຟູ - (s&#oacute;o rues&#uacute;ii)

ລູ - (s&#oacute;o s&#uea;)

ຫູ່ - (h&#oacute;o h&#uacute;ip)

**The following nine consonants are MIDDLE Class Consonants:**

ກົ - (koo k&#aacute;j)

ຈົ - (coo caan)

ຂົ້າ - (doo ch&#aacute;adaa)

ັກົ - (too p&#aacute;t&#aacute;k)

ດົ - (doo d&#eacute;ek)

ຕົ - (too t&#aacute;aw)

ບົ - (boo bajm&#aa;aj)

ປົ - (poo plaa)

ອົ - (oo &#aa;ang)

**The following twenty-four consonants are LOW Class Consonants:**

ກົມ - (khoo khwaaj)

ຈົມ - (khoo khon)†

ຂົ້າມ - (khoo r&#aacute;khang)

ງົມ - (ngoo nguu)

ຈົ້າມ - (choo ch&#aacute;aang)

ຂົ້າມ - (soo s&#oacute;o)

ເນົມ - (choo cheu)

ປົມ - (joo j&#eacute;ng)

ຍົມ - (thoo month&#oacute;o)

**ຫຼ** - (thoo phûuthâw)

**ນູ** - (noo neen)

**ທ້າວັນ** - (thoo thâhăan)

**ຫຼົງ** - (thoo thong)

**ນູ້** - (noo nüu)

**ພ້າວັນ** - (phoo phaan)

**ຫົວ** - (foo fan)

**ພົມພາວັນ** - (phoo sámphaw)

**ນູ້ມາ** - (moo máa)

**ຢັກ** - (joo ják)

**ຮູ່** - (roo ruea)

**ລົງ** - (loo ling)

**ວຸ້ນ** - (woo w  en)

**ຫົ່ວ** - (loo cùlaa)

**ຫຼົງ** - (hoo nókh  uk)

†: obsolete consonants

With the help of these lists and the reference diagram for the tone rules, you can determine the tone of any written Thai word. You already know a substantial number of words, and you'll learn many more. Of course it won't be necessary to determine the tone of every syllable with the tone rules (the consonant classes and the tone reference diagram) in hand. After a while, you'll recognize the letter pattern, or the word picture, however you would like to call it, just as easily as you recognize the picture of the English words and sentences when you read this text. It has been a long time since you had to read English letter by letter. Your reading skills on this level might look far away for Thai, and indeed, you'll have to look up a lot of new words in vocabulary lists and dictionaries. But after a while you'll be able to *dream* the tone reference diagram, and you'll develop a natural ability to identify the High-, Middle- and Low characteristics of any Thai consonant you'll see. After a short while, you'll only need a fraction of a second to identify the class of a syllable's initial consonant, its long or short vowel, its ending and its tone marker – and you'll *know* in what tone that syllable is pronounced!

### Reading tones in Thai script: Practice through examples.

By looking at 24 examples of written Thai words, you will now be led step by step through the practice of reading written Thai in a practical way. You will see that the tones of each syllable are almost always clear from the way a Thai word is written, and can be easily calculated by the reader when taking the four factors which determine the tone of a syllable into consideration:

- a. **The class of the initial consonant of the syllable (HIGH, MIDDLE or LOW);**
- b. **The length of the vowel of the syllable (LONG or SHORT)**
- c. **The ending of the syllable (VOWEL (OPEN)/NASAL/SEMIVOWEL or STOP)**
- d. **The tone marker (ມາຈີ່ກ, ມາຈີ່ກູງ, ມາຈີ່ຕິ້ງ or ມາຈີ່ຕັດຕະວາງ)**

In short: If we want to know the tone of a written syllable, first of all, we look at the FIRST CONSONANT of the syllable: In which class does it belong; HIGH, MIDDLE or LOW? Next, we look at the VOWEL in the syllable: Is it LONG or SHORT? Then, we determine the ENDING of the syllable: Is it a VOWEL (open syllable), a NASAL CONSONANT (m, n, ng) or a SEMIVOWEL (j, w)? Or does the syllable end with a STOP (k, p, t or ? (glottal stop))? And last but not least, we look at the TONE MARKER which is placed over the first consonant of the syllable, or - if the

syllable starts with a cluster - over the last consonant pronounced before the first vowel. Remember that in clusters, the tone marker is placed over the second consonant in the cluster, but counts for the consonant class of the first. The consonant class of the whole cluster is always determined by that of the first consonant in the cluster.

1. ນົກ » Initial consonant: noo nūu; Class: LOW. » Vowel: Inherent o; SHORT vowel. » Ending: koo kāj; consonant, STOP. » Written is: nōk; HIGH TONE. » Meaning: ‘Bird’.
2. ຂາວ » Initial consonant: khōo khāj; Class: HIGH. » Vowel: sàrà? aa, LONG vowel. » Ending: woo wēen; SEMIVOWEL, no stop. » Written is: khāaw; RISING TONE. » Meaning: ‘White’.
3. ຊ້າວ » Initial consonant: khōo khāj; Class: HIGH. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG vowel. » Ending: woo wēen; SEMIVOWEL, no stop. » Tone marker: máj thøø over HIGH consonant (້). » Written is: khāaw; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘Rice’.
4. ໄຄຣ » Vowel: máj mūan; SHORT. » ດ -ຈ - Cluster acknowledged. » Initial consonant in cluster: khoo khwaaj; Class: LOW. » Second consonant in cluster: roo ruea; LOW. » Written is: khraj; MID TONE. » Meaning: Who’, ‘somebody’.
5. ໄຄຣ໌ » Vowel: máj mūan; SHORT. » ດ -ຈ - Cluster acknowledged. » Initial consonant in cluster: khoo khwaaj; Class: LOW. » Second consonant in cluster: roo ruea; Class: LOW. » Tone marker: máj èek over second consonant in cluster, but determinant for the first consonant in the cluster; Tone marker máj èek counts for LOW consonant. » Written is: khrâj; FALLING TONE. Meaning: ‘to covet’, ‘to desire’.
6. ເອາ » Compound diphthong acknowledged (iou = ‘aw’) » First part of diphthong: sàrà? ee. » Consonant: oo àang (without sound value; ‘bearer’ of diphthong ‘aw’), class: MIDDLE. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? aa. » Written is: aw; MID TONE. » Meaning: ‘To take’.
7. ເປລ່າ » Compound diphthong acknowledged (iou = ‘aw’) » First part of diphthong: sàrà ee. » Initial consonant in cluster: poo plaa; Class: MIDDLE. » Second consonant in cluster: loo ling; Class: LOW. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? aa. » Tone marker máj èek over LOW consonant (້), but determinant for the first consonant in the cluster (ູ), a MIDDLE CLASS consonant. » Written is: plàw. » Pronunciation anomaly acknowledged; The word is: plàaw (with long aa); LOW TONE. » Meaning: ‘Empty’; ‘No’; ‘Plain’; ‘Undiluted’; ‘In vain’.
8. ມາກ » Initial consonant: moo māa; Class: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG vowel » Ending: koo kāj; consonant, STOP. » Written is: māak; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘Much’, ‘Many’, ‘A lot’.
9. ແຈ່ງ » Vowel: sàrà? ee; long. » Initial consonant: coo caan; Class: MIDDLE. » Ending: woo wēen; SEMIVOWEL, no stop. » Tone marker máj cattawaa

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
|              | over MIDDLE CLASS consonant (ឧ). » Written is: c̄ew; RISING TONE. » Meaning: 1. ‘Clear’, ‘Limpid’; 2. ‘Sparkling’, ‘Clean’; 3. ‘Very good’, ‘Fantastic’; 4. ‘Cleaning lady’   |
| 10. កូក ៗ    | » Initial consonant: koo kàj; Class: MIDDLE. » Vowel: sàrà? u; SHORT. » Ending: koo kaj; Consonant, STOP. Tone marker: máj trii over MIDDLE CLASS consonant. Repetition sign ( <i>pajjaannóoj</i> ) acknowledged. » Written is: kúk kúk; HIGH TONE (twice). » Meaning: the clucking of chickens (onomatopoeia)  |
| 11. បាត      | » Initial consonant: boo bajmáaj; Class: MIDDLE. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG. » Ending: thoo tháhăan; consonant, STOP. » Written is: bàat; LOW TONE. » Meaning: Baht; Thai monetary unit.   |
| 12. នេះ      | » Initial consonant: noo nüu; Class: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? a. SHORT. » Ending: Glottal stop; STOP (unwritten). » Written is: ná?; HIGH TONE. » Meaning: particle, used to emphasize statements  |
| 13. ត្រកូល   | » Initial consonant: loo ling; Class: LOW. » SEMIVOWEL woo w  en; pronounced as ‘ua’ between two consonants. » Ending: koo kàj; Consonant, stop. » Written is: l  ak; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘to parboil’, ‘to soft-boil’; ‘to scald’.  |
| 14. ទរាប     | » Spelling anomaly acknowledged: Initial consonant cluster thoo tháhăan and roo ruea represent initial /s/; Class of both consonants: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG. » Ending: boo bajmáaj; consonant, STOP. » Written is: s  ap; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘to know’ (formal language)   |
| 15. ស៊រុវាំង | » Spelling anomaly acknowledged: Initial consonant cluster s  o s  ea and roo ruea represent initial /s/; Class of s  o s  ea: HIGH. Class of roo ruea: LOW. Vowel: sàrà? aa; LONG. » Ending: ngoo nguu; nasal consonant; NO STOP. Tone marker máj th  o over second consonant in written consonant cluster representing /s/, but determinant for the first consonant in the cluster, ស (HIGH CLASS). » Written is: s  ang; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘To build’ |
| 16. ចិន      | » Spelling anomaly acknowledged: Initial consonant cluster coo caan and roo ruea represent initial /c/. Class of coo caan: MID. Class of roo ruea: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? i; SHORT. Ending: ngoo nguu; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Written is: cing; MID TONE. » Meaning: ‘real’, ‘really’.  |
| 17. មីយ៉ាម   | » Compound diphthong acknowledged: (ឃ - + ឃ + ឃ = ‘ia’; ‘iia’). » First part of diphthong: sàrà? ee. » Initial consonant: joo ják; Class: LOW. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? ii. » Third part of diphthong: joo ják. Ending: moo máa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj èek over LOW CLASS consonant. » Written is: ji  am; FALLING TONE. » Meaning: 1. ‘To visit’; 2. ‘Very good’, ‘Marvelous’, ‘Cool’, ‘Fine’.                                 |

18. เมือง » Compound diphthong acknowledged: (iou + ອ = ‘uea, uea’). » First part of diphthong: sàrà? ee. Initial consonant: moo máa; Class: LOW. » Second part of diphthong: sàrà? ue. » Third part of diphthong: oo àang. » Ending: ngoo nguu; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Written is: mueang; MID TONE. » Meaning: ‘City’, ‘Country’.
19. แล้ว » Vowel: sàrà? ee; LONG. » Initial consonant: loo ling; Class: LOW. » Ending: woo wéen; semivowel, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj thøø over LOW CLASS consonant. » Written is: lèew; HIGH TONE. » Meaning: ‘Already’, ‘Then’, ‘Later’.
20. อะไร » Polysyllabic word acknowledged: » First syllable: Initial consonant: oo àang (as a vowel bearer; no independent sound value); Class: MIDDLE » Vowel: sàrà? a. » First syllable pronounced as à?; LOW TONE. » Second syllable: Vowel: máj málaj; SHORT. » Initial consonant second syllable: roo ruea; Class: LOW. » Second syllable pronounced as: raj; MID TONE. » Written is: àraj (correctly pronounced); araj (normal, informal pronunciation). » Meaning: ‘Something’, ‘What’; ‘What?’
21. นิยม » Polysyllabic word acknowledged: » Initial consonant of first syllable: noo nüu; class: LOW. » Vowel: sàrà? i; SHORT. First syllable pronounced asní (ní?); HIGH TONE. » Second syllable: Initial consonant: joo ják; Class: LOW. » Inherent, unwritten vowel: o. » Ending: moo máa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. Second syllable pronounced as jom; MID TONE » Written is: njom. » Meaning: ‘To like’, ‘To admire’, ‘To favor’, ‘To be popular’, ‘To be favorite’.
22. อร่อย » Polysyllabic word acknowledged: First syllable: oo àang; Class: MIDDLE; pronounced as ‘à?’, ‘ò?’ or ‘oo’ as a single vowel in an open syllable; here pronounced as: ‘à?’, LOW TONE » Second syllable: Initial consonant: roo ruea; Class: LOW. Second letter: oo àang; pronounced as ‘oo’ or ‘o’ in a closed syllable. Here: ‘oo’. » Ending: joo ják; semivowel, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj èek over LOW CLASS consonant, modified by preceding oo àang (MIDDLE CLASS) (Although ອ forms a syllable all by itself – pronounced as ‘à?’ – it still functions as a modifier for roo ruea, which is also the initial consonant of the second syllable, and reacts on máj èek as a MIDDLE CLASS consonant). » Second syllable pronounced as ròoj, LOW TONE. » Written is: àròoj. » Meaning: ‘Tasty’, ‘Delicious’
23. ซ่อม » Initial consonant: soo sôø; Class: low. » Second letter: oo àang; here pronounced as vowel ‘oo’. » Ending: moo máa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Tone marker: máj èek over a low class consonant. » Written is: sôom, FALLING TONE. » Meaning: ‘To mend’, ‘To repair’.
24. เกษตรกรรม » Multi-syllabic Pali-Sanskrit compound loan word acknowledged. » First syllable: Vowel: sàrà? ee. » Initial consonant: koo kàj; Class: MID-

DLE. » Inherent ‘a’; SHORT. » First syllable pronounced as kà?; LOW TONE. (Attention! sàrà? ee is not part of the first syllable). » Second syllable: Initial consonant: sōo rues̥i; Class: HIGH. » Attention! The second syllable uses initial vowel sàrà? ee. » Final consonant: too tàw; STOP. » Second syllable pronounced as sèet; LOW TONE. » Third syllable: Cluster acknowledged. » Attention! The final consonant of the second syllable also acts as the first consonant of the initial cluster of the third syllable: too tàw; Class: MIDDLE. » Second consonant of the initial cluster of the third syllable: roo ruea; Class: LOW. » Inherent, unwritten a; SHORT. » Third syllable pronounced as trà?; LOW TONE (correct); tra; MID TONE (not emphasized). » Fourth syllable: Initial consonant: koo kàj; Class: MIDDLE. » Special vowel sign acknowledged: roo ruea written twice is pronounced like sàrà? a. » Final consonant: moo māa; nasal consonant, NO STOP. » Fourth syllable pronounced as: kam; MID TONE. » Written is: kàsèetrakam. Tones: LOW-LOW-MID-MID. » Meaning: ‘agriculture’.

Now you know all the characters and rules of the Thai script, you probably already recognize a lot of words in the Thai dialogues which start off each lesson, certainly when you reread the first few lessons with the knowledge you possess now. You know which consonants belong in which class group, and you know how important the consonant classes are to determine (and to write!) the tone of a word or syllable. You know which vowels are written in front, behind, under, above and around a consonant. You know the difference between long and short vowels, and you know that there are exceptions on the tone rules. Something that you might or might not be aware of, is that the Thai dialogues you have seen and read would look a bit strange to the average Thai. The spelling and grammar are correct, but for a native Thai speaker there is something unnatural about the texts. Because... why are there spaces between the words? His conclusion would of course be that this is a Thai language course for foreigners, and that spaces are inserted between words to facilitate word recognition by the ‘*farang*’ student.

becauseathaiwouldwriteallwordsinahsentencedirectlybehindeachother onlywhereawriter ofenglishwouldputaperiodoracomma athaiwouldleaveopenalittlespacebetweenwoletters also thethaiwritingsystemdoesntuseanycapitalletters butsometimes ‘quotationmarks’ questionmarks andexclamationmarksareused!

This is not as difficult as it seems; you’ll get used to it very quickly. But at the start of your study, it is convenient to exercise with texts that have been slightly adapted from real written Thai by having spaces between the words. The lessons up to and including lesson 24 have been adapted for the benefit of the foreign student. From lesson 25 on, you’ll be reading Thai as the Thai read it.

It is recommended to look back regularly to the parts of the preceding lessons which are written in Thai script. This is very good for the development of your ability to recognize a Thai word in just a glance; an ability that you have also acquired for English and other languages in which you are proficient, although you probably won’t remember when.

When you’ll look at the next lessons, you will see that from lesson 13 on, the transcription of the Thai dialogue doesn’t follow directly after the Thai text anymore, but will be given at the end of the lesson, as an appendix. In this manner, you’ll be able to determine for yourself whether you still need the transcription or not, without having it all too conspicuously on the next page of your book. Try to use the transcription less and less as you proceed.

It might seem like a big step, but remember: millions of people have learned reading Thai, and so will you.

## 12.7 Exercises

### 1.

a. Answer the following questions in Thai. Write your answers down in the phonetic transcription script:

1. What does Joy offer her friends?
2. Has Vincent already been in Thailand before this trip? Where?
3. Why couldn't Nikki show Vincent around when he was in Bangkok the last time?
4. Where does Maew want to take Vincent?
5. Do you think Nikki likes shopping? How do you know?
6. Where does Joy want to take Vincent?
7. Does Vincent want Joy to show him around Patpong?
8. What further suggestions does Nikki offer for sightseeing?
9. Where will the ladies eventually take Vincent?
10. Is Vincent partial to Thai folk-rock music?

b. Now try and write your answers down in Thai script.

### 2.

a. Answer the following questions in Thai. First write your answers down in the phonetic transcription script, then in Thai script. Try to answer in grammatically correct Thai sentences:

1. Have you ever been to Thailand?
2. If so, where? If not, where would you like to go in Thailand?
3. What do you think of Bangkok?
4. Do you like Thai food?
5. How do you like Chiang Mai?
6. What do you think is special about the Wat Phra Kaew?
7. Which department store in Bangkok do you like most? Why?
8. In which hotel do you stay when you are in Bangkok? Why?  
(to pass the night: โรงแรม - reem)

b. Choose thirty words from lessons 1 to 12. Explain with each word how it is written (which consonants, which vowels, which tone markers, etc.), and why it is pronounced as it is.

## 12.8 Answers to exercise 12.7.1

1. ค้อลีาง ก้าว คลี่ม เล่? ขรุเอียง ดูเม็ม หาย พูเอน คิน .
๑. จ้อย เลี้ยง กับ แกล้ม และ เครื่อง ตีม ให้ เพื่อน กิน

2. *winseen kheuj maa thîaw mueang thaj lêew . khăw kheuj maa thîaw kò? sàmèt . chiang màj . lêew kô húa hîn . lê? suan sàt dùsit dûaj.*
๒. **วินเชนท์ เคย มา เที่ยว เมือง ไทย และ เข้า เคย มา เที่ยว เกาะ เสมีด เชียง ใหม่ และ กี หัว หิน และ สวน สัตว์ ดูลิต ด้วย**
3. *weelaa nán níkküi jang dèk jùu .*
๓. **เวลา นั้น นิกกี้ ยัง เด็ก อายุ**
4. *meeuw jàak phaa winsseen paj phiphíttháphan sàthaan hèeng châat . wát phoø . phrá thüi nâng wímaanmêek . lê? phrá bòrom mahää râatchawang .*
๔. **เมว อายา ก พา วินเชนท์ ไป พิพิธภัณฑ์ สวน แห่ง ชาติ วัด โพธิ์ พระ ที่ นั่ง วิมานเมฆ และ พระ บรม มหา รำชวงศ**
5. *níkküi jàak phaa winsseen paj thîaw thüi tâlât . lê? thüi hâang sàpphásinkháa thâwnán .*
๕. **นิกกี้ อายา ก พา วินเชนท์ ไป เที่ยว ที่ ตลาด และ ที่ ห้าง สรรพสินค้า เท่านั้น**
6. *côj jàak phaa winsseen paj phiphítthaphan sii uj thüi røongphájaabaan sìrirâat .*
๖. **จ้อย อายา ก พา วินเชนท์ ไป ชม พิพิธภัณฑ์ ชี-อุย ที่ โรงพยาบาล ศิริราช ...**
7. *winsseen mâj jàak paj phâtphong . khăw jàak paj thîaw thüi ùen mâak kwâa*
๗. **วินเชนท์ ไม่ อายา ไป พัฒนาพศ เข้า อายา ไป เที่ยว ที่ อื่น มาก กว่า**
8. *níkküi sàneu paj thîaw wát àrun kan . lêew theu sàneu wâa phuak theu cà phaa winsseen paj thîaw thua khloong thonbùrii dûaj .*
๘. **นิกกี้ เสนอ ไป เที่ยว วัด อรุณ กัน และ เธอ เสนอ ว่า พาก เธอ จะ พา วินเชนท์ ไป เที่ยว ทัวร์ คลอง ชานบุรี ด้วย**
9. *tòk long phuak phuujing phaa winsseen paj tâlât nát cátucàk . phiphíttháphan sàthaan hèeng châat . phrá thüi nâng wímaanmêek . phiphítthaphan sii uj . sàjaam senteu . wát phoø . wát àrun . lêew kô paj thîaw thua khloong thonbùrii dûaj .*
๙. **ตก ลง พาก ผู้หญิง พา วินเชนท์ ไป ตลาด นัด จตุจักร พิพิธภัณฑ์ สวน แห่ง ชาติ พระ ที่ นั่ง วิมานเมฆ พิพิธภัณฑ์ ชี-อุย สยาม เชี๊นเตอร์ วัด โพธิ์ วัด อรุณ และ กี ไป เที่ยว ทัวร์ คลอง ชานบุรี ด้วย**
10. *winsseen mâj dâj phuut .*
๑๐. **วินเชนท์ ไม่ ได้ พูด**